AN INTERACTION OF THEOLOGY AND LITERATURE BY MEANS OF ARCHETYPAL CRITICISM, WITH REFERENCE TO THE CHARACTERS JESUS, PILATE, THOMAS, THE JEWS, AND PETER IN THE GOSPEL OF JOHN

Brian Larsen

A Thesis Submitted for the Degree of PhD at the University of St Andrews

2001

Full metadata for this item is available in St Andrews Research Repository at: http://research-repository.st-andrews.ac.uk/

Please use this identifier to cite or link to this item: http://hdl.handle.net/10023/13419

This item is protected by original copyright
AN INTERACTION OF
THEOLOGY AND LITERATURE
BY MEANS OF
ARCHETYPAL CRITICISM
WITH REFERENCE TO THE CHARACTERS
JESUS, PILATE, THOMAS,
THE JEWS, AND PETER
IN THE GOSPEL OF JOHN

Brian Larsen

A Thesis submitted
for the degree of
Doctor of Philosophy

St. Mary’s College
The Faculty of Divinity
The University of St. Andrews

in principio erat verbum

1 October, 2001
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Contents...........................................................................................................................ii
Declarations.....................................................................................................................vi
Abstract..........................................................................................................................vii
Acknowledgments..........................................................................................................viii
Preface..............................................................................................................................ix

## INTRODUCTION

I Opening Remarks...........................................................................................................1
II Experience, Archetype, and Archetypal Literary Criticism........................................3
III Theology, Archetype, and Conceptual Prefigurement.............................................17
IV Archetypal Criticism and the Fourth Gospel...........................................................28
V Goals, Objectives, and Qualifications........................................................................32

## CHAPTER ONE: THE FOURTH GOSPEL, JESUS, AND ROMANCE

I Introduction................................................................................................................37
II Romance, the Fourth Gospel, and Jesus...................................................................38
   A) The Fourth Gospel as Romance in Critical Opinion.....................................38
   B) Basic Elements of Romance.........................................................................43
   C) Romance Motifs and the Fourth Gospel......................................................52
      C.1 dramatic qualities of marvel, risk, and triumphant adventure............53
      C.2 emphasis on generation differences......................................................53
      C.3 abundant use of pageantry.....................................................................54
      C.4 claims to historical relevancy...............................................................55
      C.5 the wandering journey towards ‘home’................................................56
      C.6 the essential piety of the main character.............................................56
      C.7 the idealized male-female relationships.............................................57
      C.8 the protagonist’s mental agility...............................................................57
      C.9 ever present mingling of blessings and sorrows.................................58
      C.10 the directing influence of a supernatural higher power.....................59
      C.11 a distinguishing token or scar by which the hero or heroine will eventually be recognized..................................................59
      C.12 shipwreck or apparent loss.................................................................60
      C.13 magical wonders....................................................................................61
C. 14 interlacing narrative.................................................................61
C. 15 An Ending When the Disparate Strands are Drawn
Together in a Final Reunion scene.............................................62

III Structural Elements of Romance: Setting, Plot/Story, and Character
A) Setting: Romance and Realism in the FG.................................63
B) Plot and Story in Romance..........................................................74
C) Characters in Romance.................................................................85
  C. 1 identity and self determination.............................................85
  C. 2 representation.......................................................................91
  C.3 other characters in the FG: living encounters.......................98

IV Conclusion........................................................................................111

CHAPTER TWO: TRAGEDY AND PILATE

I Introduction.....................................................................................113

II Pilate in the Fourth Gospel............................................................116
A) Pilate as a Dynamic Character.......................................................116
B) The ‘Trial’ Narrative as Interpretative Paradigm.......................118
C) Narrative Exegesis 18:15-19:22......................................................122
  C.1 preface: the narrative context 18:15-27..................................122
  C.2 scene 1: judicial concerns 18:28-32......................................123
  C.3 scene 2: from politics to truth 18:33-38a..............................125
  C.4 scene 3: return to innocence 18:38b-40..............................128
  C.5 scene 4: desperate measures 19:1-3....................................130
  C.6 scene 5: revelation of divinity 19:4-8....................................131
  C.7 scene 6: confirmation of divinity 9:9-11..............................133
  C.8 scene 7: capitulation 19:12-16..........................................134
  C.9 epilogue 19:22.......................................................................138

III Tragedy and Pilate.............................................................................139
A) Elements of Audience Reaction..................................................140
  A.1 fear and pity.........................................................................140
  A.2 catharsis...............................................................................148
B) Structural Elements of Tragedy.....................................................150
  B.1 plot.....................................................................................151
  B.2 character.............................................................................163
  B.3 hamartia..............................................................................167
  B.4 tragedy in Greek and Christian perspective.........................170
C) Conceptual Elements of Tragedy..................................................173
  C.1 approach and methodology..................................................173
  C.2 the tragic clash.................................................................178
(i) I, Brian Larsen, hereby certify that this thesis, which is approximately 100,000 words in length, has been written by me, that it is the record of work carried out by me and that it has not been submitted in any previous application for a higher degree.

Date: 3-12-01 Signature of candidate

(ii) I was admitted as a research student in October, 1998 and as a candidate for the degree of Ph. D. in April 1999; the higher study for which this is a record was carried out in the University of St. Andrews between 1998 and 2001.

Date: 3-12-01 Signature of candidate

(iii) I hereby certify that the candidate has fulfilled the conditions of the Resolution and Regulations appropriate for the degree of Ph. D. in the University of St. Andrews and that the candidate is qualified to submit this thesis in application for that degree.

Date: Signature of supervisor

Date: Signature of supervisor

In submitting this thesis to the University of St. Andrews I understand that I am giving permission for it to be made available for use in accordance with the regulations of the University Library for the time being in force, subject to any copyright vested in the work not being affected thereby. I also understand that the title and abstract will be published, and that a copy of the work may be made and supplied to any bona fide library or research worker. © Brian Larsen 2001

Date: 3-12-01 Signature of candidate
-ABSTRACT-

This thesis explores the interaction of literature and theology by means of archetypal criticism with specific reference to certain characters in the Gospel of John. Northrop Frye's system of archetypal literary criticism consisting of the four *mythoi* or archetypes of romance, tragedy, irony and satire, and comedy forms the governing framework and means of exchange between literature and theology. This synchronic interaction is centered on Jesus, an innocent man acting on behalf of others, as romance; Pilate, unable or unwilling to act justly in an unwanted and unavoidable particular circumstance, as tragedy: Thomas and the Jews, variations on the theme of seeing and not seeing as irony; and Peter, who denies Christ and later recovers, as comedy. These characters function as points of exchange, each reaching their defining literary and theological climax during the crucifixion events. Within the FG's narrative these characters also serve as imaginative points of contact and identification for the reader at which the reader's own faith response may be placed within the literary and theological milieu of the Fourth Gospel. Conceptually, Jesus and romance, Pilate and tragedy, Thomas, the Jews, and irony, and Peter and comedy may be characterized by representation, reduction, negation, and integration, respectively. The variable between these four *mythoi* and between these characters is the relationship between a belief or an ideal and experience or reality assumed by the work as a whole and/or assumed and displayed by each character.
I wish to acknowledge with thanks the assistance and advice of my supervisors, Professors Trevor Hart and Richard Bauckham, who, together with Professors Alan Torrence and Chris Seitz, did so much to make St. Mary's College a stimulating environment for study and made my time here an enjoyable one. I also wish to note with appreciation and thanks the contributions, social, academic, and spiritual, of the many post-graduate students who enriched my life in a variety of ways. The following deserve special mention: Bob Winchell, Todd Pokrifka-Joe, Steve Guthrie, James Bruce, Dave Hogg, Jane Rowland, Jack Wisemore, Al Baker and Lindsay Sullivan.

With thanks I wish to gratefully acknowledge the assistance of Jeremy and Jan Peckham, financially through the Fraser-Peckham Trust and personally through prayer, friendship, and example. Many thanks and much love are to be extended to Adrian, Jenny, Edward, Henry and Cathy Gratwick, Jim and Grace Clark, Rev. George and Jan Fairlie, Winston and Olga Kilfetter, Alison Anderstrom, and Gill Craig, for their kindness to me and, especially, to my family during our stay in Crail. Thank you to Peter Knight, Geoff Holt, Rev. Tom Ruhlman, and Rev. Dr. Peter Thomson for providing encouragement and/or direction when either or both were in short supply. I would be remiss not to mention the congregations of Buckhaven Baptist Church, Anstruther Baptist Church, Largo Baptist Church, Pittenweem Baptist Church, Crail Parish Church, the Parish churches of Flotta and Hoy, Orkney, Bracadale and Durinish, Skye (Portnalong, Carbost, and Dunvegan), and the Church of Scotland Department of National Mission, who, in providing opportunities to minister, allowed me to keep my feet more firmly on the ground they would have been otherwise.

Most of all, I wish to thank and dedicate this work to my wife, Elaine, shining in beauty always, and our children, Adrianne, Celeste, and Christian, who challenged, encouraged, endured, laughed, cried, and smiled.
Every Ph.D. dissertation has a story behind it. The story of this Ph.D. began some time ago when I was an undergraduate at a small Christian liberal arts college in the United States. As it relates to this work, my story there can be summarized by two men. The first was the Old Testament professor, a man of stellar academic credentials (Ph.D. Brandeis under Cyrus Gordon), who approached the Bible with the tools of the historical critical school. The second was a professor of English with training in both Biblical studies/theology and, of course, English literature. Although sharing the same basic views and faith commitments, the striking thing was that the English professor said things about the Bible that were so much more insightful and interesting—indeed gripping. In a sense this comparison is unfair; the professor of English, however eccentric, was a man of undoubted genius who remains the greatest mind I have encountered anywhere. But the contrast was really more of a contrast of methodologies and modes of thinking. Although I later left that school for a variety of reasons, I made a perhaps greater move— I changed my major from Bible to English.

The story picks up again some time later. After a 10 year hiatus from the academic world spent ranching and farming among the rocks and sagebrush of the family farm in eastern Washington state, I hit the books again at a major American Evangelical seminary. While I greatly respect this institution and very much share its general ethos and outlook, here I came increasingly to see an inadequate appreciation of the Bible as a work of literature, particularly its narrative portions. Perhaps the motivation stemmed from an aversion of allegorical readings (horrors), the excesses of many current literary readings, and a laudable desire to read the Bible, as history where appropriate, in its historical context. Yet this seemed to me to lead to a kind of blindness to certain aspects of the Bible, ironically, aspects that can well be said to be part of the author’s intention. Ascending the soapbox for a moment, the gathering around the fire in John 21 cannot be confined to the dust bin of “local color” and its resonances, however sentimental, of the warmth of the presence of Jesus must be taken into account. Likewise, the deaths of Elimelech, Mahlon, and Killion in Moab in the
opening verses of Ruth offer, at least minimally, an invitation to associate these deaths with Moab and judgment rather than, as I heard in one memorable lecture, bare details with which to begin a story. However trivial, these examples represent a clash of methodologies and modes of thinking of no small importance when, especially, preaching from one or the other is taken into account.

To some extent, this dissertation represents an attempt to explore and, if possible, come to terms with these tensions for myself, for my evangelical fellow travelers, and possibly for others. Two strains of my life and interests, the Bible and theology on the one hand and literature and literary analysis on the other, are here placed in a sustained dialogue which attempts to give full weight to what each has to offer in a way that, it is hoped, is mutually beneficial. While some might have reservations of the place given to theology with respect to literature, doubtless others may have equal reservations of the reverse.

As regards the dissertation itself, several things may be helpfully noted. The chapters are relatively independent, partly because they each interact with bodies of critical literature which are relatively independent of each other, and partly because the subject matter of each chapter raises its own issues and challenges. Each chapter therefore has its specific concerns and do not so much build on each other as they build the collective case for which the work is arguing. At the same time, they nevertheless relate to each other and are approached from and within the framework governing the entire work. Additionally, while writing some chapters, I was continually met by the challenge of presenting the material in a coherent order when everything related to that chapter needed to be explained at once.

In any case, the subject matter presented here has been a reward in itself—full of discoveries, holding my interest, deepening my appreciation for the Gospel of John, and indeed for the Gospel itself.

ΠΙΣΤΕΥΘΗΝΙ ΤΟ ΕΥΑΓΓΕΛΙΟΝ

Brian Larsen St. Andrews, September 2001
-INTRODUCTION-

"It is in Literature, in the poem, in the play, in the novel that philosophic models, that trials of abstract metaphysical and moral possibility, have been given the density, the enacted and existential weight of felt life."
George Steiner, "A Reading Against Shakespeare," Essays, 109

"Literary Criticism should be completed by criticism from a definite ethical and theological standpoint."

I OPENING REMARKS

The Bible itself is manifestly a work of literature and a work of theology. As such it offers a distinct perspective on the relationship between God and the created order. Christian theology usually includes significant reflection and reliance on the Biblical texts and some significant attempt to address issues of life arising from the experience of human beings living within the created order. Given the enormity and scope of the issues, it is not surprising that much of world literature attempts to articulate, express, or reflect on the meaning of human life with respect to the existence of God and his interactions with human beings and the temporal order. The relationship between beliefs and experience, and immanence and transcendence are
perennial issues in both literature and theology. While they do often explore the same issues, recalling Steiner's comment, works of literature and the Bible may themselves be studied as literary locations at which and by which the issues pertaining to theology and experience themselves are given artistic form.

The Fourth Gospel (FG) is just such a location, arguably the most transparently literary and theological of the four Gospels. Using the FG with reference to specific characters in the FG, the present work will seek to outline and explore the relationship between literature and specifically Christian theology by holding each up for comparison and contrast in a sustained interaction that will prove mutually illuminating and contribute to the field of literary studies applied to the Bible.

In a sense, whatever follows can be framed by the two quotations from Steiner and Eliot cited above. Because of their mutual concern with expressing and evaluating human experience with reference to God or the transcendent, literature and theology may be assumed to be in some relationship to each other, on an explicitly theistic basis rooted in the Biblical teaching that God is the Creator or for no other reason than that both are simply part of the phenomena of human history and experience. This is not, however, to equate religious experience and literary experience,¹ it is to note that there are some similarities. The nature, content, and limits of that relationship is unclear nor is there any readily apparent systematic means by which such a relationship might be explored. By way of introduction, it will therefore be necessary to, first, outline the way in which literature and theology will be placed in dialogue here, an interaction

¹ For a critique of this tendency, see Leland Ryken, *Triumphs of the Imagination: Literature in Christian Perspective* (Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity Press, 1979).
based on four elements: A) the principle of interaction- human experience; B) the means of interaction-archetypal criticism; C) the location of interaction- characters in the FG; D) the ideology and governing principle of the interaction- Christian theology. Human experience and Christian theology, on a Christian understanding, very much interact and connect to form something of a circle or totality of which archetypal criticism and the characters in the FG form a part. Time and reading being linear, however, these elements will be introduced below by moving from A to D in progressive and overlapping fashion, concluding with a statement of objectives and qualifications.

II EXPERIENCE, ARCHETYPE, AND ARCHETYPAL LITERARY CRITICISM

The concept of archetype as a way of categorizing and explaining human experience rose to prominence through the work of Carl Jung in the field of psychology. Jung defines archetype as follows,

The primordial image or archetype is a figure, whether it be a daemon, man, or process, that repeats itself in the course of history wherever creative phantasy is freely manifested. Essentially, therefore, it is a mythological figure. If we subject these images to a closer investigation we discover them to be the formulated resultants of countless typical experiences of our ancestors. They are, as it were, the psychic residua of numberless experiences of the same type. They depict millions of individual experiences in the average, presenting a kind of picture of the psychic life distributed and projected into the manifold shapes of the psychological pandemonium....Each of these images contains a piece of human psychology and human destiny, a relic of suffering or delight that has happened countless times in our ancestral story, and on the average follows ever the same course. It is like a deeply graven river-bed in the soul, in which the waters of life, that had spread hitherto with groping and uncertain course over wide but shallow surfaces, suddenly become a mighty river. This happens when that particular chain of circumstances is
encountered which from immemorial time has contributed to the laying down of the primordial image.²

Archetypes, Jung believes, are to be found in a variety of intellectual contexts, ranging from Plato’s concept of forms to Kant’s categories of human cognition and beyond. But rather than logical or metaphysical categories, Jung finds archetypes rooted in depth psychology.³ For Jung, archetypes are visible manifestations of something rooted in the deepest soil of human experience.⁴ Frasier’s influential The Golden Bough pursues a similar line of thought from an anthropological perspective.⁵ Whatever its source, in general terms the concept of archetype has a long history and has been widely used in a number of disciplines.

One of those disciplines is literary criticism. Archetypal literary criticism may be defined as follows,

Archetypal criticism focuses on the generic, recurring and conventional elements in literature that cannot be explained as matters of historical influence or tradition. It studies each literary work as part of the whole of literature. This kind of criticism accepts as its informing principle that archetypes—typical images, characters, narratives designs, themes, and other literary phenomena—are present in all literature and so provide the basis for study of its interconnectedness.⁶

³ ibid., 278-279.
⁴ ibid., 118-119.
Or plainly, “The archetype is simply the typical at the highest power of literary
generalization.”

The application of archetypal analysis to literature received its most
comprehensive and influential treatment in Northrop Frye’s *Anatomy of Criticism*.
Indeed, perhaps no work of literary criticism produced in the second half of the
twentieth century has had the impact of Frye’s *Anatomy of Criticism*, specifically his
third essay, “Archetypal Criticism: Theory of Myths.” While indebted to Jung and
Frasier, Frye is by no means bound by a link between archetype and anthropology and
depth psychology. For Frye, archetypes are simply typical and recurring elements of
literature, something resembling a convention, a way in which literary experience, itself
a social fact and mode of communication, may be unified. Building on the universal
tendency to set an ideal and innocent world against the fallen world of realism and
experience and employing the concept of archetype, Frye develops a comprehensive
theory of literary criticism based on four enduring literary *mythoi* or generic plots;
romance, tragedy, satire and irony, and comedy which Frye analogously relates to the
Summer, Fall, Winter, and Spring, respectively. They are typically diagrammed in
relation to each other below.

---

7 Geoffrey Hartman, “Ghostlier Demarcations: The Sweet Science of Northrop Frye,” in *Beyond
9 Lee writes, “So far as Frye’s account of archetypal criticism is concerned, it is important to
recognize that he disengaged the concept of the literary archetype from its anthropological and
For Frye, in common with other forms of archetypal analysis, these four mythoi transcend time, place and genre; they are simply the enduring patterns of all narrative literature. He outlines the four primary mythoi as follows,

The four mythoi that we are dealing with, comedy, romance, tragedy, and irony, may now be seen as four aspects of a central unifying myth. Agon or conflict is the basis or archetypal theme of romance, the radical of romance being a sequence of marvelous adventures. Pathos or catastrophe, whether in triumph or in defeat, is the archetypal theme of tragedy. Sparagmos, or the sense that heroism and effective action are absent, disorganized or doomed to defeat, and that confusion and anarchy reign over the world, is the archetype of irony and satire. Anagnorisis, or recognition of a newborn society rising in triumph around a still somewhat mysterious hero and his bride, is the archetypal theme of comedy.

These categories enjoy broad popular recognition and command wide recognition among literary critics. By organizing these literary categories into a comprehensive scheme of interpretation, Frye’s program enables systematic comparison and contrast.

As a way of limiting the scope of the inquiry into literature and theology and to avoid a discussion of the romance, tragedy, irony and satire, and comedy abstracted

---

11 Frye, Anatomy, 115.
12 Frye, Anatomy, 192. The classifications adopted here will follow Frye with the exception of triumph in defeat being always seen as tragedy. Triumph in defeat, as in the case of Jesus, is more in keeping with romance.
from any specific text, or applied generally to a specific text, these literary archetypes will be applied to characters in the FG who, it will be argued, embody the salient features of each mythos: Jesus, an innocent and virtuous man acting on behalf of others embodies much of the heroic pattern characteristic of romance; Pilate, unable or unwilling to act justly in an unwanted and unavoidable particular circumstance, as tragic; Thomas and the Jews, as representatives of the ironic and skeptical point of view; and Peter, who denies Christ and later recovers, as comic. Conversely, these characters will serve as focal points for an integration of the various archetypes with theological concerns. Frye’s system will serve as the conduit by which literature and theology may be in dialogue at the specific location of these characters in the FG.13

The advantages of Frye’s system are, as stated, that it is comprehensive and straightforward encompassing a large portion of western imaginative literature without being simplistic. And Frye’s classification system offers the advantage of explaining the relationships of one type of literature with another, as a way of putting the whole of literature in dialogue with itself. Additionally, by concentrating on archetype rather than genre, and because archetype precedes and transcends genre, Frye sidesteps pedantic concerns as to whether, for example, a novel can be tragic because it is a prose narrative rather than a dramatic production.14 Genre, on the other hand, refers to the specific form in which the literary work actually appears.15 For example, the

---

13 By mythoi or mythos, Frye essentially argues for a mode or meta-archetype, the basic idea being the same in both cases. Since the current discussion is largely confined to character and for simplicity and grammatical ease of reference, “archetype” will generally be used in place of Frye’s mythoi.

14 See Frye, Anatomy, 162.

15 For example, Reardon observes, “The “novel” is undoubtedly a major literary genre. The broader term “romance” may well signify something bigger and more important than a mere literary genre. In may constitute a whole mode of thought, a frame of reference, an authority for our behaviour: Frye’s
form and presentation of Hardy’s *The Return of the Native* is in the genre of a novel yet it follows many of the conventions of Greek tragedy and may be considered, like Greek tragedy, as archetypal tragedy. A novel might conceivably contain elements of all four archetypes. Finally, Frye’s system itself, like the Jungian archetypal analysis to which it owes no small debt, is applicable beyond literature and, for example, has been usefully applied to the narrative forms of history writing by Hayden White. Elements of White’s work will also be employed to a limited extent as it relates to literary and conceptual issues.

Frye has his critics. Frye often interchanged the terms systematic and scientific and proposed his system as a means of establishing literary criticism on a scientific basis. For this it has drawn criticism and time has shown this to be a false hope. However, this has by no means decreased its explanatory usefulness as a self-coherent system. Reflecting the difficulty of relating universals to particulars, any classification system tends to clarify and obscure by virtue of the fact the universals do not always illuminate a particular work. An additional related criticism is that Frye’s system with its emphasis on universal themes of literature is notably synchronic rather than diachronic. Colin Flack observes,

> A classifying theorist such as Northrop Frye, while being intimately familiar with the history of literature, has no way of making sense of the familiarity within his classificatory scheme. Much of the argument of Frye’s *Anatomy* term “secular scripture” is a singularly felicitous formula.” B. P. Reardon. *The Form of Greek Romance* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1991) 12.
18*ibid.*, 140-151.
of Criticism rests on generalizations which beg the main questions at issue, and he has only the most improvisational things to say about why our literary conventions have changed as they have. The flaw in Frye's approach is that it is standpointless and unhistorical rather than based in a present-day creative sensibility, and that it can therefore offer us little more than an academic exercise in literary taxonomy.  

What Flack says, while generally true, need not be taken as a disadvantage and can be taken just as easily as an advantage. Indeed, the very purpose of archetypal criticism of any sort is to be "standpointless and unhistorical" and to focus on perennial themes regardless of when and where they occur. What Flack views as a fatal flaw is little more than stating the obvious. Frye did not conceive Anatomy of Criticism as a literary history. And, diachronic analysis of any kind must recognize the persistence of a given form through time and therefore unavoidably pays some attention to the synchronic aspect of literature. In many ways, the synchronic approach of Frye's Anatomy provides the natural counterpoint to Auerbach's Mimesis, a work that might easily be criticized as being too wedded to a diachronic approach. Criticism of Frye or Auerbach on the grounds of being synchronic or diachronic, or stressing the universal or the particular, is equally correct and equally misguided.

Flack also notes that the Anatomy of Criticism "rests on generalizations which beg the main questions at issue." Booth makes a similar observation on Frye, commenting, "I find myself again and again unable to guess "how he knows" a

---


21 The diachronic and synchronic methods can profoundly critique each other; indeed, a synchronic approach to the FG may expose interpretative myopia within diachronic criticism as diachronic criticism.
particular assertion." Likewise Borkland points out, "Frye's 'method' - his constant dependence on simile and analogy to make his main points - raises some serious questions. The analogies are often striking, but whether or not they have much logical validity is another matter." The issue here is Frye's method of argumentation. The simple fact of the matter is that Frye's method is self-justifying and self-evident; he makes no formal attempt at proof. In common with all analogical reasoning, it has no "logical" validity. For Frye, and for the present work, this must be laid bare and kept in mind from start to finish. Like any argument from analogy, connections can only be suggested, never "proved." Arguments from analogy can be better or worse and must be evaluated on the basis of what analogy is and does. The only authority available is implicit, one relying on an imaginative sense of the authoritative similitude of things and the inherent appropriateness of various generalizations and specific connections.

Archetypal criticism in any form in any discipline relies on assumptions of similarity.

But rather than being a conspicuous exception, Frye is well within the tradition of literary criticism as interpretation, of reasoning by analogy and speaking for literature as its interpreter. Frye has simply taken a common method of interpretation, fashioned it into a system, and made it a distinct target in doing so. Interpretation of this sort performs a function similar to that which historians often do for the facts of history. Indeed, in his analysis of forms of history writing White favorably observes,

Romantic historians, and, indeed, "narrative historians" in general, are inclined to construct generalizations about the whole historical field and the meaning of its processes that are so extensive that they bear very little

---

weight as propositions that can be confirmed or disconfirmed by appeal to empirical data.\textsuperscript{24}

The issue can hardly be confined to the humanities. As Polanyi has shown, "There is nothing in any concept that points \textit{objectively} to any sort of reality.\textsuperscript{25}

Additionally, any coherentist effort, including Frye's or the one offered here, suffers from the need to explain the parts in terms of the whole \textit{and simultaneously} the whole in terms of its parts. Part of the difficulty here may be traced to problems related to finding a way between induction and deduction, a problem Kuhn, like Polanyi, observed with regard to the "difficulties often encountered in developing points of contact between a theory and nature,\textsuperscript{26} a difficulty noted by Frye himself.\textsuperscript{27} The unavoidable result is some form of circular reasoning. Criticism on this ground alone, however, is banal; any scientific or historical theory of any scope manifests the same inherent difficulty.\textsuperscript{28} A coherentist system does not exist in isolation and must be judged on the basis of its overall explanatory value of the data it seeks to explain. A coherentist system offers the advantage of placing the parts in relation to a whole and constructing a whole in relation to its parts rather than isolating the parts or abstracting the whole. Historical/critical and theological studies tend, at least superficially, to be at opposite ends of the part/whole continuum. Reflecting the difficulty of relating

\textsuperscript{24}White, \textit{Metahistory}, 15.
\textsuperscript{25}Michael Polanyi and Harry Proschi, \textit{Meaning} (Chicago and London: The University of Chicago Press, 1975) 61, his emphasis.
\textsuperscript{28}This is Kuhn's essential point in \textit{Revolutions}. Interpretation of the FG in terms of the "Johannine community" is essentially a coherentist approach, although, unlike the present work, one that purports to establish historical fact.
universals to particulars, any classification system, especially one as universal as Frye’s, clarifies but can also obscure by virtue of the fact the universals do not always illuminate particular works. Like the four points of a compass, Frye’s four archetypes do not always reflect the direction traveled or the lay of the land but they do serve as valuable reference points for making one’s way. As with the synchronic/diachronic dilemma, it must be acknowledged as a liability, but need not be taken as fatal.

The advantage is that Frye’s archetypes are general and flexible yet maintain an explanatory value. A practical disadvantage of Frye, one that reflects the partial validity of the above criticisms, is that a portion of the minuitia of Frye’s analysis seems little more than esoteric mumbo-jumbo. On archetypal criticism Hartman remarks, “Archetypal analysis can degenerate into an abstract thematic where the living pressure of mediations is lost and all connections are skeletonized.” In consequence, the present work will make use of Frye’s four archetypes as an overall explanatory system and refer to Frye as appropriate, but will in no way be bound to everything he says. Significantly, an attempt will be made to go beyond Frye and offer an account of each archetype that, if less nuanced and erudite, is at least, it is hoped, more specific and clear. Yet the basic validity of Frye’s system will simply be assumed as a given, a system that provides the basic framework for the classification of literature on which the present work is based. If Frye has failed to establish literature on a scientific basis, a designation of waning authority and desirability, a state of affairs equally true for

---

29 see Booth, A Rhetoric of Irony, 100-101, note.
historians in their discipline, he in large measure succeeded in providing a self-coherent and widely applicable framework of interpretation.

A key feature of Frye’s archetypal system is that it is intended to be non-ideological and Frye’s opening “Polemical Introduction” is written to insure that it stays that way. Frye views literary criticism as a discipline in search of some kind of unifying theory, still in its infancy at the naive induction and classification stage. *Anatomy of Criticism* represents Frye’s attempt to fill this void. Literary criticism for Frye must be autonomous and develop its own theories and practices like history or science. The importation of sets of values or a conceptual framework, be it Christian or Marxist, etc., must be avoided. Evaluation of literature must take place on its own terms, terms derived from literature itself. Frye responds to the criticism that literature must deal with the larger world in some way and thereby be potentially open to outside evaluation by insisting that literature creates an autonomous world of its own. Literary criticism proceeds, like math, hypothetically and is verified by its internal consistency and application to its subject matter. For Frye, literature is primarily a verbal structure. In its own way Frye’s non-ideological system was revolutionary and prefigures much of later structuralism and deconstruction but without the sterility of the former or the reader centered-ness of the latter.

---

But there is no reason, other than Frye's own polemical assertions to the contrary, to accept Frye's rejection of ideology. Just as Frye himself developed his criticism shorn, perhaps incompletely, of the wool of its psychological and anthropological ancestry, Frye's four archetypes are readily suited for some kind of ideological or theological analysis. By setting the ideological element aside, if this was ever a realistic possibility, Frye paradoxically rendered his work more open to the very thing he sought to avoid. Frye's polemics are a line in the sand and nothing more. The present work will give an applied theological interpretation to the basic outlines of Frye's archetypes as they appear in the FG with reference to specific characters. Since the present work is a dialogue, Christian theology will also speak to literature by integrating theology and a Christian meta-narrative into literature by way of Frye's archetypal framework, in this sense taking to heart Eliot's statement, quoted above, that, "Literary Criticism should be completed by criticism from a definite ethical and theological standpoint." To the extent that this proves to be valid, both are reinforced by the other's perspective. Depending on one's point of view, Frye may perhaps gain more than he loses.

The same method of Frye's ahistorical reasoning by analogy, or the authoritative similitude of things, will be employed in the present work, albeit one with an explicitly theological basis- that all of reality as the creation of God may be interpreted within the framework of Christian theology. At its most basic level,

---

33 Jameson faults Frye's definition of romance at this very point. He notes, "Frye's account...fails to come to grips with the conceptual categories which inform and preselect the attributes and qualities by which those states [of being in romance] are characterized." Fredric Jameson, "Magical Narratives: Romance as Genre," New Literary History 7 (1975) 139-140.

traditional Christian theology holds that all things were created by God (Genesis 1:1, John 1:3, Colossians 1:16) and that all of creation exists within a meta-narrative in which God is actively involved (Acts 17:28, Colossians 1:16). Although there are limits imposed by the fall and the otherness or transcendence of God, it does not follow that an assumption of relatedness is unjustified. Any attempt to integrate (or contrast) two or more works of artistic creation by the same artist assumes a relatedness whether anything is known about the artist or not. Archetypal study of any variety rests on the observance of the recurring or typical in human experience as reflected in the wide variety of artistic creations. Archetypal study is simply the attempt to make some sense and use of these observations, whether on non-theistic or theistic assumptions, as done here. On an analogical basis by means of archetypal criticism, whether theistic and Christian or non theistic, elements of the FG may be compared to Shakespeare or Homer or Sophocles with absolutely no account of historical influence offered or assumed even though these four archetypes certainly appear in the literature written before and during the New Testament era.

---

35 This is not in any way an attempt to prove the existence of God or predicate something about God by reference to the temporal order after the manner of natural theology; rather the present work assumes a Christian point of view and is an attempt to relate that point of view to imaginative attempts to express significant and enduring patterns of human experience as found in literature.

36 If the world is viewed on a theistic basis as the creation of God, to that extent it might be expected to find and even assert analogical relationships.

37 Comedy and tragedy are well known to predate the NT and irony is certainly a feature of the FG itself. Less familiar perhaps, is romance, on which Reardon remarks, “Above all, it is now beyond question that romance constituted, in antiquity, a veritable genre.” B. P. Reardon, The Form of Greek Romance (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1991) 10. It may be remarked that most study of the NT in its historical setting operates on the principle that similarity implies influence. The historical critic of the FG arguing for a particular historical influence can usually do no more than reason by analogy, the results of such analogical relations advanced here being qualified and modest in comparison.
At the same time, by relating the four archetypes to characters in the FG a vital connection to experience and the particular will be maintained. Rather than being only abstract locations of interaction, these characters, like any characters, serve as human invitations into the world of the text, points of contact and imaginative identification with that strange new world of the FG and points of reference defining the reader’s location within that world. Through character identification, a kind of “aesthetic encounter” or reader response occurs, one traditionally recognized, but perhaps near or outside the bounds of how that discipline is normally understood. And the FG is nothing if it is not the story of one character, Jesus. By focusing on character, some account is given to that “surplus of meaning” wherein it is acknowledged that analysis, definitions and archetypes can only take us so far. Character, then, offers an appropriate meeting place between literature and theology within the field of experience—ours and theirs.

By using these characters in the FG as representative of the various archetypes the disciplines of literary studies and Christian theology meet on something approaching a common ground. The Bible stands as a great cultural and literary document and is of crucial importance for its role in shaping Christian theology. The choice of Jesus, Pilate, the Jews and Thomas, and Peter, offers the advantage of

---


39 The approach here is theological and vertical, in contrast to a tendency of much of reader response criticism towards a problematic emphasis on a horizontal and linear perspective. Stephen Moore remarks, “The more the temporality of the reading experience is stressed—its cumulative, successive side—the more the Bible sheds its familiar image a meaning-ful object.” *Literary Criticism and the Gospels: The Theoretical Challenge* (New Haven, Conn.: Yale University Press, 1989) 120.
examining these characters each corresponding to a different literary archetype and
who reach their defining literary climax during the theologically laden events of the
crucifixion and resurrection of Christ. In the FG theology and literature meet in a
profound and dynamic set of circumstances.

III THEOLOGY, ARCHETYPE,
AND CONCEPTUAL PREFIGUREMENT

As a way of initially integrating archetypes and theology on conceptual
grounds, some elements of Hayden White’s *Metahistory* will be employed to clarify and
illustrate the relationships. White’s project is to clarify and categorize various ways in
which the study of history may be approached especially with regard to a work of
history as “...a verbal structure in the form of a narrative prose discourse that purports
to be a model, or icon, of past structures and processes in the interest of explaining
what they were by representing them.”40 For White, the “method of emplotment”
employed is fundamentally linked to the conceptualization and interpretation offered for
a given subject matter. He writes,

Providing the “meaning” of a story by identifying the *kind of story* that has
been told is called explanation by emplotment. If, in the course of narrating
a story, the historian provides it with the plot structure of a Tragedy, he
has “explained” it in one way; if he has structured it as a Comedy, he has
“explained” it another way. Emplotment is the way by which a sequence of
events fashioned into a story is gradually revealed to be a story of a
particular kind.”41

---

40 White, *Metahistory*, 2, his emphasis.
Although it is beyond the scope and object of this work to examine the relationship between the FG and the data it re-presents, it is significant that, according to White, history and literature make use of the same narrative structures and conceptual prefigurements. For the present work however, it is more important to note White’s observation that the method of emplotment employed for a particular story entails a certain point of view inherent in a particular method of emplotment. Form and meaning are inseparable. And, to the extent that an archetype refers to human experience, general or specific, an archetype is both centrifugal and centripetal, simultaneously conveying and creating meaning.

As another way of conceiving of and introducing the four archetypes and observing the connection between content and form, White’s analysis of the tropological function of language may be employed. White argues that the four tropes of language recognized by traditional poetics and modern language theory, metaphor, metonymy, irony, and synecdoche, function as precognitive and pre-critical ways of prefiguring the way in which the writer (White means the historian) conceives the subject matter. He writes,

These tropes permit the characterization of objects in different kinds of indirect, or figurative, discourse. They are especially useful for understanding the operations by which the contents of experience which resist description in unambiguous prose presentations can be prefiguratively grasped and prepared for conscious apprehension. In Metaphor (literally, “transfer”), for example, phenomena can be characterized in terms of their similarity to, and difference from, one another, in the manner of analogy or

42 Similarly, Frye observes, “The mythos is the dianoia in movement; the dianoia is the mythos in stasis.” Frye, Anatomy, 83.
43 In this sense Jung is correct. See above.
44 The study of the tropological elements of language is immense and contains a number of conflicting definitions of even the most basic terms, especially metonymy and synecdoche. White’s definitions will be accepted.
simile, as in the phrase “my love, a rose.” Through Metonymy (literally, “name change”), the name of a part of a thing may be substituted for the name of the whole, as in the phrase, “fifty sail” when what is indicated is “fifty ships.” With Synecdoche, which is regarded by some theorists as a form of Metonymy, a phenomenon can be characterized by using the part to symbolize some quality presumed to inhere in the totality, as in the expression “He is all heart.” Through Irony, finally, entities can be characterized by way of negating on the figurative level what is positively affirmed on the literal level. The figures of the manifestly absurd expression (catachresis) such as “blind mouths,” and of explicit paradox (oxymoron), such as “cold passion,” can be taken as emblems of this trope.45

Most important is White’s analysis of the relationship of the literal to the figurative in each trope. He writes,

Irony, Metonymy, and Synecdoche are kinds of Metaphor, but they differ from one another in the kinds of reductions or intergrations [sic] they effect on the literal level of their meanings and by the kinds of illuminations they aim at on the figurative level. Metaphor is essentially representational, Metonymy is reductionist, Synecdoche is integrative, and Irony is negational.46

Although White does not make any such connections, archetypal modes of emplotment may also be related to the four basic tropes on the basis of their figurative/literal relationships that obtain within a work of literature itself. What White uses to characterize each trope describes the fundamental quality of each archetype and the mode of linguistic prefigurement it entails. Mode of archetypal emplotment, which possesses a figurative quality in itself, may be matched with the conceptual prefigurement manifest in the use of poetic or figurative language. Romance as an archetype may be characterized tropologically and conceptually by representation,

45 White, *Metahistory*, 34, his emphasis. White differs from Jakobson and others who adopt a dualistic conception and see synecdoche and irony as variations on metonymy.
46 ibid., 34, his emphasis.
tragedy by reduction, comedy by integration, and irony by negation. The following chart will illustrate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARCHETYPE</th>
<th>TROPE</th>
<th>LITERAL/FIGURATIVE RELATIONSHIP</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>BELIEF/REALITY RELATIONSHIP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ROMANCE</td>
<td>METAPHOR</td>
<td>REPRESENTATION</td>
<td>MY LOVE, A ROSE</td>
<td>B=R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAGEDY</td>
<td>METONYMY</td>
<td>REDUCTION</td>
<td>ALL PEOPLE=ALL HANDS</td>
<td>B&lt;R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMEDY</td>
<td>SYNECDOCHE</td>
<td>INTEGRATION</td>
<td>HE IS ALL HEART</td>
<td>B&gt;R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SATIRE/</td>
<td>IRONY</td>
<td>NEGATION</td>
<td>COOL PASSION</td>
<td>B&gt; &lt;R</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each may be further identified by a conception of reality’s relationship to a belief, an ideal, or the transcendent manifest within a work of literature itself. The fundamental ideological or theological variable between each archetype or trope is the relationship assumed between reality and experience on the one hand and some ideal, transcendent belief, or imaginative conception of things on the other. While the specific belief or ideal will vary, the presence of a belief or ideal and its perceived relationship to reality within a work of literature provides the common ground of conceptual exchange between theology and the four archetypes. Thus, in romance a belief or ideal is held up for representation or display, in tragedy a reduction of that

---


48 Similarly, Cahill develops the idea of a “center” as a point of exchange in, P. J. Cahill, “The Johannine Logos as Center,” *Catholic Biblical Quarterly* 38 (1976) 54-72.
ideal is effected as the ideal no longer adequately corresponds to reality, in irony reality and ideal are separated, and in comedy reality and an ideal progress toward some form of integration. **While by no means identical, the relation of reality to a belief or ideal in literature is in theology analogous to the relationship between reality and one's belief in God and establishes a point of exchange between them.** Thus, for example, Peter is comic in his relation to his partially erroneous theological understanding of Jesus and discipleship, and comic strictly in literary terms without reference to the theology of the FG.

In romance, the representation of one thing in terms of another is assumed to be adequate; the knight is an adequate representation of his ideals, his life being a virtual embodiment of some ideal, the representation of an ideal being the theme of romance. In the FG, Jesus as man is assumed to be an adequate representation of qualities of love and obedience and as a man an adequate representation of God himself. Likewise, when Jesus speaks of being “born again” or “living water” he assumes a theological reality cast in metaphorical language and invites his listeners to move toward a way of thinking that is at once metaphorical and equally theologically meaningful. In romance, reality is assumed to be infused with meaning, giving rise to the expectation that objects or events carry a meaning larger than themselves. Metaphor and symbol, so common in romance and the FG, are the inevitable result.

In metonymy a fundamental reduction takes place. “All people” are reduced to a constituent part by the expression “all hands.” Conceptually the part stands for the whole with an emphasis on the part. “All people” are reduced to “all hands”, the
people being reduced by being characterized through their implied function as workers.

In metonymy the more or less integrated conception of metaphor gives way to a fractured part-part or whole part relationship wherein one element stands in a relationship of reduction to the other. Likewise, in tragedy a reduction takes place wherein the integrated world and ideals and beliefs held by the protagonist are exposed as inadequate. The protagonist is seen to be reduced by being separated from his/her ideals. Further, the protagonist is seen to have a representative function for humanity in that he or she stands as a part in relation to the whole of humanity giving rise to the theme of sacrifice implicit in tragedy even though, by reduction, the sacrifice of the tragic protagonist is viewed as inadequate. Conceptually, the tragic protagonist moves to a position in which beliefs and ideals are reduced and exceeded by the demands of reality. The validity of those ideals, however, remains, if vestigial, however much particular circumstances calls the enactment of those ideals into question. Metonymy and tragedy stand between metaphor and romance on the one hand and between irony as a trope and irony/satire as an archetype on the other.

In synecdoche a fundamental integration takes place. In White’s example, “he is all heart,” qualities represented figuratively by “heart” become integrated as a conceptual description of what is intrinsic of the person as a whole. In synecdoche the part is seen as integrated with a whole greater than the sum of the parts, yet the part retains its own integrity. For example, “crown” in synecdoche stands conceptually for rulership or kingship or authority rather than simply for a ruler as it would in metonymy. “Crown” implies more than a king or queen in a way opposite to the way
"all hands" stands for "all people." Comedy as an archetype displays the living movement of an individual's or group's integration with a larger whole, whether marriage, society, self-knowledge, salvation, etc. Misunderstandings, obstacles, and mistakes typify the comic movement toward integration. In the FG, Peter struggles to integrate his belief in Jesus with what that means in terms of practical experience.

White characterizes metaphor, metonymy, and synecdoche as naive in the sense that "they can be deployed only in the belief in language's capacity to grasp the nature of things in figurative terms." Irony stands in contrast as the mode of negation. White observes, "The trope of Irony, then, provides a linguistic paradigm of a mode of thought which is radically self-critical with respect not only to a given characterization of the world of experience but also to the very effort to capture adequately the truth of things in language." Metaphor, metonymy, and synecdoche lend themselves to the expression of some ideal or belief in a way that the negation characteristic of irony does not. Irony as an archetype relies on two levels of perception, as do the other tropes, but its characteristic negation works against any kind of integration. Irony as a mode of thinking (as opposed to a literary structure) emphasizes the difficulty or impossibility of reality being integrated with a belief or ideal in a way that is not illusory, where one level cannot be integrated with another. In the FG, irony as an archetype and literary structure is employed to ironize irony as a way of thinking by negation characterized in different ways by Thomas and the Jews. To Nicodemus and the Samaritan woman, references to "born again" and "living water" begin in literalism and misunderstanding

---

69 White, *Metahistory*, 36.
70 Ibid., 37, my emphasis.
and invite a move through synecdoche to metaphor in its fullest sense, or, from irony to comedy to romance. The archetypes may be viewed by analogy as narrative extensions of the various tropes or, conversely, the tropes as tropological compressions of the various archetypes embodied in specific characters in the FG.

Frye associates each archetype with a particular season of the year. The relationship of the leaf to the tree may be employed to illustrate the relationship of belief and reality in the four archetypes.

Summer/romance - the leaf in living union with the tree in full representation of itself as a complete and living whole.

Fall/tragedy - the leaf still attached to the tree, but reduced from its living symbiotic union to an altered and dying form of its former self.

Winter/satire and irony - the realized negation of a living relationship between leaf and tree.

Spring/comedy - the promise of renewed integration between leaf and tree.

Significantly, the seasons of the year, the stages of the leaf, the four tropes, and the four archetypes all blend into each other in a circular continuum with each perhaps best defined in relation to its opposite. Frye notes, “If we think of our experience of these mythoi, we shall realize that they form two opposed pairs. Tragedy and comedy, contrast rather than blend, and so do romance and irony, the champions respectively of the ideal and the actual. On the other hand, comedy blends insensibly into satire at one extreme and into romance at the other; romance may be comic or tragic; tragic extends form high romance to bitter and ironic realism.” Frye, Anatomy, 162.
continuity and distinction and opposites in relation will be helpful to keep in mind. Frye tends to be more concerned with continuity within and between archetypes as opposed to an emphasis on distinctive features, whereas here this latter tendency will be evident.

The relation of belief to reality, whether in literature or theology, will serve as the variable by which overall guide to trace continuity, distinction, and relationships. The chart below will illustrate many of the items discussed above.  

52 While the chart’s main purpose is to illustrate the synchronic relationship of belief/ideal to reality/experience, it may be noted that this pattern is diachronically analogous to the Biblical meta-narrative of innocence, fall, experience, redemption, and consummation. The movement through representation, reduction, and negation parallels the history of Biblical studies (itself a mirror of intellectual history) since the Middle ages as outlined by Hans Frei in *The Eclipse of Biblical Narrative: A Study in Eighteenth and Nineteenth Century Hermeneutics* (New Haven, CT and London: Yale University Press, 1974). Frei’s own work on narrative is an attempt at integration of some kind. Although it will not be attempted in detail here, Biblical studies of most kinds may be broadly classified according to ideas and relationships shown on the chart.
Archetype and the specific characters may thus be viewed in parallel by their conception of the relationship between experience and some belief or ideal. Each archetype may be characterized by the implicit relationship between a belief or ideal and experience, a relationship that governs the actual form of a work of literature in terms of plot and character (especially), and setting. Form and meaning, or form and ideology are linked in a way that is not casual, one that artist and reader tacitly know to be true. The difference between an archetypal comic plot and tragic plot reflects a fundamental difference in worldview. Each archetype represents a particular point of view, or frame of reference that forms the basis for an implicit contract with the reader.

Beliefs comprise part of what has been termed more generally as a “frame of reference.” A frame of reference or paradigm is a system or way of thinking about reality that includes active consciously held beliefs and tacit assumptions about life. Language itself involves a frame of reference or script in which it is to be interpreted. Raskin observes,

The script is a large chunk of semantic information surrounding the word or evoked by it. The script is a cognitive structure internalized by the native speaker and it represents the native speaker’s knowledge of a small part of the world. Every speaker has internalized rather a large repertoire of scripts of “common sense” which represent his/her knowledge of certain routines, standard procedures, basic situations, etc...

Beyond the semantic level, a frame of reference is the ideological, physical, historical, sociological, and psychological context in which a given individual or group interprets reality. In developing his ideas of paradigms and paradigm shifts, Kuhn applies a

similar notion to science and scientific revolutions and stresses the idea that science advances only in so far as adequate paradigms arise to facilitate progress. Following a broad but generally sociological approach to what he terms "frame analysis," Goffman notes, "a primary framework is one that is seen as rendering what would otherwise be a meaningless aspect of the scene into something that is meaningful." Life itself, then, involves interpretation and interpretation is inevitably done through a frame of reference. In literature, the author or narrator provides a frame of reference for the reader and supplies a frame of reference for each character within the narrative. The two may or may not correspond. Here, "frame of reference" will be used primarily in regard to the relationship of a belief or ideal with reality or experience as a convenient way of referring to these issues.

In the FG, the narrator and Jesus share a frame of reference not normally shared fully by the other characters. By asserting that "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God and the Word was God," the prologue of the FG places the context of the FG in terms of both story and discourse as beginning in eternity past, beyond the creation events narrated in Genesis 1 on which language they draw. The proper context or frame of reference of the FG, and by implication, all of reality, lies beyond temporal creation with God himself. The prologue of the FG thus establishes a

---

54 Kuhn, Structure.
56 Unless noted, all scripture quotations are taken from the New International Version.
conceptual paradigm by which Jesus and the FG are to be interpreted.\textsuperscript{57} Comparing
the Johannine prologue to its contemporary literature, Harris concludes,

[I]t is to be remembered that the evangelist, by beginning his work with a
prologue, placed the entire work within the literary sphere of Greek
religious drama. Consequently it was directed to a widespread
readership.... The introduction of the Logos into a literary construction
which follows the convention of certain ancient Greek prologues in that
preparation is vital for a correct understanding of the Johannine gospel.
From the prologue onwards the evangelist skillfully unveils the full identity-
the metaphysical identity, one might say - of the protagonist of this cosmic
drama, the Logos μονογενής θεός, Jesus Christ.\textsuperscript{58}

The prologue also informs the reader that the “Word became flesh and lived for a while
among us.” (1:14) The context is at once universal and particular. Whatever is said
about the Word applies to the flesh and must be taken together in what Culpepper calls
a “stereoscopic” reading,\textsuperscript{59} however much a rebellious world remains in darkness on this
matter.

IV ARCHETYPAL CRITICISM AND THE FOURTH
GOSPEL

However uneasy the relationship may be to its older cousins, the fact remains
that in recent years literary studies now play a prominent role in Biblical Studies. The
appearance in 1983 of The Anatomy of the Fourth Gospel by Robert Culpepper, who
had previously approached the FG very much in the historical/ critical tradition,

\textsuperscript{57} Barrett notes, “John intends that the whole of his gospel shall be read in the light of this verse. The
deeds and words of Jesus are the deeds and words of God; if this be not true the book is blasphemous.”
\textsuperscript{58} Elizabeth Harris, Prologue and Gospel: The Theology of the Fourth Evangelist, JSNTSS 107
\textsuperscript{59} Culpepper, Anatomy, 33.
established literary approaches to the FG in the mainstream and granted them status not previously attained. Although criticized by some as anachronistic, Culpepper’s *Anatomy* is generally a modest and straightforward work, employing such traditional features of literary criticism as plot and character, along with the more recent concerns of narrator and point of view, narrative time, implicit commentary, and the implied reader. Culpepper makes limited and cautious use of Frye’s archetypes and will be referred to later. Culpepper’s main purpose in *Anatomy* is simply to make known and explain certain literary features of the FG with an emphasis on reader response criticism. As such, it tends to be more of a literary handbook to the FG and less of a sustained argument or work of theology, a limitation that is at once an asset and arguably contributes to the timeless quality and enduring influence of the book.

While Culpepper’s *Anatomy* remains the classic, perhaps no other writer has written as extensively on literary approaches to the FG than Mark Stibbe. Stibbe’s *The Gospel of John as Literature: An Anthology of Twentieth-Century Perspectives* offers a valuable historical survey of the field as well as representative examples of various methodologies and perspectives, from reader response and structural criticism to the more ideologically inclined feminist criticism. In *John as Storyteller* (1992), Stibbe attempts to integrate literary criticism of the FG with historical/critical concerns as well as covering the gamut from an emphasis on author, text, and reader. *John’s Gospel* (1994) is an effort to read the FG through various literary methodologies. Stibbe is impressively eclectic in the approaches he employs.

---

More than anyone else, Stibbe has attempted to apply Frye’s archetypal approach to the FG. Rather than connecting archetype to character, as Frye tends to do and will be done here, Stibbe relates Frye’s archetypes to discrete sections of the FG, a proposal that, Murphy believes, undermines the unity of the FG. Unfortunately, this difference aside, much of Stibbe’s use of archetypes is often mistaken resulting from an inadequate understanding of the archetypes combined with their haphazard application. In a particularly egregious example, Stibbe designates the narrative of the Samaritan woman as romance because in Frye’s conception of things romance relates to Summer, and the encounter by the well takes place at noon in the hot sun.

Significantly, use of Frye’s archetypes and the use of “comedy” and “tragedy” as generic terms are common in literary criticism of the Bible. “Comedy” and “tragedy” are often used to refer to little more than the shape of the plot as it relates to

---

63 Francesca Murphy observes, “Mark Stibbe claimed that the plot of John’s Gospel ultimately obeys the U-shaped curve of comedy. But he does not rest content with this suggestion: he has found all four of Frye’s genres in successive stages of the Gospel. Stibbe thinks that we may discover in John the plots of Romance, Tragedy and Satire; it concludes with the ‘mythos of comedy’ in the Resurrection. It beggars credulity to believe that John’s Gospel contains four generic plots, each projecting its own world, and yet converging to create a dramatic and harmonious whole. Shakespeare suggested the possibility, but he was joking.” Murphy, *The Comedy of Revelation: Paradise Lost and Regained in Biblical Narrative* (Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 2000) 229. Perhaps failing to consider the closed nature of drama as compared with the open narrative of the FG, Murphy’s dismissal is more cavalier than careful. Unlike the more nuanced if mistaken Stibbe, Murphy reads the parts of the Bible she deals with exclusively and aggressively in terms of comedy. Against Murphy, it will be argued here that the FG contains the four archetypal plots, but as applied to characters rather than discrete sections. Jesus’ story certainly differs from that of Pilate and Peter.
a happy or sad ending. “Comedy” is also made to refer to any reading of a Biblical text seen to contain humor, even if such humor owes its existence to a reading strategy that is conceptually ironic and parasitic. Additionally, comedy and/or tragedy, unless stretched to the breaking point and beyond, cannot account for much of the data. And, as opposites, no accounting is offered of possible forms existing between them. If this type of criticism is to have significant explanatory value, whether specifically designated “archetypal criticism” or not, it must be established on a more definitive basis than at present. One of the goals of this work will be to examine and clarify the basic components of the archetypes in greater depth than has been previously attempted, especially as they relate to theology and Biblical studies, thus providing a much needed stabilization of the four points of the literary compass. As noted, in Frye’s case some of the confusion may be traced to Frye’s allusive method of argument combined with an emphasis on continuity between and within the four archetypes.

The present work differs from Frye in this respect and will attempt to offer a more fixed accounting of the salient features of each archetype, a clarification that, it is hoped, will prove useful to literary studies applied to any portion of the Bible.  


The remarks on Murphy, (note 61 above) also apply to the point.

For example, Good reads Daniel 1-6 as comedy when it is better taken as romance, or, as Ryken does, as a hero story. See Edwin Good, “Apocalyptic as Comedy: The Book of Daniel,” in Semeia: Tragedy and Comedy in the Bible, 32 (1984) 41-70; Leland Ryken, Words of Delight: A Literary Introduction to the Bible, second ed. (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1992) 109-114. Ryken observes (109) that the story of Daniel (1-6) is “thoroughly governed by the principle of heroic narrative.” Frye divides each archetype into six phases, a subtlety not attempted here.

For example, Good mistakenly reads Daniel as comedy whereas Ryken correctly identifies it as “hero story,” a designation much more in keeping with romance. See, Edwin Good, “Apocalyptic as Comedy: The Book of Daniel,” in Semeia: Tragedy and Comedy in the Bible, 32 (1984) 41-70; Leland
Stibbe closes *John as Storyteller* with the following remarks:

Of particular value will be studies devoted to the revelatory function of the narrative form. The next step from a book such as this must surely be to ask the following question: "If John's story is revelatory, then how much of that sense of disclosure is due to John's exploitation of the narrative form?"

Part of the answer to this very large question will be to examine archetypes in the FG and relate them to their theological significance. Previous literary treatments of the FG offer no integrated literary or theological cosmos and are generally piecemeal attempts at applying particular approaches to particular texts. Unlike Stibbe's gentle probing of the FG's soil with a variety of tools, certainly valuable, the present effort is an attempt to utilize one approach, archetypal criticism, to maximum effect and do so with a view toward comparing the FG with other literature. Although conceived with different methodology with respect to its analysis of discrete narrative units, Dorothy Lee's *The Symbolic Narratives of the Fourth Gospel* is an impressive effort to integrate narrative analysis with the FG's theology, an effort that in this work is hoped to be carried on in a different but related way. The present work is to a great degree an attempt to clarify and expand John's use of the narrative form by way of a comparison with other forms of literature by means of Frye's formulation of archetypal criticism.

**V GOALS, OBJECTIVES, AND QUALIFICATIONS**


The goal of this work is a sustained, rigorous, and mutually illuminating dialogue between literature and theology facilitated by the four archetypes of romance, tragedy, irony, and comedy, a dialogue to be conducted specifically with reference to Jesus, Pilate, Thomas and the Jews, and Peter as they appear in the FG. Christian theology will be brought to bear on literature and, conversely, literature and literary studies may be seen as a legitimate avenue for exploration of certain enduring theological themes. This dialogue will cross barriers between literature and theology in a way that, it is hoped, will prove mutually illuminating for archetypal criticism, for understanding of Jesus, Pilate, the Jews and Thomas, and Peter, as literary characters in the FG, and for literature and theology as separate but related disciplines.

Along the way, a number of goals or benefits may be suggested: 1) To suggest a way ahead for the comparison and/or integration of literature and theology by means of archetypal criticism; 2) To demonstrate the validity and usefulness of archetypal criticism in Biblical studies; 3) To establish the correct archetype for each of the five characters examined; 4) To define archetypes in relation to and inherent and variable relationship between belief or ideal and reality and experience; 5) To define these archetypes from a theological point of view in relation to readily recognizable specific reference points; and 6) To point to a manner, mode, or habit of reading the Bible theologically and literarily as a way of moving toward a fuller appreciation of these two disciplines as opposed to applying literary analysis of the Bible without reference to its theology.
These goals will, however, be limited and defined by the methodology and ideology employed. There are three important elements: the limits of analogy and comparison, the strength of each individual analogy and comparison, and the limits of suggested theological conclusions. First, by using analogical reasoning in terms of comparison and contrast “proof” can only be relative; there can be no conclusive proof as such. With any such undertaking, it is difficult to say “this proves that.” True or false is possible only in the sense that analogies and comparisons are appropriate and illuminating rather than inappropriate and misleading. It is not so much the intention of the present work to “prove” that, for example, that Peter is a comic character as much as it is to show that Peter can be best interpreted as a comic character and that a valuable and illuminating comparison can be made. Although it is most like a romance, in no way is it argued or implied that the FG is a romance, tragedy, anti-romance (irony and satire) or comedy. It is asserted only that certain elements of the FG, namely Jesus, Pilate, the Jews and Thomas, and Peter as they appear in FG, may be analyzed and illuminated in terms of their respective archetypes and by being compared to other literature and characters typified by the same archetype. Archetype, then, is a means of comparison, a point of exchange. The present work is conceived in view of the limitations of comparison and analogy, and these must be kept in mind as a general principle. The very nature of analogy demands the imaginative and poetic. Jasper’s comment that, “Literary readings of the Bible hover between the imaginative and poetic, and the academic” is quite appropriate here.²⁴

Second, any analogy or comparison is not above evaluation by virtue of being an analogy or comparison, but must be evaluated in terms of analogy and comparison. Thus, for example, if Jesus is better explained with reference to tragedy rather than romance or if Pilate is unconvincingly compared to Oedipus, the analogy and comparison is weakened or rendered invalid. On this ground, there is ample space for analysis. As a practical consideration, rather than tediously evaluating the strength or weakness of each element of each comparison and subject the reader to the death of a thousand qualifications, except at points of obvious contention, comparisons will be offered and presented as if valid, legitimate, or true. The same goes for qualifications related to the principle of analogy; the limitations of analogy have been noted.

The strength of the connections between literature and theology will depend on the principle of analogy, the strength of those analogies, and, third, the faith commitments brought to bear on the principle of analogy with respect to a Christian worldview. However much a work of this kind invites a provisional assumption of its own point of view, the present work is in no way an attempt to "prove" a Christian point of view. Rather it is written with a Christian point of view as its primary and governing point of reference. Additionally, as a coherentist effort, the conclusion of the argument is the same as the premise; the strength of the "argument" can only be the strength of the connections made from and within such a worldview according to tacit assumptions of their validity. It is the limitation of the principle of analogy applied to interpretation from and within a particular worldview. The validity of the principle analogy and the validity of a Christian point of view are mutually interpenetrating
assumptions in the present work. The middle ground on which evaluation of the components of this interaction leading to an increased understanding between literature and theology is to occur is the particular and comprehensive strength of its many analogies and comparisons. By conjoining archetypal criticism and characters in the FG, the twin visions of literature and theology will be focused close and distant, however well or poorly, into a single vision of a single cosmos.
THE FOURTH GOSPEL, JESUS, AND ROMANCE

"...the cost of glory in romance is repeated suffering and loss."

Paul Dean, Restless Wanderers, 273

I INTRODUCTION

The unfamiliarity of Romance as a term designating a recognized body of literature with certain distinctive qualities is a fact of life. At the same time, the commonness of romance and its qualities and themes is surprising, finding present day expression in Westerns and science fiction (both in fiction and in film) and other venues where imaginative qualities predominate. Like tragedy, and comedy, romance cannot be confined to any one genre (drama, novel, etc.). Significant elements of romance can be found in works as diverse as The Odyssey, The Tempest, Pilgrim’s Progress, and Moby Dick. Indeed, in viewing fiction as a “total verbal order” Northrop Frye holds that “Romance is the structural core of all fiction.”

The ubiquity of romance as an archetype has much to do with its being expansive, open and inclusive. Consequently it often goes unrecognized. Conversely, tragedy is characterized by concentration and closure, while comedy is characterized by confusion and misunderstanding moving toward integration and a realization of a desired end. Romance both ends where tragedy begins and picks up where comedy leaves off, assuming from the start an integration and an openness to all things imaginative and fantastic. Romance tends to move through something more than moving toward something else. Romance, it will be argued, is the archetype that applies best to Jesus and the FG as a whole.

II ROMANCE, THE FOURTH GOSPEL, AND JESUS

A. THE FOURTH GOSPEL AS ROMANCE IN CRITICAL OPINION

As might be expected, controversy surrounds the archetype the FG can be best compared with. Following Frye's method of classifying literature in terms of four mythoi, Culpepper cautiously designates the FG as being most like a romance. He observes,

As romance inclines towards myth the hero may possess attributes of divinity, but the conflict “takes place in, or at any rate primarily concerns, our world.” The relevance of a mythos so described is obvious. [i.e. romance] In the Gospel of John, Jesus, who has descended from the world above, is unrecognized except by a privileged few. As he strives to fulfill his mission, preliminary minor “adventures” (i.e., signs and conflicts with opponents) begin to reveal his identity. He is faced with a crucial struggle, his own death, which he accepts and thereby finishes his task successfully:

---

“It is finished” (19:30). Although triumph takes the form of apparent defeat, he is recognized by his followers as “my Lord and God” (20:28).³ Culpepper’s discomfort with the romance designation wins out in the end. He notes that “The fit is certainly not perfect. The gospels are clearly very different from other members of this genre or *mythos.* Only when the general shape of the *mythos* is considered somewhat abstractly do the gospels begin to fit in.”⁴ Culpepper here sees the problems more than the possibilities.⁵ No work of literature fits any genre or *mythos* exactly and only when considered somewhat abstractly does any work (or object; trees, for example) fit into any classification, a qualification that applies to reading the gospels as Greek *bioi* as well.⁶ Classification of any kind is an exercise in comparison and as such it is an exercise in exploring similarities and differences. In the case of the FG, the differences present challenges as much as the similarities present opportunities; the struggle is to illumine rather than obfuscate through the process of comparison and contrast.

Stibbe rejects the designation of the FG as romance. Instead, he finds the closest parallel, especially to the passion narrative, in the *mythos* of tragedy and offers Euripides’ *Bacche* for comparison. Significantly, both *The Bacche* and the FG feature a God appearing on earth in the form of a man who remains unrecognized by those he

⁴ *ibid.*, 84.
⁵ Culpepper might well have followed through his flirtation with labeling the plot of the FG as romance. His actual analysis of the plot of the FG fits very well with the plot of a romance and seems only to lack a systematic study and comparison with salient features of romance plot. See Culpepper, *Anatomy*, 84-98.
appears to, giving rise to a number of striking parallels. But in terms of the final shape of the plot and the character of the god/God involved, there are radical differences which Stibbe fails to take into account. Dionysus resorts to deception and guile and is vindictive and spiteful. Jesus comes to reveal and is full of mercy and love. Rejection brings out the best in Jesus, the worst in Dionysus, and here is where the two plots are crucially different. The mercy and self-sacrifice of Jesus at the point when Dionysus is most revolting prompts Stibbe to observe that the story of Jesus subverts the conventions of tragedy.

But this comment begs the question of how much the FG and the story of Jesus conforms to the mythos of tragedy and whether or not Jesus is a tragic figure in chapters 18-19 or anywhere else. Stibbe does not explicitly say Jesus is a tragic figure, but implies as much when he states, “The death of Jesus in John’s gospel is archetypally tragic.” Elsewhere he endorses the views of “very influential secular literary critics and theorists who have regarded the gospel story of Jesus as the archetypal tragic story.” Furthermore the FG is manifestly about Jesus, and, as Stibbe himself notes, “The identification of the genre of John 18-19 depends therefore on our ability to identify the basic image of Jesus, the hero of that story...” Much is therefore at stake in the identification of the story of Jesus.

---

8 Ibid., 144.
9 Ibid., 138. Stibbe cites Frye (Anatomy, 36) in his defense. Frye, not always consistent, has been cited in the present work as designating Jesus as corresponding to the archetype of romance.
10 Ibid., 123.
Much of Stibbe's confusion results from inaccurately identifying this or that element taken from tragedy with this or that group in the FG. For example, he applies the notion of *hamartia* to the Jews and their rejection of Jesus. But *hamartia* is properly a quality applied to the protagonist of a tragedy, who in this case would be Jesus, impossible on the terms of the FG because Jesus is nowhere seen as fallen, sinful, or mistaken. Elsewhere Stibbe applies the term *anagnorisis*, or recognition, to the fact that neither Penthus nor the people of Jesus’ day recognized who Jesus was. Again, *anagnorisis* properly applies to recognition on the part of the protagonist who remains ignorant of certain facts or perceptions until a moment of *anagnorisis*, which comes too late to alter the course of events. Jesus is hardly ignorant of anything and the Jews never recognize Jesus. Pilate, however, is a tragic character complete with *hamartia* who undergoes precisely such an *anagnorisis*. In tragedy recognition and reversal are consequent on the protagonist undergoing a destruction of self in terms of circumstance and self identity. While doubtless there are elements of tragedy in the FG in general and specifically in chapters 18-19, the tragic character and the center of the tragic story in this passage is Pilate and not Jesus. Rather than subverting the *mythos* of tragedy as Stibbe argues, Jesus is not a tragic figure nor is his story best identified with the tragic archetype. Stibbe’s analysis of John 18-19 in comparison with *The Bacche* illuminates because it is ever so close to being right, yet obfuscates as much by making a fundamental category mistake and by a lack of precision in applying the details of tragedy.\(^\text{12}\)

\(^{11}\) ibid., 137.

\(^{12}\) Pilate and tragedy are discussed in detail in chapter two below.
As Culpepper notes, Jesus and his story in the FG most closely resembles a Romance with its pattern “the preliminary minor adventures; the crucial struggle, usually some kind of battle in which either the hero or his foe, or both, must die; and the exaltation of the hero.” Responding to Culpepper, Stibbe objects that “There is a sense of dreamy wistfulness in romances like The Fairie Queene which we certainly do not sense in John’s gospel.” But this is a matter presentation and tone rather than archetypal pattern or what Culpepper refers to as the “general shape” of the story. Stibbe also notes that “Jesus’ conflicts with the Jews are nothing like the knight’s adventures with dragons and other fictive creatures. They are concrete, flesh-and-blood encounters with real, societal evils.” But this curiously literal criticism overlooks the representative and symbolic nature of dragons and such as standing for real dangers met with real selflessness and courage, precisely the qualities evident in Jesus as he met the dragons of his day. Nowhere does Jesus exhibit ignorance, hubris, or character flaws characteristic of and necessary for a figure to be tragic.

Nor can Jesus in the FG be read as comic. In comedy the need typically arises for some outside agency or “miraculous” turn of events to make things right. Jesus is fundamentally the agent of such change rather than its recipient, although Jesus is the recipient of such an action in the resurrection. But the singular fact that Jesus rises

13 Culpepper, Anatomy, 83.
14 Stibbe, John as Storyteller, 126.
15 Ibid., 126.
16 Margaret Davies notes, “In spite of the Gospel’s tragic elements, therefore, they are not tragedies. Jesus’ martyrdom is the unjust humiliation of an innocent man but it is also his final act of obedience to God and it is the way which leads through death to eternal life.” Davies, Rhetoric and Reference in the Fourth Gospel, JSNTSS 69 (Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1992) 108.
17 For a reading of John’s Gospel in terms of comedy, see Francesca Murphy, The Comedy of Revelation: Paradise Lost and Regained in Biblical Narrative (Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 2000) 226-249.
from the dead does not make his story a comedy. The comic hero is one whose understandings and pretensions are at some distance from reality, one who stumbles forward in the darkness of misunderstanding. Self-imposed incongruity with one's surroundings, ignorance of a contingent sort moving to some kind of integration, are the hallmarks of the comic hero and in no way apply Jesus.

B) BASIC ELEMENTS OF ROMANCE

Rather than comedy or tragedy, the story of Jesus and the FG most nearly resembles romance. There are three important considerations under which romance may be broadly defined. First, the basic archetype of romance consists of a story of a hero who embodies and displays some ideal, a characteristic it shares with epic. The story of the hero takes the form of a quest, an episodic account of the hero's identity with that ideal and the maintenance and display of that identity and ideal in the face of challenges and difficulties. Frye gives the following account of romance:

The complete form of the romance is clearly the successful quest, and such a completed form has three main stages: the stage of the perilous journey and the preliminary minor adventures; the crucial struggle, usually some kind of battle in which either the hero or his foe or both, must die; and the exaltation of the hero. We may call these three stages respectively, using Greek terms, the agon or conflict, the pathos or death-struggle, and the anagnorisis or discovery, the recognition of the hero, who has clearly proved himself to be a hero even if he does not survive the conflict.

18 "Hero" will be used in the sense defined in this paragraph, as opposed to the more neutral term "protagonist."
19 "[T]he main emphasis of Homeric criticism, down to about 1750 at least, has been overwhelmingly thematic, concerned with the dianoia or ideal of leadership implicit in the two epics." Frye, Anatomy, 53.
20 ibid., 187.
The hero is identified with the ideal such that representing and maintaining the ideal is synonymous with preservation of the self. Rather than being selfish, the hero embodies a kind of universal selflessness. The hero is one who exceeds reality or the pressure of circumstances and maintains an ideal worthy of death. White observes,

The Romance is fundamentally a drama of self-identification symbolized by the hero's transcendence of the world of experience, his victory over it, and his final liberation from it— the sort of drama associated with the Grail legend or the story of the resurrection of Christ in Christian mythology. It is a drama of the triumph of good over evil, of virtue over vice, of light over darkness, and of the ultimate transcendence of man over the world in which he was imprisoned by the fall.  

Although subject to changing external circumstances, the hero tends to be essentially a static character, the ideological as well as the narrative center of the story, a character who is revealed and reveals. Culpepper notes,

The plot [of the FG] is a plot of action in the sense that Jesus achieves his goals while his fortune apparently changes for the worse. It is a plot of character only in the sense that it is bound up with his moral character and the threats to it, for Jesus is a static character.  

The hero is, poetically speaking, without or very nearly without flaws but is subject to tests and challenges in the course of events. As such romance is fundamentally related to epic and shares these qualities with the FG. The hero is tempted and tried, but the struggle is to maintain an ideal that is readily apparent, not to struggle toward integration or destruction in doubt and perplexity as is typical of comedy and tragedy.

---


To view the FG and the story of Jesus as comedy or tragedy is to mistakenly view a particular phase of Jesus' changing external fortunes as definitive of the whole.

While epic and romance share the fundamental characteristics of a hero who embodies and represents an ideal, the former gave way to the latter in historical development. Ker observes,

[T]he victory of the Norman knights over the English axemen has more than a fanciful or superficial analogy to the victory of the new literature of chivalry over the older forms of heroic narrative. The history of those two orders of literature, of the earlier Epic kinds, followed by the various types of medieval Romance, is parallel to the general political history of the earlier and the later Middle Ages, and may do something to illustrate the general progress of the nations. The passage from the earlier “heroic” civilisation to the age of chivalry was not made without some contemporary record of the ‘form and pressure’ of the times in the changing fashions of literature, and in successive experiments of the imagination.23

Ker’s analysis points to a substantial development, but at the same time demonstrates a fundamental link between the two. However much they may have developed and differ in outward trappings, both function as imaginative projections of the ideals of a particular society, public and/or private. Noting their differences, Ker continues his above comment stating, “Whatever Epic may mean, it implies some weight and solidity; Romance means nothing, if it does not convey some notion of mystery and fantasy.”24

Although Ker shows a marked preference for epic over romance, his comment points to the epic tendency toward the objective as compared to the tendency in romance for the subjective, landscape and soulscape respectively. And, traditionally but not

24 Ibid.
exclusively, epic portrays the destiny of a nation as embodied in its heroes, Aeneas of Virgil’s *Aeneid* for example, whereas in romance the focus is on the individual. Yet, to use an analogy from cathedral architecture reflecting something of the change from “solidity” to “fantasy,” the change from Norman to Gothic style by no means implies a change in essential form, purpose, or motivation of the building itself. It need not be assumed, as Ker seems to imply, that mystery and fantasy, taken on their own terms, exclude weight and solidity, however much they may tend in that direction.

In Clara Reeve’s *The Progress of Romance*, an old (1785) but still significant work, a central theme is that romance, despite the tendency to decry romance and venerate epic, deserves to be taken seriously in its own right, is fundamentally related to epic, and may seriously be compared to it. The common ground between them is the hero who embodies some virtue or virtues. She writes

> By fixing a clear and certain meaning to it [romance], not of my own invention or judgment; but borrowing the idea of the Latinists, I would call it simply an *Heroic fable*, a fabulous Story of such actions as are commonly ascribed to heroes, or men of extraordinary courage and abilities. — Or if you would allow of it, I would say an Epic in prose.

> They [romance and epic] spring from the same root, — they describe the same actions and circumstances, — they produce the same effects, and they are continually mistaken for each other.

---

26 Commenting on Ker’s point, Eugene Vinaver writes, “What distinguishes one literary generation or one epoch from another is surely not the stories they tell but the way they tell them.” *The Rise of Romance* (Oxford: The Clarendon Press, 1971) 1-2.
28 Ibid., 16. These two quotations are offered in place of the following one supplied virtually any time Reeve is quoted; “The Romance is an heroic fable, which treats of fabulous persons and things. — The Novel is a picture of real life and manners, and of the times in which it is written. The Romance in lofty and elevated language, describes what never happened nor is likely to happen.” (*Progress*, 111) Taken by itself, this quotation connotes a negative view of romance very much at odds with the overall
More recently, Burrow links epic and romance under the term "epic romance" and employs the treatment of pity and sympathy as a common ground for study. If romance is taken as the story of a hero who embodies and represents an ideal, the range of subject matter can be as light as *Daphnis and Chloe*, an early Greek romance in which the two main characters embody the pastoral ideals of chastity (for the most part) and innocence, to the weight, solemnity, and scope of *The Song of Roland*, a twelfth century French epic featuring the heroic stand of the Christian Roland in the face of certain defeat by the Saracens. The basic format thus extends from the lighthearted tone and subject matter typical of comedy to the heaviness of tone and subject that extends through epic and into tragedy.

The hero must face real situations and in this sense suffers real consequences; but to the extent that the hero maintains the ideal, the exigencies of circumstance are of secondary importance. As a realized ideal generally free from doubt and perplexity acting in accordance with an ideal, the hero is the primary causal agent rather than the hapless pawn of the impersonal causal forces of chance and fate manifest in circumstance. In contrast, the

---

theme of the book. Similar to her treatment of romance, Reeve's concern with the novel relates to it portrayal of virtue, a standard employed to judge the merits of numerous individual works.


30 Indeed, a similar point extends to *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey*, the former tending toward tragedy the latter towards comedy. Frye remarks, "I shall begin with a similar dichotomy about literary criticism. I may express it, in the manner of Coleridge, by saying that all literary critics are either Iliad critics or Odyssey critics. That is, interest in literature tends to center either in the area of tragedy, realism, and irony, or in the area of comedy and romance." Frye, *A Natural Perspective: The Development of Shakespearean Comedy and Romance*, San Diego (New York, London: Harcourt Brace Javanovich 1965) 1.
tragic protagonist is destroyed through adherence to a set of beliefs that are proven by events to be flawed or unworkable in a particular circumstance and thus something of the tragic protagonist’s identity is destroyed as well. The beliefs and actions of the comic protagonist are self caused, but assumed to be false or deficient although ultimately harmless. In their own way, tragedy and comedy feature an ideal, but one qualified by circumstance. In contrast, an ironic perspective is one characterized by negation, a perspective ranging from one in which a departure from an ideal is recognized to one in which any ideal is held to be false and illusory.

The second consideration is that romance is the archetype closest to and most appropriate for the FG as a whole because, besides having similar qualities and themes, romance as a narrative archetype is inherently open and inclusive. Dean observes,

The narrative multiplicity of romance, each tale bound within terms of its own continuity and defined by the separate character of its interaction with the surrounding tales, creates a dynamic and unresolved pattern.\(^{31}\)

Romance is not a genre confined to one literary technique, such as prose or poetry, nor is it strictly confined to a set number of stylistic features, such as the use of irony or ornate diction. The generic quality of romance is far too diverse, too rich in contrast, to tie it down to a fixed set of ordering principles. It is the supreme example of a literary genre which achieves unity in multiplicity and full expression as a genre by utilizing a wide variety of literary forms.\(^{32}\)

Ker makes a similar statement about epic,

Epic poetry is one of the complex and comprehensive kinds of literature, in which most of the other kinds may be included- romance, history, comedy;


\(^{32}\) Ibid., 87
tragical, comical, historical, pastoral are terms not sufficiently various to denote the variety of the Iliad and the Odyssey.\textsuperscript{33}

The point is important. Romance and epic can entertain the surrounding tales of tragedy and comedy in a way that comedy and tragedy (especially) cannot. The relationship is not reciprocal in any straightforward way. Tragedy and comedy are not archetypes of diversity after the manner of romance and are simply unable to play host to all the same literary guests with quite the same grace. Material provided by the epics of Homer is expanded and developed by the later tragic poets and not the reverse. The issue is not simply one of chronology. It is difficult to imagine how the Iliad and the Odyssey could have arisen from Greek tragedy. According to Aristotle, “Again, the poet should remember what has been often said, and not make an Epic structure into a Tragedy- by an Epic structure I mean one with a multiplicity of plots- as if, for instance, you were to make a tragedy out of the entire story of the Iliad.”\textsuperscript{34} The open and expansive nature of romance and epic is a point that bears some emphasis and will be discussed below in relation to story and plot. Apart from accepting the complexity, diversity, and interwoven and episodic nature of this style of narrative, a narrative which at the same time achieves a fundamental unity on its own terms, romance will remain elusive. At the same time, any attempt to view the narrative of the FG as comic or tragic fails to account for the diversity of its narrative.\textsuperscript{35}

\textsuperscript{33} Ker, Epic and Romance, 16, his emphasis.
\textsuperscript{34} Aristotle, Aristotle’s Poetics, trans., S. H. Butcher, introduction, Francis Fergusson (New York: Hill and Wang, 1961) XVIII.4; p. 91.
\textsuperscript{35} Stibbe rightly argues for the diversity of archetypes in the FG but mistakenly does so on the basis of sections or episodes of the FG rather than as embodied in character. See Mark Stibbe, John’s Gospel (London and New York: Routledge, 1994) 62-72. Frye connects archetype with character.
Finally, while the FG is primarily the story of Jesus, it is also the story of Peter, Pilate, the Jews, and many others. Each of these characters corresponds in varying degrees to different archetypal patterns. Jesus is best described by the basic pattern of a romance, Pilate by tragedy, and the Jews and Thomas by anti-romance, or satire and irony, and Peter by comedy, designations forming much of the substance of the present work. The FG presents these characters swirling around in different patterns, at cross purposes and often in conflict with one another and, most importantly, in conflict with Jesus. As Fletcher notes, "A systematically complicated character will generate a large number of other protagonists who react against or with him in a syllogistic manner." Significantly, conflicts with Jesus are not all of the same type and reflect characteristics and patterns of specific archetypes. To say that the FG follows the tragic or comic archetype is to be partly correct. But to do so will inevitably result in confusion as elements of tragedy, comedy, or romance, certainly present, are applied indiscriminately to the wrong person or group or extended to the FG as a whole. Clarity of category and application is crucial.

What is meant in the present work as romance is broadly defined by these elements; the story of a hero who embodies and represents an ideal who embarks on a journey or quest and undergoes a series of tests portrayed in an expansive, interlacing, and episodic narrative which often includes other stories and characters. Additionally,

37 Dean comments, "The distinctiveness of romance depends upon its special ability as a genre to absorb and synthesize other literary forms. Regarding romance in terms of only one of its narrative components inevitably leads to a critical distortion of the fine balance of parts which a successful romance must maintain." Dean, Wanderers, 221.
because beliefs and ideals are usually connected with the transcendent, romance and epic typically include elements of the marvelous. It is tempting to adopt a term like heroic romance, or epic romance, epic-heroic-romance or simply heroic or hero story, but the term romance, whatever its inadequacies, in the sense given here will suffice if it is kept in mind that what is here termed romance is broadly defined as an umbrella term very much related to epic. If the two are not siblings they are at least first cousins.

Given the definition offered here, romance and epic may be seen as variations on the hero story. Whatever the outward trappings of tone and presentation, be they Odysseus' journey toward home, the preservation of life and chastity, or tales of knights and chivalry, or the faithfulness of Jesus to his mission, the archetypal pattern of the story is essentially the same. To focus on the tone or the narrative trappings of a particular time, armed knights and chivalry of medieval romance for example, is to mistake armor and lance for what is really at stake: loyalty to and representation of an ideal under the pressure of circumstance. In this respect, romance assumes the values and ideals it projects, and, whatever the departures from its ideals, offers its own vision of a unified and coherent cosmos.

In the FG Jesus defines reality; the world is in darkness, under judgment, and Jesus is the light. Remaining obedient to the Father, Jesus enters the world but does not partake of its sin. Jesus does not need to be integrated into the world and its way of doing things. Rather, the world stands in need of redemption and Jesus, the hero of a different order than comedy and tragedy, the person at one with the ideal represented, is the one who accomplishes this.
C) ROMANCE MOTIFS AND THE FOURTH GOSPEL

As a way of facilitating a comparison and treating numerous features of Jesus and romance in the FG in a relatively compact fashion, recurring motifs of romance will be examined. This kind of comparison is limited in that it merely attempts to note the existence of features common to both the FG and romance, but at the same time many offers many striking similarities. In any case, the list and comparison is intended to be illustrative and not definitive or exhaustive. A more in-depth analysis will follow in section III.

Although his primary concern is Shakespearean romance, Dean begins his study with the *Odyssey* and offers a comprehensive and detailed survey of romance. The inclusion of the *Odyssey* is significant in that it gives Dean’s analysis wider applicability that extends to epic as well. He lists the following motifs as characteristic of romance: the dramatic qualities of marvel, risk, and triumphant adventure; emphasis on generation differences; and abundant use of pageantry; claims to historical relevancy; the wandering journey towards “home”; the essential piety of the main character; the idealized male-female relationships; the protagonists’ mental agility; and ever present mingling of blessings and sorrows; the directing influence of a supernatural higher power; a distinguishing token or scar by which the hero or heroine will eventually be recognized; shipwreck or apparent loss; and magical wonders—all of which are bound within an interlacing narrative, ending when the disparate strands are drawn together in

---

39 In future chapters, close readings of relevant passages will be offered. Given the length of the FG and the amount said about Jesus, this is not possible here.
a final reunion scene. An analysis of the FG in light of these motifs will highlight a number of similarities.

C.1 DRAMATIC QUALITIES OF MARVEL, RISK, AND TRIUMPHANT ADVENTURE

The prologue initially establishes the theme of the marvelous in the Gospel's discourse through its emphasis on the God of creation being incarnate in the world. In the FG, the marvelous is fundamentally related to risk. Risk becomes important when the Jews threaten to kill Jesus following his claims to be equal with God arising from the Sabbath healing of the paralytic (5:18). Popular attempts to make him king resulting from the feeding of the 5000 (6:15) present another risk. Jesus risks being misunderstood, whether he was a "good man" or "deceives the people" (7:12) or even demon-possessed (7:20, 8:49), a misunderstanding that is at bottom related to misunderstanding regarding who Jesus is. The link between risk and the marvelous is most clearly seen in the connection between the raising of Lazarus and Caiaphas' declaration that "it is better for you that one man die for the people" (11:50), a key background event for the risk of the triumphal entry and the supreme risk of death itself. Without the marvelous in the FG, either in deeds or theological claim, there is no risk. Adventure implies risk, and the triumphant adventure of the FG originates in Jesus' divine claims as these claims become subject to risk and real consequences in a world that fails to accept them.

C.2. EMPHASIS ON GENERATION DIFFERENCES

ibid., 3-4. Dean's specific concern here is applying these motifs to The Odyssey as a means of demonstrating the Odyssey's qualities of romance. However, Dean intends this list to be representative.
The generation differences in the FG involve differences between the new, announced and represented by Jesus, and the old, represented and defended by the Jews. The miracle at Cana both affirms the old, marriage and the continuation of life, and announces the new, as seen in the implicitly theological action of the new wine of Christ being created in the jars used for ceremonial washing. While some of the old will be preserved, much will be removed and replaced as the temple cleansing makes clear. Jesus’ statement, “Destroy this temple and I will raise it again in three days” (2:19) implies a replacement theology where one temple will be replaced by another. Nicodemus, by birth and privilege the quintessential insider of the old generation, must become a member of the new generation by being “born again,” this time a spiritual rebirth. The new generation will be comprised of those who believe, children born “not of human descent” but “born of God.” (1:13) Lazarus is the eschatological prototype of the age come, an age entered into through faith in Christ. (11:25-26) Rejection of Lazarus relates to rejection of Jesus and his subsequent death. But only through his death, resurrection, and going away can the next generation be fully realized.

C.3. ABUNDANT USE OF PAGEANTRY

Pageantry and festivals impart a sense of wonder and extra-ordinariness to quotidian life. Because of the prominent inclusion of Jewish festivals and because it is set primary around Jerusalem, the FG emphasizes this inherently religious aspect. Weddings are a social and religious festival, the latter aspect being especially prominent and employed for thematic purposes in the wedding at Cana. The temple, the primary location of Jewish ceremonial life, is dramatically cleansed at Passover of money-
changers and sellers of cattle and sheep, those traps and trappings of everydayness that festival and ceremony attempt to overcome. Much of the FG's organization revolves around festivals. Jesus' appearance at the unnamed festival in 5:1 among the blind, lame, and paralyzed, itself a carnival of paralysis, leads to the healing of the paralytic, a miracle characterized by a sterile response and opposition. The feeding of the 5000 during the second Passover (6:4) gains additional festive force by the attempt to make him king (6:15) and its association with the provision of manna in the wilderness (6:25ff). Jesus next attends the festival of Tabernacles (7:2, 14) and then the Feast of Dedication (10:22). Having been lavishly anointed, Jesus enters Jerusalem before the final Passover in festive triumph. But Jesus' greatest glory occurs during the humiliation of the passion, presented in the FG with a motif of royal enthronement. Jesus' burial is lavish and moving. The resurrection appearances speak of the resurrection as a sublime event, a kind of pageantry without ostentation.

C.4. CLAIMS TO HISTORICAL RELEVANCY

Unlike fantasy which may be set somewhere else in a world unlike our own, romance is set in a world like our own. While it is beyond the scope of the present work to debate the historicity of the FG, however present the marvelous, the FG presents a world that is presented as real and historical. Jesus travels around a historically recognizable Palestine and authentically encounters the people, politics, and religion of his day. Any treatment of the FG in terms of the history or society of its day assumes as much. Rather than narrating events for their own sake, the concrete events of the FG are viewed as meaningful and significant within and beyond their specific
historical context. In any case, the emphasis falls as much on the fact that the “word was made flesh and dwelt among us” and its implications as it does the facts of the flesh dwelling among us.

C.5. THE WANDERING JOURNEY TOWARDS ‘HOME’

The theme of descent (1:10-11, 14, 51) and ascent (7:33, 16:5) is a well noted feature of the FG.\(^{40}\) Related to this are references to being sent (5:37, 6:57, 7:29, 8:18, 42) or from above (8:23) Jesus’ journey in the FG has two aspects; the journey to the cross and his journey back to the Father. In this sense the journey of Jesus is both horizontal and vertical; he must return to the Father by way of the cross. (13:1a) Yet, like Odysseus’ wandering journey towards home, Jesus’ journey is purposeful. Jesus’ departure is meaningful because he goes “to prepare a place for you” (14:2) and so that the Holy Spirit can be sent.

C.6. THE ESSENTIAL PIETY OF THE MAIN CHARACTER

The most prominent features of Jesus’ piety are love and obedience, qualities which must be manifested in concrete acts. Jesus, the light of the world, does what the Father does Jesus’ love is most clearly demonstrated in the raising of Lazarus, the footwashing, comforting his disciples, and supremely on the cross. He is loved, honored and worshipped by those around him. Even amidst an honor and shame culture, in the FG Jesus is presented as preserving his honor in shameful circumstances.\(^{41}\) Although possessing power to do otherwise, He suffers unjustly,

---


rejected by friend and enemy alike. Jesus is the theological, ethical, and narrative center of the FG.

C.7. THE IDEALIZED MALE-FEMALE RELATIONSHIPS

The male-female relationships in the FG are more developed than in the Synoptics. To the extent Jesus relationships with women can be said to be idealized, such idealization is done in a profoundly real way. As the disciples’ reaction indicates (4:27), the most noteworthy aspect of Jesus conversation with the Samaritan woman is that it occurs at all. On Lazarus’ death, Martha and Mary both display faith and disappointment, disappointment seemingly consequent on their brother’s death and Jesus’ absence. Jesus’ relations with the sisters are intimate and genuine; displaying the full depth of his humanity, he shares their suffering and grief. Jesus’ encounter with Mary Magdalene is at once close and distant; he approaches her with sensitivity but, on being recognized, eschews sentimental and/or physical attachment and insists on factors related to his mission being primary.

C.8. THE PROTAGONIST’S MENTAL AGILITY

Often in romance mental agility allows the protagonist to escape from some danger, as, for example the “resourceful” Odysseus. Jesus’ encounters with Nicodemus, the Samaritan woman, and Pilate are in a sense clever in that he continually moves from one level of understanding to another. Most of Jesus’ disputes with the Jews are clever, but mostly concern a conflict of two ways of thinking. If teaching has

---


43 For Lindars, “The desire to hold Jesus must be restrained, because it is an attempt to recapture the conditions of the incarnate life in place of the universal and abiding relationship which is the object of his mission.” Barnabas Lindars, The Gospel of John (London: Oliphants, 1972) 607.
anything to do with mental agility, the Jews are amazed. (7:15) The best example of Jesus' mental agility is perhaps 10:33-39 where Jesus uses the OT reference to men being called 'gods' (Psalms 82:6) to support his claim to be one with the Father. (10:30) Although the account is not original, Jesus soundly (silently?) defeats those attempting to trap him over the matter of the woman caught in adultery. Pilate's encounter with Jesus shows the latter's mental mastery of the situation even while suffering defeat. Jesus is supremely in control of conversations throughout the FG.

C.9. EVER PRESENT MINGLING OF BLESSINGS AND SORROWS

First introduced by John's statement, "Look the lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world." (1:29), the death of Jesus is a theme throughout the FG. The proleptic statement of 2:22, "After he was raised from the dead" makes it clear that the death implicit in being "the lamb of God" did in fact occur. But the occurrence of Jesus' death is more than a brute fact, it is a deeply felt loss, a loss given emotional depth by being set generally against the beauty of Jesus' life, and specifically set against the presence of Jesus mother and the other women at the crucifixion (19:25-27) and the lavish anointing of Nicodemus. The wedding at Cana and the incident of the Samaritan woman show Jesus as someone deeply involved in human life. He is someone who in obedience to the Father proclaims himself to be from the Father, and yet is rejected by his own. The raising of Lazarus is as remarkable for its picture of humanity as it is for the raising itself, one made all the more poignant by its juxtaposition against those coldly planning his demise. Mary's anointing shows that Jesus is deeply loved and worshipped, yet the event signals that the sensibilities and loyalties of Judas lie
elsewhere. The incident of the footwashing places the pathos of the footwashing itself and Jesus' command to love one another against the background of his betrayal and impending death. Jesus later prays for all believers, yet is abandoned by two of his inner circle, and by the wavering Pilate. As he is put to death, Jesus sees to the care of his mother. Jesus' post resurrection appearance to Mary mixes profound human sorrow with the highest of joys. These incidents, full of love, loss, and joy create a mood of authentic feeling and pathos characteristic of romance too easily overlooked or avoided in analytical analysis.

C.10. THE DIRECTING INFLUENCE OF A SUPERNATURAL HIGHER POWER

The prologue places the mission of Jesus in a profoundly theological context with reference to his earthly ministry, the Word made flesh. Conversely, the witness of John (1:19-34) places Jesus in a historical context with reference to his theological identity, the Son of God (1:34) who "comes after me" but was "before me." (1:30) Jesus adds much understanding to the nature of his mission in 5:19ff. Doing nothing by himself, Jesus does only what he sees the Father doing. Jesus thus is directed by a "higher power" but not in any mechanistic sense. Having been granted "life in himself" by the Father, Jesus acts on his own, but does so in submission to what the Father does even to the point of rejecting Peter's sword in favor of the cup of the Father. Further, the work of Jesus is frequently seen in light of the scriptures, implicitly affirming the divine ordering of earthly events.

C.11. A DISTINGUISHING TOKEN OR SCAR BY WHICH THE HERO OR HEROINE WILL EVENTUALLY BE RECOGNIZED
The importance of a distinguishing token or scar arises when a period of time or some event separates and casts doubt on the authentic identity of a character which must be established with certainty. The famous scar of Odysseus serves this function. In a larger sense, the miracles and signs provide ‘tokens’ by which Jesus might be recognized. These aside, the obvious example is the incident of Thomas being shown the hands and side of Jesus. For Thomas, as for countless others, a mark or token authenticating the identity of someone who reappears is not simply a detail a plot. Rather, the mark or token provides an entry into a world transformed by that person’s reappearance. The marks and tokens are real enough, but serve as real and imaginative links to the marvelous, connections between events where no connection seems likely or possible. Conversely, as in the story of Judah and Tamar, the tokens of identity serve as transforming reminders of a concrete past event. However, in the end, the token or mark may establish the identity of the hero, but more importantly, it also vindicates the values and ideals for which the hero stands.

C.12. SHIPWRECK OR APPARENT LOSS

The death of Jesus is the central loss in the gospel, a loss that does not occur in isolation, one that, without the resurrection, suggests the following scenarios. For the disciples it is the death of their leader and friend, one with whom Peter can never be reconciled. The death of Jesus reverses the clever irony of the incident of the man born blind as the Pharisees were right after all. The life of the resurrected Lazarus becomes a mocking reminder of what might have been or never was. The triumphal entry becomes a foolhardy display of mass optimism. The footwashing becomes a moving
farewell instead of a living example. The death of Jesus becomes a kind of shipwreck, the destruction and loss of something good at the hands of forces hostile and capricious. At the same time the death of Jesus vindicates his enemies. Judas' appears to have played the right card. For the Jews, loyalty to Caesar promises to be an effective strategy for the future. The apparent loss of Jesus is a moving story in its own right.

C.13. MAGICAL WONDERS

Miraculous wonders of various kinds characterize all four gospels. However the FG designates some occurrences as "signs." Unlike most romance, however, the miracles and signs of the FG are connected with Jesus as being the agent of their occurrence. Jesus performs the miracle of turning the water to wine, feeds the 5000, etc., whereas Arthur or Odysseus merely participate in the magical wonders within a magical landscape. The miracles are intimately connected with Jesus as the one sent from the Father and bound up with his Christological identity. Others experience miracles through provision, healing, omniscient knowledge, and raising of the dead.

C.14. INTERLACING NARRATIVE

The FG contains a variety of characters and a variety of incidents, the structure of which does not resemble the highly ordered plots of Ruth and Esther, for example. Characters come and go, some appear again while others do not. Besides being a mixture of narrative and discourse, the narrative emphasis changes between public and private; the public ministry of 2:1-12:50 gives way to the private emphasis of 13:1-

---

17:26 only to reappear in the crucifixion narratives (18:41-19:42) then to return to the private emphasis as the gospel closes. (20:1-21:25) 45 This aspect will be treated in more depth later.

C.15. AN ENDING WHEN THE DISPARATE STRANDS ARE DRAWN TOGETHER IN A FINAL REUNION SCENE

The final reunion scenes of the FG are mixed and tenuous; the reunion scenes are not final. The visit to the empty tomb, appearance to Mary, the ten, and finally to the eleven establish the fact of Jesus resurrection, but the story does not end there. The fishing expedition of chapter 21 is a bit of an anti-climax, a descent into the real world, or, rather, a reminder that the real world and its demands needs to be taken seriously. The grand story and events of previous chapters culminating in the resurrection inaugurates an eternal eschatological reality, but one that must in the meantime be in tension with temporal reality as it presently exists. The story of the FG is at once closed, in so far as it concerns Jesus' earthly ministry, and it is also open-ended; the story continues into present, its characters empowered by the promised Holy Spirit.

Assuming the validity of Dean's characteristics, and allowing for a range of similarity with specific characteristics, the parallels between romance and the FG nevertheless indicate a more than passing correspondence and provide a basic plausibility for the more developed comparison and conceptual analysis to follow.

III STRUCTURAL/CONCEPTUAL ELEMENTS:
SETTING, PLOT/STORY, CHARACTER

45 The nature of the FG narrative is discussed under "story and plot" below.
A) SETTING: ROMANCE AND REALISM IN THE FG

Analogous to the interpenetrating style of narrative characteristic of romance and the overlapping of many of the above characteristics, structural elements of romance very much tend to overlap with conceptual elements. Distinctions between setting, plot/story, and character are useful but often difficult to maintain, a circumstance related to romance presenting, more than any other archetype, a unified vision of a coherent cosmos. The prologue of the FG assumes a coherent cosmos “in the beginning” but notes the present darkness.

As the narrative moves beyond the prologue, the Baptist announces Jesus to the world, which is followed by his meeting with the disciples. When the first disciples meet Jesus (1:35-51) and begin to follow him, there is a sense of them being drawn into another reality wherein following Jesus as his disciples is synonymous with a change of perception. Nathanael’s ruthlessly horizontal perception of anyone from Nazareth changes radically on experiencing the wonder of being seen under the fig tree. The assumption of the narrative is that Nathanael, however widespread or justified his opinion of Nazareth, fails to perceive things as they really are. Although Nathanael believed “because I told you I saw you under the fig tree” (1:50), he will see “greater things than that.” Jesus’ initial contact with the disciples in chapter one culminates in the promise that “you shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending on the Son of Man.” (1:51) Recalling Jacob’s dream, this reference to heaven being opened indicates that the disciples and the reader will, like Jacob, be caught up in events wherein the presence and activity of God will, in the manner of
romance, blur the distinction between heaven and earth. Jacob thought “surely the Lord was in this place, and I was not aware of it....How awesome is this place” (Genesis 28:16), yet later wrestled with God in blindness. The angels of God will ascend and descend on the Son of Man; Jesus will become a kind of living ladder, a new Israel, a connection between heaven and earth, making himself more like earth and earth more like heaven by virtue of his presence in it.46

The wedding at Cana is the first miracle and Jesus’ introduction on the stage of the larger world. The events of the wedding at Cana suggest actual and imaginative links between heaven and earth. Weddings then and now are generally happy and festive occasions full of decoration, costume, ceremony, love, hope, and the promise of human life. The best of human aspirations are transferred to the bride and groom. In a very real way, weddings are those occasions where human life comes closest to the imaginative fullness of heaven, the union of Christ and his bride being cast in precisely these terms. In this context of space and time at a particular wedding wherein water and six stone jars await, Jesus performs the miracle of turning the water into wine. The wine, the festive drink appropriate for such occasions, runs out. This mundane detail is more than a social gaffe, it is a crack in a crystal glass or a wrong note in a symphony, a real and symbolic link to the contingency of everyday of life at a time when the wonder of life is at its fullest. By supplying the wine, Jesus restores some sense of Eden, suggesting a narrowing of the gap between heaven and earth. And, with

46 In a context discussing the Jacob’s ladder reference of 1:51 and specifically in reference to 3:13, Barrett notes, “The paradox of the Son of man is that even when on earth he is in heaven; the mythical - or historical - descent and ascent is of such a kind that effectively the Son of man is in both places at once; the top and the bottom of the ladder.” C. K. Barrett, “Paradox and Dualism,” in Essays on John (London: SPCK, 1982) 110-111.
consummate grace, Jesus refuses to allow the mere provision of wine to upstage the greater wonder of the wedding. The remarks of the master of the banquet to the bridegroom are as sincere as they are naive; the reader looks on, as the servants do, with wonder and delight. By restoring the wine, Jesus reaches into that highest part of human life and transforms it in a way that slips by so easily unnoticed. The wine is water transformed without fermentation and decay and recalls by contrast another product of another fruit, one that rotted in the hands of Adam and Eve. The presence and actions of Jesus at the Wedding at Cana, an idealized but still flawed event, suggests an Edenic world, flawed, but restorable at the hands of Jesus.

In the wedding at Cana, the path between heaven and earth is at its smoothest, the link between the two being as seamless as possible. When the incident is subjected to the rigors of interpretation and analysis, it is hard to say exactly when the details of the wedding and miracle as historical event end and theological interpretation begins. The six stone water jars function as containers near at hand and at the same time, because they are used by the Jews for ceremonial washing, speak of the transformation and fullness of Christ in comparison to the law and possibly of creation's six days as well. In the manner of romance, the objects, like the event, are at once concretely real and metaphorically and theologically real. In such a context, the meanings of objects, words, and events expands into a greater range of possibilities and associations coinciding with the Johannine propensity for double meaning. The wedding at Cana functions as a kind of living hermeneutic paradigm for what follows and sets a tone of grace and innocence.
Frye notes that romance has a “perennially childlike quality...marked by its extraordinarily persistent nostalgia, its search for some kind of imaginative golden age in time or space.”\textsuperscript{47} Significantly, the wedding at Cana occurs at the start of the Gospel, rather than the end as is typical for the placement of weddings in comedy.\textsuperscript{48} In so doing the wedding functions as a proto-eschatological event, an idealized situation or realized romance, a standard from which the rest of the Gospel must inevitably depart analogous in romance to the idealized or noble situation set over against its evil or demonic parody.\textsuperscript{49} If romance is about the ideal, there must be some vision of what that consists of. The wedding at Cana grounds the ideal in real space and time, an eschatological here and now made so by the presence of Jesus. The marvelous is possible, even probable now that Jesus is here.

Significantly, then, temple cleansing follows the wedding at Cana. Here the world of romance or the integrated world infused with the ideal is juxtaposed against the world of realism,\textsuperscript{50} a world of the here and now devoid of reference to transcendent values. As temporal and spatial tokens of the presence of God on earth, the temple and its environs at Passover time should by poetic logic continue the sense of the marvelous and ideal as the social emphasis of the Wedding at Cana moves to the religious

\textsuperscript{47} Frye, \textit{Anatomy}, 186. Compare, for example, the Edenic atmosphere opening Radcliffe’s \textit{Udolpho}. \textsuperscript{48} Stibbe notes this feature, but passes by its association with romance. Stibbe also notes the eschatological aspects of miracle. Stibbe, \textit{John’s Gospel}, 67. cf. Francesca Murphy, \textit{The Comedy of Revelation: Paradise Lost and Regained in Biblical Narrative} (Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 2000) 231. \textsuperscript{49} Frye, \textit{A Natural Perspective: The Development of Shakespearean Comedy and Romance} (San Diego, New York, and London: Harcourt Brace Javanovich, 1965) 110. \textsuperscript{50} Richard Bauckham interprets the demonstration in the temple as being directed against the commercial and exploitative nature of the financial apparatus connected with temple worship; in other words Jesus’ actions are directed against realism in its oppressive and exploitative aspects. Bauckham, “Jesus’ Demonstration in the Temple,” in Barnabas Lindars, ed., \textit{Law and Religion: Essays on the Place of the Law in Israel and Early Christianity} (Cambridge, Janes Clarke, 1988) 72-89.
emphasis of the temple. But Jesus finds the temple courts filled with the trappings of realism, “men selling cattle, sheep and doves, and others sitting at tables exchanging money.” (2:14). The construction of a whip replaces the creation of wine, judgment replaces celebration, mayhem casts out the marvelous. The ideal suggested by a wedding gives way to the realistic demands of money, markets, and merchandise. The narration of the wedding at Cana incident consists primarily of dialogue or prose describing human social interaction, a feature that lends a certain distance from the real world. In contrast, the temple cleansing is immersed in realism in all its sights, smells and objects; a whip, sheep, cattle, coins, tables, men, confusion, overturning, and shouting. The unseen and appreciated miracle of the wine gives way to conspicuous confrontation and public judgment. When Jesus says, “Get these out of here! How dare you turn my Father’s house into a market!” (2:16) he asserts the romance-like primacy of the holy and wonder-full over against the too easily accommodated demands of the worldly.

The Jews demand a sign, a miraculous warrant to prove his authority for these actions.(2:18) Superficially, the Jews seem to be allowing that he may be a prophet, but the request for a miracle has an unbelieving, realistic ring to it. Jesus refuses the spirit of the request while he grants the substance of it, saying “Destroy this temple and I will raise it again in three days.” (2:19) The literalness of their response exposes a wrong kind of thinking, one excessively concerned with realistic detail rather than

51 A similar progression is seen in Luke, where the prophecy, human interaction, poetry and idyllic joy of chapter one give way the hard impersonal realism of taxes, Romans, governors, travel, mangers, inns with no room, and ill timed births in 2:1-7. The account of the angels and shepherds that follows re-establishes the idyllic tone and the presence of the marvelous.
spiritual truth. Yet Jesus is uttering a truth as much real as it is spiritual, that in the
destruction and resurrection of his body he will replace the temple. By missing the
point, the Jews exhibit, fairly innocently at this point, a propensity for realism over
against the freer association of romance.

Rather than being an innovation, the mixture of romance and realism is a
standard feature of OT narrative and characteristic of the Bible as a whole. Ryken
notes, “These stories are both factually realistic and romantically marvelous. They
bring together two impulses that the human race is always trying to join- reason and
imagination, fact and mystery.”

Rather than being a characteristic to describe the
text, the emphasis on romance and realism makes a theological statement; that God is
resolutely and personally involved in his creation and in the lives of human beings and
that human beings should interpret their ordinary existence with reference to God. The
inclusion of the marvelous within the “real” and linking it with the activity of God, the
emphasis falls on the personal causality of God. As a general observation on the
ideological perspective of OT narrative, Auerbach comments,

The Bible’s [OT] claim to truth is not only far more urgent than Homer’s,
it is tyrannical- it excludes all other claims. The world of the Scripture
stories is not satisfied with claiming to be a historically true reality- it insists
that it is the only real world, it is destined for autocracy.

The link between realism and romance in the OT is maintained by the ideological
pressure of an all powerful God assumed by the text. The ideological pressure inherent

---

in OT narrative finds expression in Jesus himself in the story and discourse of the FG, the most narrative gospel. The realism and romance held together by the presence of God in the OT finds its Johannine unity in Jesus who is both God and man making the Father known to the world. Viewed this way, Jesus is “the Word made flesh” in all its fullness. The potential for conflict as romance meets realism is obvious. To a great extent the FG is the world of realized romance in mortal conflict with the world of ‘realism’ strictly defined.

Although unique by virtue of its subject matter, the FG’s clash of realism and romance is not unknown in world literature. The dynamic appears in Twain’s A Connecticut Yankee in King Arthur’s Court, and, to a lesser extent, Huckleberry Finn. In A Connecticut Yankee, the iconoclastic American realist Hank Morgan is transported by time machine to the world of King Arthur, a world Morgan views as absurd and in need of renovation through pragmatism and common sense. Huckleberry Finn displays romance and realism in tension as the realists Huck and Jim, successful escapees from the doomed wreckage of The Walter Scott, are juxtaposed against the failed romance of Tom Sawyer, the King and the Duke, and the Grangerford/Shepherdson feud. Like the FG, each in its own way manifests the values and norms of one age or way of thinking set against those of another.

Employing a similar tactic of juxtaposing the values of one age against another, Cervantes’ Don Quixote is the definitive clash between romance and realism. The errant knight Don Quixote, avid and unstable reader of Medieval romance, crosses the hostile boarder between fact and fiction and invades the modern world of realism with
predictable results. In doing so, Don Quixote and Sancho Panza embody what Beer calls “the two permanent and universal impulses of fiction.”

Quixote presents the imagination cut loose from the world of sense and observation, aspiring towards the ideal. This way leads to madness, and to the noble simplification and suggestiveness of myth. Sancho Panza is preoccupied with registering the everyday signs and accepting their authority. His robust life is practicable only in relation to ordinary satisfactions and achievements.

The basic dynamic of Don Quixote is the world of romance set in opposition to the world of realism, a clash seen in both Don Quixote’s relationship with Sancho and with his encounter with the actual world. In romance, the hero is the center of the world; Don Quixote is an eccentric.

In Don Quixote, A Connecticut Yankee, and Huckleberry Finn, romance and realism are set against each other with the preference going to realism. The tendency is generally toward polarization. Realism acts as a foil to the excesses of romance and the mood is generally comic. The comic tone prevails in large part because romance and realism are set over against each other, the distance between them providing a basis for conflicting frames of reference.

The FG and its presentation of Jesus represents a Don Quixote in reverse. In Don Quixote the world or realism is the standard by which the wandering knight of La Mancha is judged whereas in the FG Jesus is the norm, the true reality, against whom the world is judged. Jesus’ encounters with his foes are not Quixotic encounters of a

---

55 ibid., 43.
56 Reflecting the ages in which they live, Cervantes maintains the convention of a romance but sets it in a context of realism; Twain uses the more realistic convention of the novel and sets it in the world of romance.
misguided soul after the manner of a mistaken eschatological Jesus, but heroic encounters with real enemies who fail to understand or believe in him. In so doing, they, like Quixote, fail to understand things as they really are. Jesus extends and potentially makes plain reality in a fuller sense. Jesus does not represent, as Don Quixote does “the idealization of the self, the refusal to doubt inner experience, the tendency to base any interpretation of the world on personal will, imagination and desire, not upon an empirical and social consensus of experience,” but acts on the will of the Father whom he represents in all His fullness. For Adam and Eve, in both Genesis and Paradise Lost, for the Redcrosse Knight in The Faerie Queene, and for characters in the FG, the “empirical and social consensus of experience” is a danger, an obstacle and impediment to faith, not the solution.

As representatives of the opposing tendencies of romance and realism, Don Quixote and Sancho Panza are necessary for each other. “They interpret the world for each other. They illustrate the interdependence of the impulse to imitate and the impulse to idealize.” In Quixote and Panza these tendencies are at once juxtaposed and symbiotic, but in a way that resembles how a blind person might combine resources with deaf person to interpret the world. In Jesus the tendencies unite, not in a tepid middle ground, but in an embracing of both extremes. Jesus both embodies an ideal and is worthy of idealization but does so in a way that is subject to time, space, grief, thirst, and death, preventing abstraction and providing a basis on which he is to be imitated. The love of Jesus is not idealized for its own sake after the manner of courtly
and idealized love typical of Medieval romance, but manifested in concrete action in the service of others.

Romance and realism are partners always threatening to go their separate ways. Romance devoid of realism drifts off into an extrahistorical reality, an aesthetic treatment of values without practical purpose. The opposite is the realistic tendency to view life without reference to any meaningful values by which life transcends time and place. The FG displays these tendencies in the actions of those who surround Jesus. Adherence to realism without due attention to romance results in everything from misunderstanding to rejection and rebellion. Thus, Pilate represents the dawn and premature eclipse of romance in the face of realism. Pilate’s attempts to free Jesus are sincere and moving toward true heroism, but flawed, incomplete and ultimately tragic. The Jews represent the static qualities of realism who resort to employing realistic means for realistic ends. Adherence to romance without due attention to the demands of realism results in misunderstanding and folly, as is the case with Peter, a comic figure who displays what is essentially over-realized romance, or romance without reference to Jesus’ ideals of humility, service, and sacrifice. Jesus transcends the differences between realism and romance by uniting the ideals of one with the praxis of the other, when washing the disciple’s feet or supremely in the Passion.

Mastery of realism and romance in FG allows a full range of humanity to be displayed which at the same time allows for a kind of living theology. Auerbach, writes, “It was the story of Christ, with its ruthless mixture of everyday reality and the

---

highest and most sublime tragedy, which had conquered the classical rule of styles.”  

Similarly, Smith observes, “It is the genius of the Fourth Evangelist to have created a gospel in which Jesus as the representative of the world above visits and really lives in this world without depriving it of its verisimilitude and without depriving life here of its seriousness.” The FG presents the real as the universal and the universal as the real.  

Ultimately, in the FG there is no distance between the world of romance and realism or between the ideal and the real in so far as this concerns Jesus himself. Jesus refuses to be accepted on any terms other than what he himself claims to be. Jesus claims do not allow for either/or as much as they demand both/and. The conceptual and literary challenge for the FG is to hold these opposites of romance and realism in tension. The solution, and paradoxically the problem, is found in the subject matter of the FG; the person of Jesus Christ, the incarnate logos, both God and man. The prologue is at pains to include both aspects. Jesus is thus simultaneously both a figure of romance and realism in one person wherein these qualities are not in tension, as in Prospero whose powers are external to himself, but in perfect unity. Typically in romance, the hero struggles to maintain an ideal in a fallen world and in this respect the FG is no exception. But in the theology of the FG, the struggle is more of a fallen world refusing to accept an ideal, and, indeed, lacking the proper mode of thinking or frame of reference within which Jesus must be understood.

60 ibid., 555. For Auerbach, the story of Jesus as portrayed in the gospels formed a kind of base line of comparison for Mimesis.
E. M. Forster makes a valuable distinction between story and plot, terms often used interchangeably. Forster divides life into two spheres, the life of time and the life of value. For Forster, story primarily has to do with events happening in a sequence of time and thus relates mostly to the life of time. As such, Forster has a low opinion of story ("this low atavistic form") for its own sake and notes, "It [story] runs like a backbone— or may I say a tape-worm, for its beginning and end are arbitrary." The appeal of story lies in curiosity and suspense, a natural desire to find out what happens next. Forster enlists Walter Scott for a whipping boy.

Plot, on the other hand, is also a narrative of events but the emphasis falls on causality. Forster offers these famous examples, "The king died and then the queen died" is a story while "The king died and then the queen died of grief" is a plot. Both manifest a time sequence, but in the latter a sense of causality and value transcend the temporal sequence. Forster observes, "It is in a story we say 'and then?' It is in a plot we ask 'why?' That is the fundamental difference between these two aspects of the novel." Forster holds that the two primary elements demanded and assumed by a plot are intelligence and memory. The former moves beyond simple curiosity and fosters mystery by raising the question "why." The latter permits connections to be

---

63 ibid., 28.
64 ibid., 82.
65 ibid., 82
66 ibid., 83. This distinction transcends the novel.
67 ibid., 83.
made with previous events. While Forster is essentially correct, intelligence and memory of a certain type can also function as barriers to understanding.

Forster’s distinction is not without its detractors but remains helpful, if slightly ambiguous. If plot and story are seen as tendencies on a continuum and not as complete opposites, romance tends to an emphasis on story rather than plot. For example, the episodic structure of The Odyssey tends much more toward story than to plot. This relates to Auerbach’s famous claim that Homer tends to narrative “foregrounding,” a style that does not prompt the question “why?” Shakespeare’s Pericles is very much a series of incidents often linked together by the convention of the storyteller, although its primary coherence rests on the fact that it is the story of one man. Melville’s Moby Dick, is a simple narrative with often little or no causal connection between sections, some of which are purely descriptive and can hardly be termed even minimally as incident. The coherence of Moby Dick and similar works rests on its overall success at transfiguring the characters, incidents, and description by ideological or thematic pressure.

An emphasis on story rather than plot lends to romance an expansiveness and inclusiveness not obtainable when the emphasis falls more on plot. An emphasis on plot leads to a corresponding emphasis of causality, self coherence, and a casting off all surplus baggage. As Forster notes, “Unlike the weaver of plots, the story teller profits

---

69 Auerbach, “Odysseus’ Scar,” chapter 1 in Mimesis, 3-23.
70 Moby Dick has met mixed critical success, viewed by some as bombastic, as if the only thing swelling the sails of the Pequod were the huffing and puffing of Melville himself. Others see Moby Dick as the great American novel. Forster himself offers a positive assessment of Moby Dick under the category of what he terms “prophecy”, a work that stretches reality and says something beyond itself. Moby Dick illustrates the risk inherent to such narratives.
by ragged ends.” If a story is being told rather than a plot developed, there is ample opportunity to pause, take side trips, examine the scenery, make speeches—activities less permissible when plot is of primary concern. Likewise, for example, in *Cliges*, a 12th century romance by Chretien de Troyes, the story is interrupted, or slowed to a crawl, to explore the dynamics of being in love. A general tendency of the novel as opposed to the romance is a tendency toward a kind of self contained organic completeness.

In manifesting the characteristics of this type of story, the FG offers a series of incidents and stops along the way and expands on this or that aspect. In analyzing the FG, Hitchcock follows Aristotle’s *Poetics* and reads the FG as a drama and in doing so fails to account for the FG’s narrative diversity. Windsch rightly rejects reading the FG as drama in favor of focusing on certain incidents as drama within a loosely structured dramatic whole. Acknowledging a diversity, Windsch proposes three major classifications of dramatic narrative: (1) the broadly elaborated, dramatically presented narratives (the healing of the man born blind, the raising of Lazarus); (2) a connection between narrative and dispute discourse (the healing of the lame man in

---

71 Referring to Scott, Forster observes, “He need not hammer away all the time at cause and effect.” Forster, *Aspects*, 34.

72 Vinaver notes the presence of explanation in romance as found in Cliges as a key development as compared to the pericope like format of the earlier *Song of Roland*. Eugene Vinaver, *Rise of Romance*, 15-32. A comparison with the Synoptic’s relationship to John is interesting.

73 “But in a Novel, a combination of incidents, entertaining in themselves, are made to form a whole; and an unnecessary circumstance becomes a blemish, by detaching from the simplicity which is requisite to exhibit that whole to advantage. Thomas Holcroft, *Preface to Alwyn: or the Gentleman Comedian* (1780) in Miriam Allott *Novelists on the Novel* (London: Routledge and Kegan Paul 1959) 46-47.


chapter five); and (3) the sequence of individual scenes that belong together (the Baptist narratives and the calling of the first disciples in chapter one). Like Windsch, Stibbe rightly rejects attempts to read the FG as drama in favor of reading the FG as dramatic. But this distinction has little to do with problems caused by reading the FG as drama in the sense of it being like actors on a stage, as Stibbe supposes in making his criticism. Rather, the real issue behind the superficial issue of drama vs. the dramatic is the emphasis on the nature of causality inherent in plot and drama as opposed to that emphasized in story.

The emphasis on story over plot in romance and the FG is much more than an empirical fact and much more than a quality that allows for inclusiveness, however important these qualities are important in themselves. By lessening the emphasis on causality, the story is much more able to allow and create a state of marvel and wonder and open the doors to the ideal and transcendent. Beer observes,

One method of disengaging us from our ordinary assumptions is the swift smooth elision from adventure to adventure. The lack of causal links is again typical of much oral literature or literature based on an oral tradition. What matters artistically, however, is the range of effects which the romance writers create by such means.

For example, in Shakespeare’s Pericles there are often no causal links between scenes. There is no causal transition at all to link Pericles’ arrival at Tharsus with

---

76 Stibbe, “Introduction,” Anthology, 8.
77 Forster observes, “The plot is exciting and may be beautiful, yet is it not a fetish, borrowed from drama, from the spatial limitations of the stage? Cannot fiction devise a framework that is not so logical yet more suitable to its genius?” Aspects, 92-93. Similarly, for Frye, “The essential element of plot in romance is adventure, which means that romance is naturally a sequential and processional form, hence we know it better from fiction than from drama. Frye, Anatomy, 186.
78 Beer, Romance, 28.
79 Dean, Wanderers, 234-238.
ship of wheat for famine relief with anything that proceeded it. Rather, it serves as emotional relief from previous depressing scenes and enhances the reputation of Pericles. To Cleon, Dionyza, their subjects in Tharsus, and to the viewer, the arrival of the grain is completely unexpected and truly marvelous. With few exceptions, the events of the FG proceed in chronicle fashion as if uncaused by previous events, at least insofar as Jesus himself is concerned. Why does Jesus go to the wedding (2:1), or up to Jerusalem (2:13), or to the Judean Countryside (3:22), or to Galilee (4:43), or to Cana again (4:46) or up to Jerusalem (5:1) etc.? We are not told. On simply reading through the FG the effect is striking. We are only told that he went, the implication being he went because he chose to. Throughout the FG, Jesus determines his own destiny and, although he avoids the Jews (7:1) he continues to confront them and places himself at the disposal of the Jews only on his own terms at his own time. Only in the events of the passion week does Jesus significantly enter into the causal matrix of circumstances, but even there he maintains control, is steadfast to his mission (18:11) and asserts his control over the trial events. (19:11) True to form, the FG closes with its greatest causal aporia, the status of chapter 21 with respect to chapter 20 and the rest of the gospel. In romance, however inviting the source critical

80 The incident of the Samaritan woman is only superficially an exception; Jesus “had to go through Samaria” and this counts as a reason, but it is a reason linked to Jesus’ choice and contrary to cultural expectation.
81 Stibbe speaks of much the same thing in his discussions of Jesus as the elusive Christ. John’s Gospel, 5-31; “The Elusive Christ: A New Reading of the Fourth Gospel,” Anthology, 231-247. Stibbe also discusses the causal aspects of John’s plot, but has in mind something like the progression or stages in the development of the story. see John’s Gospel, 35-36.
82 “Jesus does nothing, and nothing happens to him, by chance; and this is nowhere more evident than in the account of his death, whether in the passion narrative proper of in the many references and allusions to it throughout the Gospel. . . . Jesus’ own fixity of purpose is contrasted, probably quite deliberately, with Pilate’s uncertainty.” D. Moody Smith, “Presentation,” 371.
83 see chapter four below.
Marvel and wonder happen best when, like the laws of nature, the laws of causality inherent in plot are lessened or absent. Links between events can be suggestive, imaginative, or thematic rather than being defined and supplied for the reader by means of plot. Breaking free of the iron laws of causality is analogous to the suspension of the laws of realism, marvelous adventures, angels, fairies, gods, and the like being the result. A heavy plot in a closed world is the enemy of wonder, as any reader of Hardy’s later novels soon discovers. Equally true, wonder is the enemy of a heavy plot. Tragedy, with its emphasis on plot, leaves little room for the wonderful. The marvelous, and the would be marvelous, those tragic heroes, die with their ideals on the twin edges of causality and plot.

Suspending or lessening causality allows the marvelous and wonderful in romance and grants something like a state of grace. Indeed, the connection between a state of grace and the severing of causality claims theological warrant from the New Testament where, supremely, the resurrection breaks the causal authority of death itself. On this basis the work of Christ breaks the causal link between sin and death and allows the believer to live in a state of grace in which the causal authority of the past is broken. Memory, the past, and an intelligence too occupied with the quality of “why”,

---

84 Wayne Meeks comments “The major literary problem of John is its combination of remarkable stylistic unity and thematic coherence with glaringly bad transitions between episodes at many points. The countless displacement, source, and redaction theories that litter the graveyards of Johannine research are voluble testimony to this difficulty.” Meeks, “The Man from Heaven in Johannine Sectarianism,” *JBL* 91 (1972) 48. The interpretation of “the glaringly bad transitions between episodes” may be a kind of trap for the unwary or hermeneutical test; whether to interpret them according to the demands of realism (source criticism) or romance. Perhaps not coincidentally, source criticism has preoccupied both Johannine scholars and scholars of Medieval romance.
elements so important to Forster's analysis of plot, no longer apply. Grace and forgiveness reduce the authority of the past and allow "why" to take on a marvelous quality free from the kind of "why" fraught with potential negative obsession. In romance, "why" becomes "it is." One enters the state of grace in romance by a step of faith wherein things are allowed to relate to each other outside the bounds of strict linear causality. Romance, then, has its own form of logic or mode of thought.

In romance, the lessening or suspension of causality is an accomplished fact, whereas in comedy it is potential and occurs at or near the end as some sort of integration is achieved. In comedy the suspension of causality can be confined to something that is technically or realistically possible, as is typical of Austin, or can involve all manner of implausible solutions, fairy god mothers and the like. In the FG, the most basic of causal sequences in life, death, is suspended in the end, as might be expected in comedy. But in the FG the other basic causal sequence of life, birth, is likewise suspended. Jesus, the Word, is already in the world as the Word made flesh, poetically and theologically unborn, begotten not made, and fully realized in a way not linked with the progression of birth and childhood. The "how" of earthly birth is not important. It is significant primarily for its non-occurrence at the beginning. The converse of this is that spiritual birth is possible, indeed necessary, without reference to previous events.

The link between scenes or adventures in romance is both personal and thematic related to an ideal. And since it is personal it is related to the ideal held by the hero and on this basis the links between scenes are vertical and personal- which in romance are
The question “why?” in relation to some sort of linear causality is inappropriate and some other “answer” is waiting to be discovered, an answer that is on its own terms self-evident. The ideal is self-evident; a causal answer on any other terms is incorrect. For the knight in battle or for the chivalrous lover, no explanation is necessary; the presence of the ideal is assumed and is justified on its own terms.

In a discussion of causality and typology in *The Great Code*, Frye notes, “Causality, however, is based on reason, observation, and knowledge, and therefore relates fundamentally to the past, on the principle that the past is all that we genuinely or systematically know. Typology relates to the future, and consequently relates primarily to faith, hope, and vision.” Further, causality is based on or has to do with locating the causes and effects on the same temporal plane. For example, “Ascribing a disease to the will of God or to the malice of a witch is not causal thinking.” To a large extent *The Great Code* is an attempt to attribute the content and production of the Bible, including its typology, entirely to causation in one sphere, i.e. historical, social, cultural, factors, etc. But, with reference to its own specific purposes, limitation of causation to one sphere is precisely the type of thinking the FG seeks to overcome by virtue of incarnational theology. In the FG and in romance, existence or causality in one sphere has a relationship to another; water can become wine, the lame are healed, dead men rise, Jesus replaces the temple, Jesus works because his Father is working.

---

85 Culpepper states, “The plot of the gospel is propelled by conflict between belief and unbelief as responses to Jesus.” *Anatomy*, 97. Disregarding the issue of plot/story, Culpepper’s point is not quite correct. By initiating the challenge to believe, Jesus propels the story of the FG.
87 ibid., 82.
and, most importantly in the FG, believing grants life.\textsuperscript{88} (20:31) On the FG’s conception of things Davies writes,

The Fourth gospel differs from modern histories in one major respect. By beginning with the Creator God’s plan for creation, and telling the story of Jesus as the most significant contribution to that plan, it not only notices the effect of this belief on people within the story, but asserts that God is the first cause of all things. The Creator God causes the world and history to come into existence and gives eternal life to those people who conform to the divine conception of human life. Compared to this primary cause, the social, economic and political power structures play a less significant role.\textsuperscript{89}

A different kind of causality, if it can be called that, is in order, one in which “the Son can do nothing by himself; he can do only what he sees his Father doing, because whatever the Father does the Son also does.” (5:19) Rooted in the Word as creator, this kind of “causality” is based God’s present involvement in the world in Jesus Christ and on an interpersonal/ inter-Trinitarian relationship manifest in space and time.

In his classic defense of Christianity, 	extit{Orthodoxy}, G. K. Chesterton makes a similar point regarding causality. For the materialist, or the madman, (the two are synonymous for Chesterton), there is only one form of explanation available, that of a strict causal progression.\textsuperscript{90} But for Chesterton this is a dangerous limitation, what he calls “the clean and well lit prison of one idea.” He observes,

\textsuperscript{88}“With the miracles, as with other elements of the tradition, John has seized the Christological interpretation which is implicit in the Synoptics, clarified it and stamped it upon the material in such a way that the reader is not allowed to escape it. The miracles of this Gospel are a function of its Christology. Rightly to understand them is to apprehend Christ by faith (10:38, 14:11). The miracles once grasped in their true meaning lead immediately to the Christology, since they are a manifestation of the glory of Christ (2:11).” C. K. Barrett, \textit{The Gospel According to John: An Introduction with Commentary and Notes on the Greek Text} (London: SPCK, 1978) 75.

\textsuperscript{89}Margaret Davies, \textit{Rhetoric}, 59.

\textsuperscript{90}G. K. Chesterton, \textit{Orthodoxy} (London: John Lane, 1909) 40. In large measure, Chesterton argues the case for Christianity by debunking a world view, frame of reference, or mode of thinking based on realism in favor of one based more on imagination and association akin to romance.
But scientific men do muddle their heads, until they imagine a necessary mental connection between an apple leaving the tree and apple reaching the ground. They do really talk as if they had found not only a set of marvelous facts, but a truth connecting those facts. They do talk as if the connection of two strange things physically connected them philosophically.\textsuperscript{91}

They talked as if the fact that trees bear fruit were just as necessary as the fact that two and one trees make three. But it is not.\textsuperscript{92}

For Chesterton, the connection between trees and fruit or between the apple falling and hitting the ground is not based on a law, but based upon a continuous, willful act of God. He notes, “The repetition in Nature may not be a mere recurrence; it may be a theatrical encore.”\textsuperscript{93} The mistake for the materialist is to suppose that a law posited on the basis of repetition becomes a law posited as the basis of repetition.\textsuperscript{94} The world continues at the pleasure of God and therefore it is a place where the marvelous might well be expected because its essential everyday continuation is an ongoing marvelous act in itself.

Analogous to the embodiment of an ideal in romance, in the FG the willful act of God ceases to be an unseen principle and becomes concrete and specific in Jesus Christ. A kind of conflict appears in the gospel which might be characterized after the manner of Kuhn as conflicting paradigms of interpretation. Kuhn’s remarks with

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{91}ibid., 90.
\item \textsuperscript{92}ibid., 88, his emphasis.
\item \textsuperscript{94}In a similar way, Kuhn states, “Given the slightest reason for doing so, the man who reads a science text can easily take the applications to be the evidence for the theory, the reasons why it ought to be believed.” Thomas Kuhn, The Structure of Scientific Revolutions, second ed. (Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 1970) 80.
\end{itemize}

83
regard to science are appropriate here; “The proponents of competing paradigms are always at least slightly at cross-purposes. Neither side will grant all the non-empirical assumptions that the other needs in order to make its case.” To the extent that romance and epic are, as Frye remarks about epic, “the story of all things,” other stories or paradigms are incompatible. Romance and the FG simultaneously assume and educate in the right paradigm that is for them self evident. This is the kind of conflict that marks much of Jesus’ conflicts in the FG, especially the tenacious opposition of the Jews. For the Jews, the law and Moses have become causal factors sufficient unto themselves without due reference to the action of God. Jesus informs the Jews, “[I]t is not Moses who has given you the bread from heaven, but is my Father who gives you the true bread from heaven.” (6:32) The Jews fail to grant the required assumption such that the one who said, “I am the bread that came down from heaven” will intractably remain “Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know.” (6:42) A related dynamic is present when Jesus informs Pilate, “You have no power over me that was not given to you from above.” Jesus being glorified through the passion and cross certainly finds no basis within contemporary views of crucifixion.

---

95 ibid., 148.
97 In a similar way, Stanley Fish argues that the “argument” of Paradise Lost, or Milton’s attempt to “Justify the ways of God to man” is not a argument in the conventional sense. Rather it is the education of the reader’s perceptions such that the line of thought assumed in the work, the argument, will be come to be accepted. See Stanley Fish, Surprised by Sin: The Reader in Paradise Lost, second edition. (Houndmills, Basingstoke, Hampshire, and London: Macmillan, 1997); “Discovery as Form in Paradise Lost,” in same 340-356.
Point of view with regard to Jesus and scope and limits of perception are of paramount importance in the FG.

C) CHARACTERS IN ROMANCE

C.1 IDENTITY AND SELF DETERMINATION

While the story of the FG is closest to the archetype of romance, it differs from romance and defines itself with emphasis on certain key themes, notably on character type. Frye divides characters of all literature into five types that are each characteristic of an archetype: 1) if the hero is superior in kind and environment to others, the story will be a myth, or story about a god; 2) if superior in degree to other characters and his environment, the hero will be typical of romance, wherein the human hero moves in a world of slightly suspended natural laws; 3) if superior in degree to others in terms of authority, passions, and expression but not to his natural environment and subject to the order of nature, the hero will be typical of tragedy and most epic; 4) if superior neither to others nor to his environment, the hero is of common humanity and typical of comedy and realistic fiction; and 5) if inferior in power or intelligence to ourselves resulting in a sense of looking down on a scene of bondage, ignorance, or frustration, then the hero belongs to the ironic mode. Of present concern is the distinction between myth and romance, which Frye summarizes, “We have distinguished myth from romance by the hero’s power of action: in the myth proper he is divine, in the romance proper he is human.”

---

98 Frye, Anatomy, 33-34.
99 ibid., 188.
The hero's power of action is fundamental to romance. If the hero is to be free and possess the power to act in the sense Frye has in mind, then the hero must be free from being primarily determined by the exigencies of causality and realism in the sense argued above. Freedom from linear causality is not to be free from the principle of causality in general. Rather the type of causality in romance is personal causality, freedom to determine one's own destiny in the midst of circumstance and to transcend those circumstances by adherence to an ideal. *In romance, the knight does not meet the enemy to defend himself; he meets the enemy because he is brave.* The former locates motivation in external cause and effect; the latter within one's own self and one's adherence to an ideal or belief.

In romance the hero's actions are bound up with a character's being what he or she is that excludes acting in any other way. There is something like a necessary connection between identity and action so that, whatever the external circumstances, the hero cannot but act in accordance with certain character defining ideals and beliefs. Ideals and character are one and the same. Auerbach notes,

Except feats of arms and love, nothing can occur in the courtly world- and even these two are of a special sort: they are not occurrences or emotions which can be absent for a time; they are permanently connected with the person of the perfect knight, they are part of his definition, so that he cannot for one moment be without adventure in arms nor for one moment be without amorous entanglements. If he could, he would lose himself and no longer be a knight.\(^{100}\)

While the knight meets the enemy because he is brave, his bravery does not allow him to do otherwise. Doubt and duplicity are excluded. While the ideal in a particular

\(^{100}\) Auerbach, *Mimesis*, 140.
romance may vary, the principle remains substantially the same; to be untrue to the ideal is to be false to one's self. Jesus, who does what the Father does (5:19), must drink the cup given to him; he, like Luther, can do no other.

In contrast, in comedy and tragedy, some tension producing distance always exists between the self with its ideals and its surroundings, a tension inevitably leading to tension within the self. For example, in *Oedipus the King*, Oedipus' character requires him to get to the bottom of things and destroys him in doing so. In romance, the source of the conflict is not grounded in the protagonist's struggle with the self coming to terms with one's surroundings, rather the struggle is to successfully maintain the self and an ideal against the onslaught of circumstances. The conflict in romance is thus between the integrated and good world of the hero and the values he/she assumes and represents as over against a world of chaos, evil, and darkness, a struggle Frye casts in terms of descent into a lower world followed by an ascent to a higher world. To depart from the ideal is to destroy the self, call the ideal into question and align one's self with the lower world.

The integrity of the self with one's actions may be seen, for example, in the Medieval French epic *The Song of Roland*. The Judas-like treachery of Ganelon places the hero Roland in a Saracen ambush. Outnumbered, Roland's companion Oliver repeatedly urges Roland to blow the horn and summon help from Charlemagne and his army some distance ahead. Roland refuses, saying 'That would be an act of folly,' citing as reasons, the loss of his good name, the reproach to his kinsmen, the

---

101 This is a central theme of Frye's *Secular Scriptures*.
reputation of France, and a desire to strike blows against the pagans. Implicitly, the honor and reputation of Christianity is at stake. Following these interchanges, the poet writes, “Roland is brave and Oliver is wise; both are marvelous vassals.” Roland’s bravery is incompatible with the wisdom of Oliver and may seem foolhardy to readers not sharing those values. But Roland’s judgment on Oliver’s advice as folly is significant. While Roland and Oliver do not share the same point of view, each is true to his own values and this matters most of all. And, given the ethos of the poem, the antithetical nature of their respective values to which they remain loyal actually enhances their stature as heroes rather than calling their respective positions into question. Roland dies, but in maintaining bravery in a hopeless situation, he is not only loyal to his ideals and those of his society, but in doing so also determines his own destiny.

In another variation on preserving one’s self in bad circumstances, in Shakespeare’s *Pericles*, pirates capture Pericles’ daughter Marina and sell her into slavery in a brothel. But by asserting the rightness of her cause, a cause at one with her character, she shames her captors, preserves her virtue, works something of a transforming effect on those around her, and vindicates the protection of the gods. The threatened virgin convention common to romance (analogous to Penelope’s situation in *The Odyssey*) is not so much an obsession with chastity as it is in essence a test of the survival of the self with one’s integrity intact. Frye observes, “What is symbolized as a virgin is actually a human conviction, however expressed, that there is something at the

---

103 ibid., stanzas 83-86.
104 ibid., stanza 87, lines 1093-94.
core of one’s infinitely fragile being which is not only immortal but has discovered the secret of invulnerability that eludes the tragic hero.”105 In the cases of Marina and Roland, both preserve themselves in the midst of circumstances, however different those circumstances and outcomes may be. In the FG, Jesus’ struggle is to display and preserve his identity as the incarnate logos, however much others attempt to define him on other terms. In comedy and tragedy, the protagonist experiences a change, for better or worse, of self and circumstance.

In romance the lessening of linear causality as expressed in plot allows for an imaginative space for the hero to rise to prominence. Conversely, the rise of the hero suspends linear causality, as is the case with the alteration of Marina’s destiny. The hero acting on an ideal is the source and unity of the action, but only to a point. The hero cannot always fashion events and must often endure them, but does so under the eyes of an implicit or explicit divine providence on the terms of which the worthy will be successful, good will triumph, and evil punished. The choice of Arthur is cast in terms of divine approval as evidenced by his removal of the sword and subsequent events. The copious victories of the invincible knight depend upon the same principle as do the successes of Odysseus.

In a study of Shakespeare’s romances in terms of their own place and time and Shakespeare’s development as an author, Mincoff argues that Shakespeare’s turn to romance represents, at least in part, something of a reaction against a decline in faith characteristic of his age.106

105 Frye, Secular Scripture, 86.
106 Marco Mincoff, Things Supernatural and Causeless: Shakespearean Romance (London: and Toronto: Associated University Presses, 1992). The title is significant and is taken from Lafeu in All’s
Since in turning to romance Shakespeare did lay considerable stress on “things supernatural and causeless” it thus seems probable that this was a least one of the things that attracted him to the genre. Moreover, it seems he was definitely interested in suggesting that the strange happenings and coincidences one may so easily attribute to a blind fortune are in fact part of a wider scheme of things. It is done very tactfully; we are generally led to believe not so much in chance as in human causation throughout the body of the play, and it is only at a single point in the action, mostly at the very end that the interest of superior powers in things human is made manifest, and with it the obvious suggestion that what we have taken for chance is after all something more than that. Only in The Tempest are we faced with the definitely marvelous as a part of the action itself, and there it is a question of magic, not of divine interference.\(^{107}\)

Whatever the merits of Mincoff’s qualified and cautious linking of Shakespeare’s use of romance to an attempt on Shakespeare’s part to assert something of his own point of view in his own day, a point debated in Shakespearean scholarship, Mincoff rightly highlights the link between romance and divine providence. In a kind of dance between heaven and earth, chance encounters and miscellaneous adventures find a thematic unity, as the preservation of Marina in the brothel shows, that is as much related to character qualities as it is to divine providence. In romance, the waters of miracle, providence, and character, if traced far enough, are seen to flow from the same fountain.

Writing in epic-like tone and, as it were, from the other side of orthodoxy, Thomas Carlyle argues for the great man theory of history and offers an analysis of

\(^{107}\) ibid., 25.
several figures ranging from Mohammed to John Knox. Carlyle discerns a central quality of sincerity in great men. He writes,

[B]ut [he] is first of all in right earnest about it; what I call a sincere man. I should say sincerity, a deep, great, genuine sincerity, is the first characteristic of all men in any way heroic. Not the sincerity that calls itself sincere; ah, no, that is a very poor matter indeed; a shallow braggart, conscious sincerity; oftenest self-conceit mainly.

By sincerity Carlyle means something like “unconscious truthfulness to one’s self,” something that goes beyond merely believing that one believes. For Carlyle, to the extent that the great man cooperates with “the great deep Law of the World” he is victorious and assured of the rightness of his cause. Religion is important for Carlyle, not in any credal sense, but only in so far as it exhibits sincerity and conviction. Doubt is synonymous with cultural defeat, for, “No sadder proof can be given by a man of his own littleness than disbelief in great men.” The rightness of a cause religion or god and acting according to one’s beliefs formed an indispensable part of life as doing so allowed one to shape events. Significantly, no matter how much his contemporary world viewed heroic culture as a fading if not distant memory, Carlyle grounded the worthiness of the hero in the enduring twin principles of connection with some higher principle and truthfulness to one’s self.

C.2 REPRESENTATION

---

108 ibid., 280.
109 ibid., 291.
110 ibid., 250.
Very much related to the hero of romance as embodied ideal, romance and epic are fundamentally *representationa* in character. Romance is representational in *character* in more than one sense; in terms of character as embodied ideal, and character in terms of a quality or property. Since the hero represents an ideal, the archetypal pattern of romance and epic may be viewed tropologically as metaphor in which one thing is represented in terms of another. I. A. Richard's' widely accepted distinction between 'tenor' and 'vehicle' in metaphor defines tenor as the idea being expressed or the subject of the comparison and vehicle as the image by which this idea is conveyed or the subject communicated. In romance there is a high degree of representation or correspondence between tenor and vehicle. The hero represents something in a metaphorical sense, while at the same time what the hero represents is bound up with the hero's person and being. And since the ideals are both represented and held by the hero, the hero's actions display that ideal. Opposition to the hero is opposition to the ideal; the triumph of the hero is the triumph of the ideal. Due to the FG's emphasis on realism, history, and the incarnation, tenor and vehicle are united such that characters are at once representational and "real."

The representative quality of romance often leads to an emphasis on the fantastic and marvelous. The marvelous elements common to romance tend to allow the hero greater scope for the exercise and display of his ideals by a simultaneous increase in the hero's power to do so. In such contexts romance is simply being true to what it attempts to do; in romance it is more important that the ideal be represented rather than concrete reality. Odysseus, repeatedly designated as "resourceful" is given

ample opportunity to demonstrate his resourcefulness through his actions; in a reciprocal way his actions display his resourcefulness. The bravery and prowess of the knight is exaggerated in marvelous or improbable circumstances within the framework of a convention that demands to be taken on its own terms. Chretian de Troyes' knight Eric defeats three knights, then five knights, then survives the treachery of a count with one hundred knights, then defeats a few giants, and concludes his adventures with the supreme defeat of a previously undefeated knight. The adventures of James Bond or any other superhero follows the same dynamic. Often in romance the depiction of a hero triumphing over exaggerated villains in a labyrinth of adventures and difficulties becomes a kind of end in itself. In such cases self-conscious experiments in form triumph over content. To the extent that the bonds of realism are left behind and the worth of an ideal (or any ideal) becomes questionable, the romance form becomes conventionalized into stock formula and begins the plunge into irony and self parody. The ideals of love, adventure, and victory degenerate into sex, violence, and incompetence. Thus, the Bond films maintain the convention of the romance, but do so ironically and vestigially, without serious reference to significant ideals.

The representative principle applies equally as well to the realistic circumstances of characters as diverse as Ruth the Moabitess to the prophet Daniel to Agnes and Mr. Pegotty of *David Copperfield* to Fanny Price of *Mansfield Park*. Oliver Twist and Tiny Tim are variations on the timeless theme of threatened innocence. Whatever the limits of circumstance, the hero as embodied ideal characteristic of the archetype of romance remains so long as a writer or an audience accepts an ideal and its value as
possible and worthy of emulation. By way of contrast, in Hardy's *Tess* threatened innocence becomes ruined innocence, an ideal no longer possible under the demands of circumstance. Angel, Tess' ironically named husband, cannot or will not redeem in circumstances of spiritual sterility.

Because he is the incarnate Word, Jesus both operates within and transcends the conventional representational boundaries. Jesus is *sui generis*, human and divine, and therefore does not correspond precisely to Frye's classification of character types. Jesus enters the world as man in space and time and realism and in doing so makes a descent from what Frye designates 'myth' into romance and beyond. And since Jesus is fully human and subject to the order of nature, classification of his character in Frye's scheme extends to epic as well. While doing so Jesus maintains his status as divine and Jesus also claims representative status with respect to the Father. Jesus claims to be at one with the Father (10:30) and thus a full participant in deity. Jesus is the sent one of the Father who performs his mission in obedience to what the Father desires. But Jesus is distinct from the Father while at one with him. In representing the Father, or showing the Father to the world, he displays the Father. Jesus tells Philip, "Don't you know me, Philip, even after I have been among you such a long time? Anyone who has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, 'Show us the Father?' Don't you believe that I am in the Father, and that the Father is in me?" (14:9-10) Thus Jesus both represents the Father, acting according to the Father's wishes on the Father's behalf, and, sharing the Father's deity, re-presents the Father in a medium not inherent to either.
As a human being and as God, and as the Son at one with the Father, Jesus in one sense is, as a man, a metaphor for God, and, as the Son, a metaphor for the Father. Metaphor is here understood as an imaginative identification of one thing with another. In Jesus’ case an “imaginative identification” is precisely what is necessary; the normal categories of human/divine and God as one in a non-Trinitarian sense have broken down. At the same time the identification is not imaginative in the sense of not being real; rather imagination (analogous to faith) is the faculty by which the reality is apprehended. To see Jesus is to see God, and to see Jesus is to see the Father. The incarnation reveals God in that Jesus is God, and reveals something about God in that Jesus can claim oneness with the Father and yet maintain a separate identity. In the incarnation Jesus reveals God in a metaphorical or representational way in the sense that he does so in a way that is not inherent in the nature of God, that is, as a human being. At the same time this does not necessarily mean that, however much it remains a mystery, the claim that Jesus is a human being is incompatible with the claim that he is God. Theologically, Jesus is in one sense the quintessential metaphor, fully one thing and fully another, God and man, the degree of correspondence between tenor and vehicle in his case being absolute. In another sense, non-theologically, Jesus is first cousin to other heroes in romance, heroes who are fully themselves and fully representational of something else.

Metaphor can mean or express much or little, depending on an evaluation of similarities, differences and degree of correspondence between tenor and vehicle. Jesus is both God and man, absolute similarity and difference. Hick’s designation of Jesus as
“the metaphor of God incarnate” is ironic in that it negates Jesus’ unique claim to divinity, the key feature of the way Jesus has been traditionally understood.\footnote{\textsuperscript{112}See John Hick, \textit{The Metaphor of God Incarnate} (London: SCM Press, 1993).} This view reduces Jesus to a mere ethical illustration or representation in a way detached from his identity. For Hick, tenor and vehicle for Jesus are accidental, not ontological. If Hick’s view of things is applied to the conception of the hero as an embodied ideal in the case of Jesus or anyone else, the hero represents something other than what he is in himself; tenor and vehicle threaten to break apart, stay apart, or bang together, a state of affairs more akin to tragedy, irony and comedy than romance.

The conflict in the FG is not simply one of the fantastic meeting the world of realism in physical or literary terms; it is the conflict of the personal and ideal, God, meeting a fallen world, the integrated meeting the disintegrated, the whole meeting the broken. The worlds of tragedy, irony, and comedy are worlds in which the individual is somehow estranged from the world and from the self in that both the world and the individuals who inhabit it are estranged from God. Jesus is the one who both represents the Father by doing as the Father does (5:19) and does so in submission, obedience, and freedom as one who has been granted “life in himself” by the Father. (5:26) Jesus is the living embodiment of a unity of faith and knowledge, faith being understood as volitional commitment related to love and obedience and knowledge understood as complete factual and personal knowledge of God the Father. In the FG, “The evangelist stresses repeatedly that Jesus’ knowledge is full and perfect knowledge of the Father... of men and of the work which has been given Him to do. Christ’s
knowledge of the Father is direct and absolute.”[113] Jesus knows and “believes” the Father; in their intra-Trinitarian fellowship knowledge and belief are fully realized and perichoretic. Faith and knowledge are not reciprocal or in process for Jesus and the Father as if one built upon and enhanced the other, but faith and knowledge for Jesus and the Father are one, an established state of affairs, an ontological fact. “I and the Father are one” (10:30) is a statement of unity and diversity. Jesus is doubly the ideal in that he is God and obeys God.

In a fallen world faith and knowledge are at a distance from each other, especially in matters relating to God, something reflected in the endeavor of Christian theology being often designated “faith seeking understanding”. In this sense the FG does not so much present Jesus as making an ethical challenge through teaching, as is more so the case in the Synoptics, but as one who is fully integrated and realized being, both in terms of integration of identity and in terms of that identity expressed in love. In this sense, Jesus in the FG follows the romance pattern of identity being at one with ideal. Jesus’ challenge to the world is fundamentally ontological. Jesus, as one with the Father, is in this sense a fully realized ideal, not in a Platonic sense, but as one who lives what he is and what he is identical with God. As such, he exposes the darkness and corruption of a world that prefers the darkness of disintegration and rejects the light. Again, at its dialectical poles, the conflict in the FG displays the antithetical nature of the perspectives of romance and irony as personal points of view. The former assumes the possibility and reality of some ideal and the possibility and reality of that

ideal actually being worthy of being known, asserted and lived, however difficult and
dangerous that may be; the latter denies both the ideal and the possibility of knowing
and living by them, tending instead toward relativism and a "realistic" concern with the
here and now. The ironic perspective, with its characteristic tendency toward
detachment and negation, in some formulations very much tend toward faithlessness,
accepting as insurmountable givens the fractured and confused aspects of human
existence. In the FG, romance meets irony and realism in a theologically full way.\textsuperscript{114}

C.3 OTHER CHARACTERS IN THE FG: LIVING ENCOUNTERS

In romance the hero and all other characters are defined in relation to an ideal.
As theological and narrative center of the FG, Jesus defines all other characters in
relation to himself. Jesus does not meet the world in abstraction, he meets others,
fractured people with varying degrees of faith and knowledge. Faith and knowledge as
crucial components of all characters in the FG are under challenge and most are in flux,
giving a certain life to those in transition and producing narrative tension as Jesus
opposes those who refuse to be moved. In its characterization the FG parallels the
conventions of romance by giving its characters a universal significance. According to
Frye, "The characterization of romance is really a feature of its mental landscape. Its
heroes and villains exist primarily to symbolize a contrast between two worlds, one
above the level of ordinary experience, the other below it."\textsuperscript{115} In the world of the FG,

\textsuperscript{114} While irony is manifestly a feature of the FG, the FG employs irony as a narrative strategy to make
its point against a personal perspective that is fundamentally ironic. This will be explored in chapter 3
below.

\textsuperscript{115} Frye, \textit{Secular Scripture}, 53. "There is, first, a world associated with happiness, security, and peace;
the emphasis is often thrown on childhood or on an "innocent" or pre-genital period of youth, and the
the being above or below the level of ordinary experience corresponds to a character’s response to Jesus. On the other hand, the FG differs from the conventions of romance in that its secondary characters are not static; all must respond to Jesus, neutrality is not an option. The FG is noteworthy for the scarcity of characters indifferent to Jesus.

Beginning, as it were, in the depths of Biblical criticism, the characters in the FG might also be designated minimally as “representative figures.” The difference between the two terms lies in the fact that character suggests a living quality while representative figure suggests a function as a living embodiment of some other concern, although the two overlap. Bultmann saw Peter and the Beloved disciple as representing a conflict between the church in Palestine and the Hellenistic Christian Church and in doing so located the representative function in the Sitz in Leben of the early church. In its strong form this type of approach is virtual allegory, positing as it does a reality beyond the text no less fanciful than Origen’s platonic excursions, albeit one wearing the figleaf of a theoretically possible empirical referent. In another

images our those of spring and summer, flowers and sunshine. I shall call this world the idyllic world. The other is a world of exciting adventures, but adventure which involve separation, loneliness, humiliation, pain, and the threat of more pain. I shall call this world the demonic or night world. Because of the powerful polarizing tendency in romance, we are usually carried directly from one to the other.” Criticizing and going beyond Frye at this point, Jameson argues that Frye’s upper and lower worlds are conceptually informed by the clash between good and evil in a way characteristic of romance but not tragedy or comedy. See chapters two and four below.


guise, this approach attempts to use the New Testament as a pathway to reconstruct a historical person beyond the text itself.\textsuperscript{119}

Collins offers an approach that begins to move from the quicksand of the prehistory of the text to the representative function of the figures within the text itself.\textsuperscript{120} He writes,

It is my conviction that a process of oral tradition similar to that which lay behind the Synoptic Gospels also lies behind the Fourth Gospel. Within this homiletic tradition we should place the development of units of material, pericopes, in which various individuals appear—precisely as types of the point that the homilist was trying to make.\textsuperscript{121}

Selected from this homiletic tradition as representatives of certain responses to Jesus within the Johannine church, John’s representative figures are stripped to their essential role and function in the FG as type-cast figures to provoke and confirm faith within the reader. For example, the royal official, whom Collins does not believe to represent the Gentile world, “stands as a representative of those who believe in Jesus’s [sic] word, the word which brings life.”\textsuperscript{122} By stressing the representative or type quality of those appearing within the FG, Collins emphasizes the static quality of each and tends not to explore their dynamic potential.

Coupled with the dynamic nature of the secondary characters, the stress on realism and concrete detail in the FG prevents a given character from being a cipher for


\textsuperscript{121} ibid., 29.

\textsuperscript{122} ibid. 41
abstract values. Various aspects of representative figures can be explored in the case of
the Samaritan woman. The narrative begins within the oft noted framework of the Old
Testament type scene, wherein a man meets a maiden at a well and in so doing tests the
waters of courtship. The personal history of the Samaritan woman, being five times
married and living with a sixth man, parallels and represents the national history of
Samaria as a whole, a country repeatedly colonized by outside powers and religiously
corrupt and, like the Samaritan woman herself, is maiden no more. The correspondence of the details of her personal life with her country’s history grounds her
representative function to a particular people in a particular time and place. The more
that is known about the particulars of Samaria and the details of her life, the better we
understand her representative function, however difficult that may be 2000 years later.
But within narrative of the FG, her role expands to represent the one who tells others
of Jesus and who recognizes Jesus in all his fullness as the savior of the world, a savior
who transcends national boundaries. The story began in a Jewish context of the type
scene at Jacob’s well and ends with universal gospel proclamation.

But in addition, the Samaritan woman, estranged by her race, religion, location,
gender, and conduct, is a universal type, the outsider. And yet whatever her liabilities,
they present no barriers to coming to Christ. In contrast, Nicodemus is an insider,
another universal type. His status as a man with all the privileges of race, location,
wealth, and social position offers no advantage with regard to God. Fitting his remarks

123 Much of the treatment of the representative role of the Samaritan Woman within the FG itself
treatment of representative figures, see Koester, Symbolism in the Fourth Gospel: Meaning, Mystery,
Community (Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1995) 49.
to Nicodemus and his circumstances and aristocratic birth, Jesus tells him, “You must be born again.” Their function as universal types keeps the Samaritan woman and Nicodemus from the oblivion of ancient history, while the specific details of their lives and circumstances prevent them from becoming mere ciphers for spiritual values, bridging the gap between romance and realism. The fact that they must respond to Jesus challenges their respective status quo and challenges them to insider/outsider status with respect to faith in Jesus. Each functions as characters who speak, think, misunderstand, respond and act, infusing them with life and vitality.

The FG contains a variety of characters, from the committed to the hostile and all shades in between. The centrality of Jesus and the FG’s universal claims about him make the characters of the FG seem to live in a way that defies the lack of historical information about them. Thomas, Peter, Nicodemus, Pilate, Mary and Martha of Bethany, and Mary Magdalene seem to us more as living beings, particular individuals yet types of people we know or might know or have met somewhere rather than as relics of history whose dust we might comfortably shake from our garments.\footnote{For a discussion of universality and particularity with reference to imagination and the “human” factor in understanding, see Trevor Hart, “Imagination and Responsible Reading,” in Craig Bartholomew, Colin Greene, Karl Moller, eds., Renewing Biblical Interpretation (Carlisle: Paternoster Press, 2000) 307-334.}

Regardless of whether their origin is traced to the pre-history of the FG or to their use in antiquity or whatever source, the \textit{dramatis personae} found in the FG or any other work of literature cannot help but manifest some representative quality. O’Conner states that “Any character is....supposed to carry a burden of meaning larger...
than himself." There exist only a finite number of qualities, values, or characteristics of any sort and any character or person embodies various combinations of them. The particular combination of these makes every person or character unique. On this matter Chatman writes,

I argue—unoriginally but firmly—for a conception of character as a paradigm of traits; "trait" in the sense of "relatively stable or abiding personal quality," recognizing that it may either unfold, that is, emerge earlier or later in the course of the story, or that it may disappear and be replaced by another.

All characters and all people are representative types of some sort by virtue of a common humanity and common human experience without which communication between individuals ceases to be possible and literature becomes irrelevant.

The function of characters in the FG is therefore relentlessly particular and relentlessly theological and universal. The characters may be compared to Auerbach's interpretation of the typical Medieval function of characters as what he terms "figura", a quality Auerbach finds not exclusive to but perhaps best seen in Dante's *The Divine Comedy*. Normally, figurai interpretation involves viewing one event in light of another, the former prefiguring the latter, the latter expanding and fulfilling all within a vertical structure of divine providence, as, for example, in Adam or Joseph prefiguring Christ. Auerbach acknowledges this but extends its application. In

---

127 Eric Auerbach, "Figura", trans. Ralph Manheim in *Scenes from the Drama of European Literature: Six Essays* (Gloucester, MA: Peter Smith, 1973) 11-75, esp. 56-76. Auerbach states that his analysis of *figura* in this essay represents a refinement and clarification of an earlier book length analysis of *The Divine Comedy*. Figural interpretation is also discussed in *Mimesis*, 73-76; 156-157; 174-202; 554-557.
interpreting a character as figura, the historical reality of that character or event is maintained and seen against a context of the future divine judgment of God, an already realized eternal event. Auerbach observes,

[T]he figural interpretation of reality which, though in constant conflict with purely spiritualist and Neoplatonic tendencies, was the dominant view in the European Middle Ages: the idea that earthly life is thoroughly real, with the reality of the flesh into which the Logos entered, but that with all its reality it is only umbra and figura of the authentic, future, ultimate truth, the real reality that will unveil and preserve the figura. In this way the individual earthly event is not regarded as a definitive self-sufficient reality, nor as a link in a chain of development in which single events or combinations of events perpetually give rise to new events, but viewed primarily in immediate vertical connection with a divine order which encompasses it, which on some future day will itself be concrete reality; so that the earthly event is a prophecy or figura of a part of a wholly divine reality that will be enacted in the future. But this reality is not only future; it is always present in the eye of God and in the other world.128

It is important to note that this kind of figural interpretation is not allegory, however easily figural interpretation drifts in that direction or however common allegory was in the Medieval world. Auerbach notes, “... the literal meaning or historical reality of a figure stands in no contradiction to its profounder meaning, but precisely “figures” it; the historical reality is not annulled, but confirmed and fulfilled by the deeper meaning.”129

In the FG the reality against which other events and characters are judged is the incarnate Logos, the earthly and divine Jesus. The judgment of God is seen as eschatological and already present, (3:18ff), the presence of Jesus presents a living challenge to the status quo, simultaneously bound up in actions and being. A

128 Auerbach, “Figura” 72.
129 ibid., 73.
character's historical encounter with Jesus becomes a figura of one's ultimate encounter with God, the one no less real than the other. The Nicodemus story in its narrative presentation displays the dynamics of a character within the FG being vertically integrated with a transcendent reality. The real encounter of Jesus and Nicodemus moves theologically upward such that Nicodemus no longer appears and Jesus and the entire world are placed in a theological relationship with God. The theological reality is the background against which all is interpreted and establishes a basis upon which irony in the FG functions. Thus, Caiaphas' statement that “It is better for one man to die for the whole people” is understood simultaneously in two contexts. Characters can be seen at odds with the vertical dimension, but never outside of it.

Since the theological context of the FG is universal, the reader participates in the same challenges posed by Jesus as those in his own particular circumstances.

The universal theological claims of the FG demand that the extraordinary circumstances presented there remain living with us both theologically and imaginatively, animated in no small measure by those who encountered Jesus in their day. They are caught up in the same matrix as the reader, one that in the FG cannot be limited to encounter with the earthly Jesus. The characters of the FG and the reader revolve around a common center, the Incarnate Word and his universal claims. In this sense the characters of the FG are infused with life and significance, they are part of the language and grammar by which the FG seeks to convey its message. The characters are at once invitations or entry points into the experience, theology and world of the
FG and points of reference by which to define or change one’s location within that world.

The FG reflects and Jesus embodies the tendency of romance toward vertical perspective. The resulting tendency is a vertical stratification of characters into heroes and villains and a tendency to set an idealized or noble situation over against an evil or demonic parody of it. In doing so Frye notes that “romance avoids the ambiguities of ordinary life, where everything is a mixture of good and bad, and where it is difficult to take sides or believe that people are consistent patterns of virtue or vice.” Thus, in order for this polarization to take place, the world of romance correspondingly tends to be idealized, in the fullest sense of that term, and depart from the ambiguities of realism in some way. The tendency for romance to be set somewhere else, in a world not quite like our own, usually in the sentimental or idyllic past. In the FG, the idyllic past is the eternal past, before creation, the present is the eschatological now, a now that, contrary to a common tendency in romance, takes full account of concrete particulars and the vexing circumstance of earthly life. In order for realism to continue on its own terms without reference to romance, it must focus on the present as it is, get on with the Romans, and cast out the miraculous and ideal; Christ must be crucified or the heroes brought into line with the demands of realism.

The hero/villain polarity characteristic of romance and the FG is not established on ethical grounds. Since the hero is the ideal, to the extent that others are at odds

---

130 Frye, Secular Scripture, 50
131 Frye, Natural Perspective, 110.
132 Frye, Secular Scripture, 50.
with the hero, they are members of the lower world. Everything depends on the relationship to the hero. Jameson writes,

We have already suggested the constitutive relationship between romance and something like a positional concept of evil, analogous to the function of shifters or pronouns in linguistics, where the person standing opposite me is marked as the villain, not by virtue of any particular characteristics of his own, but simply in function of his relationship to my own place. 133

Frye makes a similar comment,

The characterization of romance follows its general dialectic structure, which means that subtlety and complexity are not much favored. Characters tend to be either for or against the quest. If they assist it they are idealized as simply gallant or pure; if they obstruct it they are caricatured as simply villainous or cowardly. Hence every typical character in romance tends to have his moral opposite confronting him... 134

The FG is like romance with respect to all characters being defined in relation to the hero, Jesus, but atypical of romance in that the FG with its emphasis on realism resists the tendency toward caricature and stereotype.

In the FG, a character's ethical dimension develops subsequent to a response to Jesus. Although the world is in darkness and rebellion (1:5), and the world is under condemnation by virtue of its unbelief and evil deeds (3:18-21), within the confines of the narrative in which he, she, or they initially appears each character begins in a state of poetic innocence. Fairy tales and romances generally hold a sense of good being the

133 Jameson, Magical Narratives, 160.
134 Frye, Anatomy, 195. Similarly Reardon, who writes "...the numerous episodes, individually attractive, form not simply a linear series but a mounting climax-and they also people the story with a wealth of secondary characters against whom the figure of the hero can be measured." Reardon, Greek Romance, 16.
norm so that, while evil is present, it is an aberration. In the FG each character must choose, in terms of romance, to be part of the upper or lower world. But inasmuch as it concerns the phenomena of the narratives, as opposed to the overall theological statements of the FG, nobody is a “villain” until choosing to be one. Those who receive him, those who “believed on his name, he gave the right to become children of God” (1:12; cf. 3:16). The Jews, portrayed as questioning but relatively calm bystanders of the temple cleansing in chapter 2, are never denounced as hypocrites or “open graves” after the manner of the Synoptics. The Jews lapse into active opposition with murderous intent only after rejecting Jesus’ implicit claims to divinity (5:17-18), the problem being primarily theological rather than ethical. Jesus cautions the disciples against attributing the blindness of the man born blind to an ethical cause, neutralizing the issue of sin for the purposes of the narrative and clearing the way for an emphasis on faith response. Pilate appears on the narrative stage innocent and without the tar and feathers of other information (cf. Luke 13:1) or historical hindsight, one whose genuine but abortive progress toward Jesus later descends into condemnation of an innocent man with all its theological and ethical implications. Peter’s denials result from a failed response to Jesus of a certain type. Judas commits a betrayal that is as much theological as it is ethical.

By classifying the various characters according to their faith response, the stratification is at once simplified and expanded. It is simplified by centering on one

---

135 The analogy here with the FG is with the context of “in the beginning” and creation (1:1-4), a state of affairs from which the world has departed into darkness. In the FG, Jesus is the norm, and the world, in darkness and at odds with Jesus, is an aberration.
issue and it is expanded by its exploration of that one issue in all its complexities.¹³⁶

The issue is singular rather than simple. Commenting on this element in regard to characterization in the novel, Harvey notes that characters form bits of a central vision.

The central vision is fractured into characters and the characters move around the central vision in a dynamic fashion.¹³⁷ He writes,

[B]eneath the superstructure of the individualized character, we may sense those depths in which identity is submerged and united within a greater whole. And with the very greatest novels one feels that the individual character is thereby immeasurably enriched, that he is not obliterated, or dehumanized into allegory or symbol, but filled with an inexhaustible reservoir of meaning so that he becomes, as it were, a shaft of light defining the greater darkness which surrounds him.¹³⁸

Analogously, the trials and tests of realism as experienced by the characters in the context of first century Palestine made universal by the presence of Christ become universal trials and tests of faith and commitment, or, the relation of one’s ideals to one’s actions and experience. In this way the characters of the FG are at once universal and particular: universal in that each must respond to Jesus, and particular in that each responds differently. And yet universal patterns in particular responses may be discerned; Pilate responds to Jesus tragically, Peter comically, and the Jews and Thomas ironically. And, Jesus after all responds to the Father and does so obediently and heroically. The FG, then, does not simplify on the basis of good or bad, but

¹³⁶ A similar move is made, for example, by Dickens in David Copperfield. Edgar Johnson notes that the dominant theme of the novel is “the discipline of the heart.” To a large extent, the characters function as living explorations of this theme from a variety of perspectives. See David Copperfield (New York: Penguin, Signet Classic) afterword by Edgar Johnson, 871-879. Similarly, Martin Chuzzlewit explores the themes of selfishness/selflessness.


¹³⁸ ibid., 129.
simplifies according to the issue of faith response and explores those responses in all
their complexities and consequences.

Pilate, Peter, Thomas, and the Jews meet Jesus in all their particularity and
universally as various responses to Jesus as defined by the outworking of paradigms of
faith and knowledge in particular circumstances. Those who encounter Jesus in the FG
function as living explorations of types of response to Jesus in a way analogous to the
four soils (souls?) as types of responses in the Synoptic Parable of the Sower. These
characters are caught in the matrix of the upper world meeting the lower world typical
of romance, or in the terms more familiar to FG scholarship, as they attempt to
integrate their beliefs and experience, they are caught in the matrix of Johannine
dualism. As is typical in the FG, narrative has replaced parable/pericope format of the
Synoptics as the dominant form. Recall that the four literary archetypes each display a
discernible pattern of a character’s actions in relation to that character’s beliefs or ideals,
patterns marked by the four patterns of representation, reduction, negation, and
integration; romance, tragedy, irony, and comedy respectively. Jesus represents an
ideal in all its fullness; Pilate, the possibility of faith and its reduction of an ideal amidst
circumstance; the Jews fail to realize the ideal; and Peter fails to properly integrate the
ideal with his circumstance.

Described in another way, Pilate is knowledge in excess of faith, the Jews are
faith and knowledge separated from each other with all its consequent sterility, and
Peter is faith in excess of knowledge. Pilate, like all tragic heroes, exists in a world
only precariously like romance, one ready to be plunged into the chaos and
disintegration resulting from the separation of one's self from one's beliefs caused by the onrush of events. Peter, as archetypal comic figure, struggles to bring his overly ideal vision of the world in line with the kind of realism the world requires. Peter and Pilate, who represent the comic and tragic opposites and, significantly, never meet, are dynamic characters in process of development or destruction. The Jews take on the role of representatives of the world of realism, concrete and immovable rejection of the world of romance in all its fullness and in this sense are statically integrated in their own way. Some of the Jews, like Nicodemus, respond to inner turmoil and sneak across the battle lines at night to scout out the other side, but most face no internal struggle occasioned by a mixture of faith and knowledge; since they are without faith, the only struggle is external, a struggle for power and control.

IV CONCLUSION

To attempt to fully distinguish between story, character, and setting in romance is to a great extent to go against its nature. In contrast to other archetypes, romance presents a unified world, an imaginative vision of a world in which story, character, and setting comprise interrelated parts of a unified whole, a whole unified within the terms of the conception, vision, and the beliefs to which it aspires. Because beliefs and ideals are at one with experience, story drifts easily into character, character into setting, setting into story in a free flowing exchange. As such it is implicitly confident, assuming the values it projects and aspires to in the life and world of the hero. Romance as an archetype is fundamentally coherentist, presenting a world of values and
ideals as self evident, without justification, a kind of enacted ontological argument wherein the premise, or hero, once accepted, leads to a certain conclusion. Although reciprocal, in the FG the prologue formally supplies the premise and the story of Jesus its enactment. To apply an alien frame of reference to the FG or romance is to separate the hero from ideals and identity, inviting and anticipating an inevitable move toward tragedy and irony.  

While romance contains departures from its unified vision, these departures, or the lower, fallen world, provide obstacles to be overcome, test the ideal, display the ideal and concentrate the central vision by contrasting it with a kaleidoscopic display of its opposites. Archetypal journeys to or from the hero serve to highlight and focus the hero and the values represented. As reduction, negation, and integration respectively, tragedy, irony, and comedy are fundamentally explorations and expressions of various stages of disunity between a set of beliefs or ideals and the world as it is.

---

TRAGEDY AND PILATE

“For in tragedy is imbedded the eternal contradiction between man’s weakness and his courage, his stupidity and his magnificence, his frailty and his strength.”

F. L. Lucas, Tragedy, 76

I INTRODUCTION

For Western civilization, works of tragedy such as Hamlet, King Lear, and Oedipus the King endure as great works of art and function as key cultural reference points. Yet it seems a bit odd, given that tragedy contains so much pain and suffering, that tragedy continues to exert the influence it does. Whatever sociological or psychological explanations emerge, the power and influence of tragedy as an art form resides in its presentation of something true about human life. Falseness of expression in art results in a loss of power, and tragedy is virtually without accusation of being false or lacking in power.

Tragedy inevitably raises religious and theological concerns related to human suffering, the moral order, the presence or absence of God, human freedom and responsibility, and others. But tragedy never raises such issues in the abstract. Tragedy will not tolerate trafficking in unfelt abstractions. Tragic heroes receive the

---

lightening bolts of life like so many lightening rods in a storm. Yet tragedy offers no answers. Reading tragedy is an object lesson in the wages of sin misses the whole point as does seeing tragedy as mere fate in action. Literary criticism greatly enhances our understanding and appreciation of tragedy as an art form through explication of plot, character, etc., but is not inclined, if it were indeed able, to provide answers to questions raised. Tragedy seems to throw down the gauntlet to theologians.

Theologians often look to tragedy to express something they believe to be true of human existence. Human suffering is real and profound and tragedy challenges any glib theodicy to take stock of reality. Theologians and preachers, those most practical of theologians, must address a human situation they deeply understand, a situation displayed in all its power in tragedy. For redemption to be truly understood and the comic aspects of the Christian faith to be appreciated, tragedy, and what tragedy expresses, must be fully taken into account.

A pause here to define terms will prove essential to prevent confusion. Literary critics for the most part see tragedy as an art form, a type of drama that flourished in ancient Greece and Elizabethan England exemplified by works like *Hamlet* and *Oedipus the King*. Aristotle’s *Poetics* provides the basic starting point for discussions

---

3 ibid., 209ff.
of tragedy and is here employed in that capacity. While tragedy undoubtedly interests theologians on its own terms, many theologians refer to tragedy as something common to human experience, with the designation “tragedy” being used in a general sense to refer to everything from the death of a child to the holocaust. Tragedy as an art form follows a general pattern of presentation developed through certain types of plot, character, and theme whereas tragedy in common usage generally means anything crossing an undefined threshold of suffering or something that ends badly.

This chapter concerns tragedy as an art form in and of itself and as an art form in relation to conceptual and theological themes. While it is virtually impossible to read an entire Gospel as a tragedy or comedy, it is possible to view a particular character as tragic or comic. Pontius Pilate as he appears primarily in John’s Gospel will be the subject of inquiry as he relates to the role of a tragic character. Following some preliminary matters, a narrative analysis of Pilate will be offered, followed by a discussion of structural elements of tragedy in relation to Pilate, and concluding with a discussion of conceptual matters relating to tragedy. Pilate will be interpreted

---


8 This raises the issue of reading Pilate (or anyone else) as a tragic character when he appears in a work that is not expressly a tragedy. Beyond those offered in the introduction with respect to archetype, several lines of thought may be suggested here that will be subsequently taken up. Aristotle noted that tragedies may be written about historical characters, an argument that applies to the case of Pilate to a limited degree because, while Pilate is an historical figure, the FG is not a tragedy nor is it about Pilate. Aristotle asserts that plot is primary over character in tragedy, a point I argue as well. If correct, it follows that a sequence of events, such as those relating to Pilate in the Fourth Gospel, following a plot that is similar to plots of recognized tragedies, then the account of Pilate merits consideration as a tragedy. In the end, the offered examination of Pilate as a tragic character as the best defense for treating him as such in a work not regarded as a tragedy. For a discussion of the problems associated with reading an entire Gospel as tragedy, see Richard Walsh, “Tragic Dimensions in Mark,” Biblical Theology Bulletin 19 (July 1989) 94-98.
throughout with special emphasis on his archetypal relation to tragedy within the literary and theological *kosmos* of the FG.

**II PILATE IN THE GOSPEL OF JOHN**

**A) PILATE AS DYNAMIC CHARACTER**

John presents Pilate through a series of scenes marked by a change in temporal location. This inside/outside, back and forth scheme forms a dramatic, temporal reinforcement of the choice confronting Pilate; he must choose not simply between Jesus and the crowds on the basis of ethical considerations. The stakes are much higher. He must choose his earth bound way of thinking and its temporal realities, or he must choose to adhere to Jesus and accept his status as living embodiment and testimony of the truth. The choice between the Jews and Jesus is the temporal expression of a much greater question between competing interpretations and archetypal paradigms of reality itself.

Fundamental to understanding Pilate in the FG is to follow his progress as a character when confronted with the person of Jesus, which in turn reflects the reader’s understanding of Jesus as offered in the FG. Just as Nicodemus, the Samaritan woman, and others in the FG progress in their understanding of Jesus, so does Pilate. The Pilate who steps out to meet the Jews in 18:29 is not the same Pilate who departs muttering “What I have written, I have written.” Failure to take the dynamics of the narrative seriously leads to a static Pilate against which the narrative is interpreted, an approach that tends to be utilized by interpreters relying primarily on historical
reconstruction. Carson, for example, does this. Early in his discussion of the trial narrative he notes,

Both from biblical and extra-biblical sources, historians have come to know him as a morally weak and vacillating man who, like many of the same breed, tried to hide his flaws under shows of stubbornness and brutality. His rule earned him the loathing of the Jewish people, small groups of whom violently protested and were put down with savage ferocity (cf. Lk. 13:1).\(^9\)

For Carson, this Pilate functions as a hermeneutical anchor. Following Rensberger, Bond contests the basic assumption that Pilate was weak and vacillating, offering instead a strong, irony practicing Pilate who maintains control throughout, toying with the subject Jews to extract a confession of loyalty to Caesar.\(^10\) Bond's strong Pilate, like Carson's weak version of the same person, remains static and seemingly impenetrable by the text, impossible of development as a person, secure from whatever slings and arrows the outrageous Jesus throws at him.

Yet Pilate is not without his more sympathetic and insightful interpreters. Referring to his ancient counterpart, one contemporary politician observes,

The intriguing thing about Pilate is the degree to which he tried to do the good thing rather than the bad. He commands our moral attention not because he was a bad man, but because he was so nearly a good man....It is possible to view Pilate as the archetypal politician, caught on the horns of an age-old dilemma. We know he did wrong, yet his is the struggle

\(^10\) Helen K. Bond, *Pontius Pilate in History and Interpretation* (Cambridge: Cambridge University, 1998); David Rensberger, *Overcoming the World: Politics and Community in the Gospel of John* (London: SPCK, 1989); “The Politics of John: The Trial of Jesus in the Fourth Gospel,” *JBL* 103/3 (1984) 395-411. While Pilate is in an ironic relationship to Jesus, the Jews, the FG narrative, and the reader, he is most certainly not ironic himself; to read Pilate as ironic is to mistake irony for ignorance. Further, to read Pilate strictly as ironic manipulator ignores the interpretative clue and symbolic reinforcement of a struggling Pilate offered by Pilate's physical movement between Jesus and the Jews. Finally, in the narratives (cf. Jesus' conversations with Nicodemus and the Samaritan woman) and theology of the FG Jesus is in control throughout, seriously undermining attempts to place Pilate on a similar standing.
between what is right and what is expedient that has occurred throughout history. It is not always clear, even in retrospect, what is, in truth, right. Should we do what appears principled or what is politically expedient? Do you apply a utilitarian test or what is morally absolute?11

The basis on which this interpretation operates is important; Pilate must be interpreted as a dynamic rather than static character, a man trapped in an authentic struggle making a sincere attempt to set Jesus free.12

B) THE TRIAL NARRATIVE AS INTERPRETATIVE PARADIGM

On a related point, the notion of “trial” in the FG deserves a closer look. Harvey expands the idea of a trial beyond Jesus’ encounter with Pilate to include the whole book.13 Harvey establishes and explores the influence of the Jewish legal system on the FG and how this affects a reading of it. In contrast to modern practice which seeks to come to a judicial decision by way of establishing the facts in a case and offering an interpretation as best fitting the facts and therefore meriting acceptance, the Jewish system relied on witnesses wherein a particular witness pro or con was weighed in regard to his character. Thus John the Baptist is not so much a witness to the facts, but a witness in regard to his character and public standing as a prophet. Procedures of doing this could be and often were necessarily informal, such as might occur at the gates of a city or in the porticos of the temple area. The precise charges against Jesus usually had to do with breaking of the Sabbath, as is usually the case in the Synoptics,

but in John the charges are generally that of blaspheme. In a related matter, the Jewish understanding of an agent, one who acts on behalf of and with the authority of another. Sons were usually the best agents because they could be most relied upon to represent the interests of their fathers. Credentials were often necessary to validate one’s claims to be an agent of a far off landlord. Thus is the case of Jesus, sent from God as a son with the authority of the Father. The signs serve to identify him as being who he says he is. But the nature of Jesus’ case is unique; his claims to represent God cannot be verified, only accepted or rejected; he is either a blasphemer or he is not.

Harvey concludes that, whatever the verdict reached by Jesus’ contemporaries, the reader must still make up his or her mind as to the person of Jesus. Directed to either or both Jews and Greeks, the Gospel may therefore be evangelistic, producing an initial verdict, or strengthening believers in the faith they may already possess. The Christian must always be making up his or her mind. Harvey’s argument is persuasive, but it is an argument that implies much more than he explicitly states and anticipates further expansion. Harvey interprets the trial imagery, loosely defined, primarily as judicial rhetoric, that is rhetoric employed to render a verdict on a past event, when in fact the rhetoric of John is primarily deliberative, rhetoric employed to support a course of future action (i.e. believe in Jesus). Harvey himself would perhaps agree, but does not explicitly say so.

The point gathers importance as it relates to the fundamental nature of 18:28-19:16, usually referred to as “the trial narrative,” or “the trial of Jesus before Pilate” or something similar. In a sense this designation is correct because Jesus is on trial with
reference to an historical event, but to view this passage primarily as a trial is to view it in a certain way foreign to its primary, though not exclusive, emphasis. To begin with, John contains no account of the formal trial of Jesus before the Caiaphas, a fact that begins to erode the interpretative foundation of 18:28-19:16 as being strictly or primarily a trial account. Why give one without the other, especially if the gospel contains so many other disputes with the Jews? Further, although the “trial” before Pilate opens with legal questions, it soon moves on to questions of kingship, truth, and Jesus as the Son of God, hardly strict matters of judicial procedure. When Pilate sits on the judgment seat and offers his “verdict” that Jesus is “your king”, the context of the narrative has moved far beyond the need for a judicial verdict. But if the interpretative paradigm of a trial in a narrow sense is resolutely maintained and employed, Pilate will be seen as simply rendering his judicial verdict that Jesus is guilty of sedition and Pilate’s threefold affirmation of Jesus’ innocence will have fallen on deaf ears. Pilate, like Jesus, seems unable to get a fair trial.

It is at this point in 18:28-19:16 that the “trial” paradigm is weighed in the scales and found wanting. Like Pilate, the issues for the reader extend far beyond the judicial. And, like Pilate, the reader cannot close the lid on Pandora’s box and read Pilate’s actions as if the real question were still a charge of sedition. The issues have forever become issues of authority, truth, and response to Jesus as the Son of God as any reading of 18:36ff will demonstrate. Red letter editions of the Bible may prove especially useful in this instance. The “trial” functions, not primarily as a trial for its

---

own sake, but first of all as a narrative vehicle for other issues. In keeping with John’s stated theme, (20:31), the trial of Jesus before Pilate is primarily, though not exclusively, a vehicle to explore the issues of knowledge, belief, commitment, and action, issues characteristic of the tragic archetype. To view Pilate’s encounter with Jesus as exclusively or primarily as a trial is a bit like the Samaritan woman supposing that her conversation with Jesus is really about getting a drink from a well or Nicodemus wondering how to re-enter his mother’s womb. Numerous interpreters note the irony of the fact that Pilate is on trial rather than Jesus, but perhaps the real irony is to read John’s account as if Jesus really were the one on trial. To note that Pilate is on trial rather than Jesus without seriously applying this insight is to grasp the sword of irony by the blade and not the handle. Why not make the paradigm shift grounded in the prologue that the book of John as a whole and the “trial narrative” so obviously demands? Jesus is not primarily the one on trial, but Pilate, the world, and the reader. Once reconstructions of a static, historical Pilate and a narrowly defined “Jesus on trial” as a hermeneutical paradigms are, like Pilate, dethroned from their pretensions of authority, the actual narrative of 18:38-19:16 is able speak more for itself.

A literary analysis of Pilate’s encounter with Jesus will follow in which particular attention will be given to the shifting conceptual contexts and dynamics of each scene and how Jesus, Pilate, and the Jews seek to control or respond to the terms of the debate. As in his conversations with Nicodemus and the Samaritan woman, Jesus

15. The point here is not so much want to disagree with Harvey, but to expand the implications of his argument.

16. For convenience and ease of reading, the designation “trial” will be retained.
controls the conversation and puts obstacles to understanding in the path of each, obstacles, once surmounted, lead to a greater understanding of Jesus more in line with the understanding of Jesus set out in the opening of John’s gospel. Pilate will be seen to be consistently lagging behind in his understanding of Jesus and of events.

C) NARRATIVE EXEGESIS 18:15-19:22

C.1. PREFACE: THE NARRATIVE CONTEXT 18:15-27

Just as Jesus’ “trial before Pilate” functions primarily but not exclusively as a vehicle for other issues, so does Jesus’ appearance before Annas. The scene is quickly set in 18:12-13, and 18:14 recalls Caiaphas’ ignorantly knowing advice to the Jews. And, like the Pilate narrative, this section features an inside outside structure wherein physical location serves to emphasize a dramatic contrast. Peter denies Jesus under relatively innocent questioning from a slave girl. Peter descends from a fiery, sword wielding protector to join the ranks of the other shivering mortals around a fire. Inside, Jesus denies nothing and brings attention to the public nature of his ministry and the fact that others heard him, facts that could prove detrimental if his captors cared to act on his suggestions. Outside again, Peter denies Jesus twice more. Peter denials, coming from a close friend and longtime follower, provides an ironic contrast to Pilate, who is neither friend nor follower of Jesus, but champions Jesus’ cause more so than anyone else when he had no previous reason for doing so and many present reasons not to. Peter’s threefold denial contrasts with Pilate’s threefold affirmation of Jesus’ innocence. Significantly, there is no interaction between the inside and outside; Peter,
the absolute denier, remains outside, while the steadfast Jesus remains inside in symbolic reinforcement of their exclusive positions. Pilate, on the other hand, travels back and forth on his voyage of discovery and change. Rather than a strictly literary or historical approach, the following discussion will center on the changing conceptual contexts as they find expression in narrative form.\(^\text{17}\)

C.2. SCENE 1: JUDICIAL CONCERNS\(^\text{18}\) 18:28-32

In traditional tragic fashion, the protagonist’s encounter with his or her destiny is not actively sought after. It more or less happens. The Jews lead Jesus to the palace, Pilate comes out to meet them and becomes involved. The Jews want something done and must go through Pilate in order to have it accomplished, setting up a dynamic in which Pilate is not in control but reacting to a situation, as his concession to meet the Jews on their terms indicates.\(^\text{19}\) As far as the dynamics of the narrative are concerned, Pilate is in a state of innocence and ignorance, comfortably at home in the traditional interpretation of reality in terms of political power.

Pilate begins his duties by asking about the charges being leveled against Jesus. In doing so, the discussion at this point proceeds on a the basis of legal questions. To get to the heart of the matter, Pilate must investigate and in doing so becomes involved as an authority figure. Pilate begins an investigation that the reader already knows the

\(^{17}\) Historically, it may be objected that those living in the New Testament era would not have distinguished between judicial, political, and religious matters as is typical in modern times. While acknowledging their fundamental unity, it is nevertheless possible to see them as slices of the same pie, a pie best not taken in all at once, but served one piece at a time throughout the seven courses of the drama.

\(^{18}\) The term “scene” is used merely for ease of reference.

answer to; Jesus is the incarnate divine word seen by the Jews as a religious and political threat. Pilate’s ignorance is in ironic relation to the state of knowledge given initially in the prologue and assumed throughout the FG. On Pilate’s thinking, Jesus is on trial, whereas in the reality assumed in the FG, Pilate, like the world itself, is on trial.

In response to Pilate’s question, the Jews respond, “If he were not a criminal, we would not have handed him over to you.” The “bewildering logic” of this reply assumes the very thing needed to be proven, namely, that Jesus is a criminal. It also attempts to displace Pilate as judge because it implies that a verdict of guilty has been reached by the Jews and Pilate need only grant their request. The ambiguity of the charge leaves open its seriousness and the intentions behind it. Pilate does not wish to become involved and dismisses them by suggesting that they take him themselves and judge him by their own law. This suggestion may be mockery of the Jews in their subject status or it may more likely be a sincere attempt to be rid of a problem that Pilate, like Gallio, views as insignificant.

The intentions and desires of the Jews become clearer when they object to being dismissed by noting that they have no power to execute anyone. Pilate and the Roman establishment must be made to participate in order for the Jews to get what they want. This point in the trial marks the judicial/political high point for Pilate. The subject Jews are exposed as weak while Pilate as the governor in charge is the one the Jews must obey. Pilate also holds the keys of life and death. Now that these elements enter the trial, events take on an increasing seriousness.

---

20 ibid., 533.
John informs the reader in that this happened so that the words of Jesus indicating the manner of his death might be fulfilled. This analeptic comment, proleptic from the discourse point of view, brings the guiding hand of God into current events. Pilate of course is at present unaware of this additional factor. But by making note of the fulfillment of the words of Jesus, Pilate’s authority in the eyes of the reader begins its precipitous slide into oblivion.

As is typical in Greek and Shakespearean tragedy, the trial action does not proceed far before one knows that something is rotten in the state of Denmark. The dynamics of the trial drama are present in this first scene. The Jews desire a legal/political solution to what is a religious dispute, albeit one with political overtones (11:45-50; 12:18) and involve Pilate in a dispute he would rather avoid. The final outcome of the trial demonstrates that such issues do not allow easy separation, either by the Jews or Pilate. The divine order, so prominent elsewhere in John, is not absent here either. While the trial of Jesus before Pilate follows the general pattern of the encounters of Jesus and Nicodemus and the Samaritan woman, in this instance there are key differences. Nicodemus seeks Jesus out to gain a better understanding while Jesus provides the initiative in the incident by the well. In contrast, events thrust Pilate and Jesus together in a situation not amenable to gradual learning and easy conversation.

C.3. SCENE 2: FROM POLITICS TO TRUTH  18:33-38a
Pilate, with the outward trappings of power, returns inside the palace and summons Jesus. Here he makes his first contact with Jesus and asks, “Are you the king of the Jews?” (18:33) This statement appears to come from nowhere, having no immediately apparent antecedent cause. It is possible to mine the mountains of historical reconstruction for an explanation, (although 12:13 rests close at hand on the surface), but this tends to slow the forward advance and dynamics of the text. A more likely explanation is a narrative one; that the change of location signals a change of issues. In any case, regarding the origin of Pilate’s question, Jesus appears to wonder the same thing as the reader. But Jesus seizes the initiative and offers his question, “Is that your own idea, or did others talk to you about me?” (18:34) as a challenge to Pilate. Rather than seeking information, “Jesus deftly turns the trial on Pilate from the outset.”\footnote{Paul Duke, \textit{Irony in the Fourth Gospel} (Atlanta: John Knox, 1985) 129.} In other words, is Pilate a leader or a follower.

Now on the defensive, Pilate here begins his famous habit of evasion. He asks “Am I a Jew?” (18:35) in a self imposed \textit{ad hominem} circumstantial argument as if his not being a Jew were an adequate excuse for not knowing the identity of Jesus.

Equipped with knowledge superior to Pilate, the reader must implicitly beware of making the same excuse. Pilate further protests that the whole proceeding was not his idea at all. (18:35) The feebleness of Pilate’s remarks at this point renders a reading of Pilate as ironic manipulator scarcely credible.

Betraying his ignorance, Pilate asks “What is it you have done?” (18:35) The proper question in the context of the FG is not “What have you done?” as if such issues were most important, the proper issue is “Who are you?”, a question of identity.
Pilate's question here in scene 2 attempts to move the discussion back into the relatively more innocent and manageable judicial context of scene one while events and the level of discussion moves inexorably onward. Jesus picks up Pilate's question about his being king of the Jews and transfers it into a new category; a kingdom "not of this world." It is evident from the rest of the Gospel of John that what Jesus says is correct, although not in conventional Jewish messianic terms; however, this is not at present evident to Pilate. The governor responds, "You are a king then!" (18:37) as if his original question (18:33) were getting a belated answer. What Pilate likely viewed as something of an admission ("You are a king then!") on Jesus' part fails to give him any advantage. In making this statement (asking this question?), the context of his thinking moves from the judicial context of scene 1 to the political context of scene 2. But like Nicodemus and the Samaritan woman, his understanding fails to keep pace with the discussion. Jesus is not talking about kingship in terms of earthly political and military realities. The comically misguided Peter drew his sword to defend Jesus as an earthly king, but Jesus informs Pilate that his servants will not fight because "my kingdom is from another place."

Nevertheless, Jesus offers a limited approval to Pilate's discovery by noting, "You are right in saying I am a king." (18:37) For this very reason Jesus was born and came into this world. Jesus' statement that he "came into the world" is subject to two complimentary interpretations: coming into the world as being synonymous with human birth; and coming into the world as the divine word made flesh. Although perhaps invited to do otherwise, no doubt Pilate understood it to be the former. Jesus does not
allow the conversation to rest on this point and moves the discussion from the political sphere to a claim about truth itself. Jesus came “to testify to the truth” and challenges Pilate, and everyone else, if they are on the side of truth, to “listen to me.” Pilate then offers his famous question, “What is truth?” This statement is subject to a variety of interpretations, from cynicism, to caviler dismissal to sincere inquiry. Confusion on the matter is to be expected because the nature of truth is precisely the issue at stake. For Pilate truth means something like the material and evident facts in the case, whereas for Jesus truth is self-referential and self evident; he himself is the truth (John 14:6). Jesus is at once the supreme material fact in the case and “the eternal reality which is beyond and above the material phenomena of the world,” but Pilate is at present unable to comprehend him as such. Pilate’s very definition of truth is in the process of change.

The final definitive answer to Pilate’s intentions will forever elude us. What is clear is that the reader is in a position to see the irony of Pilate’s question. Jesus, the incarnate word, at one with the Father (10:30), the way, the truth, and the life (14:6), reveals the truth because he is the truth. However little he may have cared to ask much less answer his question in the past, Pilate is never closer, physically if not spiritually, to the answer than now.

C.4. SCENE 3: RETURN TO INNOCENCE 18:38b-40

On leaving Jesus Pilate asserts to the Jews, “I find no basis for a charge against him.”(18:38b) Here Pilate again fails to grasp the context of the issues he is dealing with. By announcing to the Jews his verdict that no charges can be legitimately

---

22 Barrett, John, 488.
brought against Jesus, he attempts to move the discussion back into the judicial context of scene one. His statement here recalls his initial question to the Jews in 18:29, “What charges are you bringing against this man?”

In 18:39 Pilate seems to realize that he is getting nowhere on this front and moves to continue the Jewish custom of releasing a prisoner at the time of the Passover. He offers, hesitantly, in the form of question, to release “the king of the Jews.” In designating Jesus in this manner, Pilate’s context of thinking has moved, reluctantly, from the judicial concerns of scene 1 to the political concerns of scene 2. It is difficult to determine with certainty the intentions of Pilate here. He may be acting out of arrogance, in which case the designation “king of the Jews” amounts to mockery of the Jews in their subject status. On the other hand, the release of Jesus may be a gesture of genuine good will in which Pilate feels free to designate Jesus as ‘the king of the Jews” but is convinced of Jesus’ innocence and sees no harm in doing so. Ironic readings of Pilate not withstanding, the latter is preferable because on the basis of the actual narrative here in John, Pilate shows himself to be considerably more pliable in the hands of Jesus than in the hands of the Jews. Even though announced to the Jews, the context of this statement is more properly taken as having arisen from the crucible of his conversations with Jesus than with his interactions with the Jews. Jesus’ real innocence, Pilate’s apparent judgment that Jesus is harmless, and the surprising nature of Pilate’s conversation with Jesus, may have combined to develop a personal sympathy for Jesus that he was unlikely to have for the Jews.
The unequivocal Jewish preference for Barabbas exposes in shocking fashion the naivété of Pilate’s handling of the situation. For Pilate, Jesus posed no political threat whereas the rebellious Barabbas was precisely the type of person with whom he as governor should have been concerned. Significantly, the FG does not mention Barabbas’ release. By not including this detail, the dynamic pressure of the narrative continues past the release of Barabbas, whereas in the Synoptics the choice of which prisoner to liberate forms the critical narrative divide. Pilate misjudges the Jews and the depth of their commitment to be rid of Jesus. At present, Pilate does not see beyond the pragmatic issue of disposing with Jesus while pacifying the crowds. Because Jesus outraged the Jews by claiming to be God, the reader, unlike Pilate, knows that the real issues are theological. The Jewish leaders see Jesus as a blasphemer and as political liability and take steps to get rid of him so the controversy becomes political. Here again, the reader is aware that Jesus is a new revelation from God replacing the old in many respects. The issue is once again theological. Like Oedipus, Pilate charges ahead unaware of the true state of things all the while chasing an innocence forever ruined by facts and aspects he does not know.

C.5. SCENE 4: DESPERATE MEASURES 19:1-3

Jesus has so far escaped any serious trouble at the hands of Pilate. The neutral and pragmatic offer to release Barabbas fails, so Pilate resorts to a desperate measure. At first wince, the flogging of Jesus appears to be intended as preparation for crucifixion, but later developments cast doubt on this interpretation as Pilate continues
to insist on Jesus’ innocence and attempts to release him. The text marks out that while Pilate had Jesus flogged, the soldiers perform the placing of the crown of thorns and the purple robe, as well as the insults and beatings, thereby creating some narrative distance between Pilate and these other misdeeds, however much or little he may have been responsible for them. Pilate does not attempt to win sympathy for Jesus, but to humiliate him, hoping that will be enough.

C.6. SCENE 5: REVELATION OF DIVINITY  19:4-8

Pilate appears again before the Jews and offers another attempt at conciliation. In doing so he is weaker and less in control of the Jews, just as he has been shown to not be in control of Jesus. Pilate announces to the Jews that he is bringing out Jesus and offers an interpretation for his actions, “...to let you know that I find no basis for a charge against him.” (19:4) Significantly, he prefaces his remark with ἴδε (“look, behold”) so as to set a visual stage for the arrival of Jesus who “came out”, moving from not being seen to being clearly visible. Jesus is described in appropriately visual terms, with which we are told, “Jesus came out wearing the crown of thorns and the purple robe.” (19:5) Pilate says to them, “Here is the man,” perhaps better rendered by the traditional, “Behold the man,” as if to say, “Take a look.”

In Pilate’s characteristic attempts at compromise, he intends this to do two things. The first is to use the event as evidence of his claim that he finds no basis for a charge against Jesus. His ignominious parading of Jesus before the defendant’s would be subjects is visible and living proof that he is not seriously threatened by the notion of
Jesus as king. The second intention is to display Jesus as humiliated, shamed, pathetic and beaten, offering Jesus as someone who has already suffered enough. If events proceed as Pilate hopes, the crowds will be satisfied and disperse.

Pilate's hopes are soon dashed. Verse 6 opens, "ὅτε ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἴδεν αὐτὸν," and ὁδε where connects their reaction with what happened previously while ἴδεν appears early in the sentence for emphasis. On seeing Jesus, the Jews shout for his crucifixion. As in the Barabbas incident, Pilate again seriously misjudges the situation. In exasperation perhaps combined with mockery, Pilate lashes out with his remark, "You take him and crucify him," a statement that the continuing clash with the Jews demonstrates to certainly not have been intended as serious offer. Pilate affirms for the third time (18:38, 19:4, 19:6) that he finds no basis for a charge against Jesus as if once again he would prefer Jesus to be discussed on the judicial basis of scene 1.

In 19:7 the Jews lay their final card on the table. At long last, they inform Pilate that by their law he must die because, "he claimed to be the Son of God." The judicial and political paradigms by which Pilate sought to resolve the crisis no longer apply. "Behold the man" for Pilate was synonymous with "Behold a (mere) man," and stands in ironic contrast with the revelation by the Jews that Jesus claimed to be God. Now deeply involved, he begins to learn that he has been ignorantly playing with fire, something Jesus, the Jews, and the reader have known all along. If it is true that Jesus

---

23 So Brown, who notes, "The statement is simply an expression of Pilate's exasperation." Brown, John, 877.

24 For Giblin, Pilate at this point "has become seriously afraid when confronted with a accusation of Jesus; asserting divine sonship. This does not fit with his political cast of mind. He could readily cope with ritual requirements or legal restrictions, but seems to be superstitious about matters regarding divinity." Charles Giblin, "John's Narration of the Hearing Before Pilate (John 18:28-19:16a) Biblica 67 (1986) 231.
is the Son of God, then Pilate's attempts to manipulate the situation to a satisfactory end appear in retrospect as appalling and ignorant.

C.7. SCENE 6: CONFIRMATION OF DIVINITY 19:9-11

Pilate hears this new information and it makes him more afraid. Although the trial narrative thus far shows Pilate reacting to events while he supposes himself to be in control, during this scene his illusions of control dissipate as he moves in reaction to events.

After the manner of his "What is truth?", Pilate asks Jesus "Where do you come from?" Unlike Pilate, who is denied an answer and must make inferences from shifting information in unstable circumstances, the reader knows the answer from previous information given in the FG. By refusing to answer, Jesus remains in control. Ignorantly, Pilate declares his power to free or crucify and thereby implicates himself in Jesus' death. But this assertion is increasingly in doubt on purely pragmatic grounds as events threaten to overwhelm his power to control them. Jesus undermines Pilate's pretensions to power completely by informing him, "You would have no power over me if it were not given to you from above." (19:11) This could refer to Pilate's power over Jesus in this situation, or it could refer to the divine sanction given to human government in general of which Pilate is a representative. There is no reason these two aspects must exclude the other. Pilate acts as an individual in his particular circumstances and, unavoidably, as a representative figure for human government to

25 Brown lists various reasons for this fear but neglects the one most obvious and the one most in keeping with the stated purpose of the FG (20:31): that Pilate had some sort of real encounter with Jesus on the basis of who he claimed to be. Brown, John, 877-878.
some extent. In the former, Pilate himself must act and make a decision of a legal nature, and in the latter, he must exercise the power of the institution he represents to carry out his legal decision. But in both cases, his power is derived from a source above and beyond the Roman establishment.

The context of his decision goes far beyond the Roman establishment as well. Jesus sets the present events in the context of sin and responsibility when he says, "Therefore the one who handed me over to you is guilty of a greater sin." Pilate must understand that the issues before him are no longer merely pragmatic, but real, where real responsibility and real guilt obtain. Judas initiated the betrayal of Jesus which resulted in the present situation, whereas unwanted events descended upon Pilate, yet guilt and responsibility cannot be avoided. Whereas Pilate previously functioned with information inferior to the Jews in that he did not know the real charges they brought against him, now having encountering Jesus for himself he operates with equal to superior knowledge and must attempt to act upon his knowledge in circumstances not amenable to easy solutions.

C.8. SCENE 7: CAPITULATION 19:12-16

Pilate responds in 19:12 by trying to exercise his power and set Jesus free, his first attempt to do so without resort to pragmatic maneuvering.\(^{26}\) The imperfect \(\epsilon\gamma\iota\tau\alpha\tau\) may suggest continued attempts to do so, or it may mean simply that Pilate's

\(^{26}\) It is unclear from the text if Pilate is inside or outside at this point. Thus scene 7 could begin at verse 12 or verse 13. The story would favor the former, while the discourse favors the latter. It makes little difference.

\(^{27}\) At this point even Rensberger is forced to admit this is a sincere attempt to set Jesus free. David Rensberger, *Overcoming the World*, 94; "Politics," *JBL* 103/3 (1984) 405.
attempt(s) to release Jesus were merely unsuccessful. In any case, there is a certain interpretative messiness connected with judging the sincerity and motivations of Pilate’s attempt to release Jesus not unlike the ambiguous process that occurs when reaching a required decision between two problematic alternatives.

The Jews respond by linking a potential course of action, releasing Jesus, to a real conclusion, that Pilate would demonstrate himself to be no “friend of Caesar.” By making this move, the Jews go over Pilate’s head, letting him know in no uncertain terms that he is under the authority of someone far greater than himself. But as far as Pilate, the reader, and the narrative dynamics are concerned, bringing in Caesar at this point has the effect of either 1) removing the debate from the context of the supernatural and placing it again in the context of political reality, or, 2) raising the specter of the divine claims of Caesar. Pilate showed himself to be most vulnerable to Jesus and the most courageous champion of his cause when he, however brightly or dimly, sees events as the FG presents them, as transcendent realities with Jesus superior to Caesar. By noting that “Anyone who claims to be a king opposes Caesar,” (19:12) the Jews once again place Jesus on the same terra firma as Caesar, insofar as Pilate is concerned. Or, conversely, the Jews place Caesar on the rather more elevated terra firma of Jesus. By raising the issue, the Jews insure that, for Pilate, Caesar will increase and Jesus will decrease in relation to each other. The divine Jesus commands no self-evident earthly power or pretensions to political power, while Caesar, whatever his pretensions to divinity, certainly has his divisions.
The occupant of the judgment seat in 19:13 is open to debate.\(^{28}\) If the matter is cast in terms of a historical question, then either Pilate or Jesus sat on the judgment seat, in which case the view that Pilate sat on the judgment seat is preferable on historical grounds. Strictly for grammatical reasons, taking $\varepsilon\kappa\alpha\theta\iota\sigma\iota\nu$ intransitively, in which case Pilate sits on the judgment seat, is to be preferred.\(^{29}\) But given a certain amount of grammatical ambiguity granted legitimacy by the transitive/intransitive debate itself, the FG's acknowledged use of double meanings elsewhere and, as noted earlier, the fact that Pilate is on trial rather than Jesus, a double meaning of $\varepsilon\kappa\alpha\theta\iota\sigma\iota\nu$ in the narrative is certainly allowable if not required.\(^{30}\) Thus, however much grammar and history favor Pilate sitting on the judgment seat, the wider theological and literary context of the FG as a whole allows the reader ample imaginative room to see the irony of Jesus sitting on the judgment seat and Pilate declaring judgment on himself by virtue of his rejection of Jesus. (c.f. 3:16-19)

Departing from the immediate concerns of the narrative, 19:14a notes “It was the day of Preparation of Passover Week, about the sixth hour” and functions as implicit commentary on Jesus’ fate as the lamb being made ready for the sacrifice. Whatever Pilate's intentions at this point, this signals that Jesus' fate is all but sealed. Possibly from the judge's seat, Pilate renders an opinion, “Here is your king” and in doing so indicates his movement from the divine to the political to the judicial. This hardly means that he has found Jesus guilty of anything; nothing indicated in the text

\(^{28}\) Giblin views the scene as judicial farce, relying on an insincere Pilate to do so. Giblin, "Narration," 235.
\(^{29}\) Carson, John, 607.
\(^{30}\) Similarly, Duke, Irony, 134-135.
before his presentation of Jesus as king supports this. Rather it means that Pilate may in fact believe that Jesus is king but is in the process of capitulating to the demands of the crowds. Rather than a judicial verdict, “Here is your king” can be taken as some sort of personal statement of Pilate’s own opinion uttered in a context of lost innocence and defeat.

Two options can follow this line of thought. First, Pilate’s actions following 19:14b manifest a growing weakness. Pilate’s conviction to release Jesus melts like ice in the sun. “Here is your king” and “Shall I crucify your king” are merely the final shots, albeit sincere ones, in a battle that is all but lost. Second, Pilate’s conduct from 19:14b onward can be seen as strong and defiant. Pilate presents Jesus as king as something he is inclined to accept, which must be the case if his interactions with Jesus are taken seriously at all. But he also knows that the Jews are winning the political and judicial victory. Pilate offers Jesus as king sincerely as far as he himself is concerned, but also as a taunt and insult to the Jews. Here he returns to his roots as political manipulator, offering a king to a subject people and leading them into proclaiming themselves loyal to Caesar above all. In doing so he becomes a kind of Samson who brings about the simultaneous destruction of himself and his enemies. The crucifixion of the honorable Jesus results only after both sides force each other to sacrifice their integrity.

Thus Pilate is a divided man, knowing that Jesus is innocent and that he is in some sense divine, but he as ruler faces pragmatic realities and begins to move away

---

31 Allowing for a complex of motivations perhaps too readily simplified, this interpretation offers the advantage of reconciling elements of Rensberger and Bond’s strong Pilate with the sincere but failed Pilate offered here.
from Jesus insofar as his public stance is concerned. Pilate sits on the judgment seat and returns to the judicial context of scene 1, but without the relative innocence of the early stages of the trial. Events move Pilate from innocence to experience and knowledge, yet his beliefs as manifested in actions fail to keep pace. Pilate is quintessentially a man at odds with his circumstances, whether theological or political or personal, for in the end he is at odds with himself.\textsuperscript{32}

However unclear the pathway between them may be, the Pilate of 19:12 who tries to set Jesus free becomes the Pilate who hands Jesus over to be crucified in 19:16. What is clear is that, like Nicodemus and the Samaritan woman, Pilate interacts significantly with Jesus and his understanding about Jesus increases significantly as a result. Circumstances combine with personal weakness in Pilate’s case to fatally prevent his movement from knowledge to enacted faith.

C.9. EPILOGUE 19:22

Pilate places a notice above the cross reading, “Jesus of Nazareth, the King of the Jews.” The chief priests protest to Pilate, urging a change stating that this man claimed to be king of the Jews. Although compromised and defeated, Pilate refuses, as if to make a last stand of some kind, one that likely includes a mixture of bitterness at being out maneuvered, defiance, and something of his own reflections. However

\textsuperscript{32} Giblin notes, “Pilate’s apparent political victory in the last scene of the hearing and in writing the title on the cross will have to be considered by the reader as a personal tragedy. Pilate has missed the moment of truth, especially in cutting off the witness as soon as he himself has raised the opposite question.” Giblin, “Narration,” 226. But by failing to accept Pilate’s encounter with Jesus as authentic, Giblin cannot extend the notion of tragedy to Pilate’s assessment of himself and must confine it to the perception of the reader. Assessing himself, Pilate may have preferred the victory of Pyrrhus to his own.
contracted the circle of his authority, Pilate holds his ground on this point and in doing so gets in the last word.

Typical of tragedy, Pilate confronts a world of shifting interpretation and circumstance, where, however much beliefs and interpretation may have adequately accounted for past conditions, they no longer continue to do so.

III TRAGEDY AND PILATE

Having given an exegesis of the Pilate narrative, Pilate will now be examined as an archetypal tragic figure in order to explore ways in which his character may be illuminated. Consideration of Pilate as a tragic character will occur in conjunction with a discussion of tragedy as an archetype and its relation to theological concerns.

The study of tragedy may be usefully divided into three stages. The first stage centers on tragedy's effect on the audience. The emphasis centers on common elements derived from the audience's reaction to tragedy, rather than on the work of tragedy itself. If certain reactions fail to be present in experiencing a certain work, that work does not constitute a tragedy. The second stage focuses on common elements within the play itself. Various works widely recognized as tragedies, usually the products of ancient Greece and Elizabethan England, contain reoccurring elements and themes structured in a similar way. Because these form a body of literature known as "tragedy," they can be analyzed for similar properties in archetypal fashion. Once isolated these properties can be analyzed and compared. The third stage is concerned with the deep structural patterns that provide the ground without which tragedy could
not exist. Rather than focus on the audience reaction or common elements within the works themselves, the emphasis goes deeper, exploring the conceptual foundations that make tragedy possible. The common elements of the second approach serve as vehicles to exhibit the underlying foundations of the third approach, often producing a common reaction in an audience, noted in the first approach.

As should wisely be expected, a particular writer will often include elements of more than one approach, perhaps using elements from all three. For example, Aristotle's notions of catharsis and fear and pity belong to the first, while his ideas regarding the tragic hero as being neither too good nor too bad and possessing some hamartia, or tragic flaw, belong to the second. In spite of a particular writer on tragedy perhaps never fitting neatly into one category, this three fold approach remains valid as a useful way of dealing with the material written on the subject. To abandon these or similar classifications altogether would result in a babel of confusion, comparing one writer's views with another when they may share none of the same concerns. In this way apples and oranges may be kept in their separate baskets.

A) ELEMENTS OF AUDIENCE REACTION

A.1 FEAR AND PITY

Fear and pity comprise the two most commonly recognized elements of tragedy. First isolated by Aristotle, they form essential elements of audience reaction. Aristotle sought to find the source of pleasure in tragedy and believed it

rested in a combination of these elements. The action of the tragic hero generates fear as we distance ourselves from it. Yet the corresponding sense of pity prevents us from creating too much distance through an identification with the tragic hero as a representative of the human race. Debate continues as to the precise meaning of Aristotle's terms (phobos and eleos) and presents a road best not taken here. A discussion of phobos and eleos in relation to tragedy offers more potential than a discussion of these terms in relation to Aristotle.

Questions inevitably arise regarding phobos and eleos. After all, these terms represent Aristotle's attempt to clarify the source of pleasure in tragedy. Because pleasure derived from tragedy is a subjective quality, any attempt at objective clarification will certainly be disputed. Kaufmann notes that the transitive nature of pity implies an object. Any attempt to identify the object of pity in Sophocles' Agamemnon results in confusion as Agamemnon, Clytemenstra, and Cassandra all compete for our pity. However, it remains possible that collectively and individually they merit pity. In the case of eleos Kaufmann prefers the stronger and less localized term “ruth.” For phobos he follows a similar path and prefers the more stronger but more general term “terror” over the usual “fear,” which like pity implies an object. But moving away from identification with elements within a tragic work itself implies a corresponding movement towards abstraction and experiential response. Viewing fear and pity, or ruth and terror as primarily experiential phenomenon produced by tragedy

\[^{34}\text{For a careful exegetical study see, Gerald Else, Aristotle's Poetics: The Argument (Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1957).}\]


\[^{36}\text{Ibid., 44-45.}\]
locates significance with the reader or object. Tragedy becomes something like a
dramatic thrill ride, lighter on meaning and heavier on experience.

On the other hand, tragedy can never be divorced from experience. The
experience of tragedy happens in a certain way, primarily through personal
identification. Pity is experienced through personal imaginative identification with a
character or characters as they are caught in and contribute to a situation, an
identification occurring by means of a shared humanity. Othello functions as an object
of pity through our feeling for him as a person, not through an identification with him
as a military leader. Fear obtains through an imaginative identification with a situation
as it impacts the life of the character involved. We do not fear Oedipus himself or his
particular situation as if we could fall prey to a similar mistake; rather fear results from
the mere possibility of ignorantly doing the thing one most wants to avoid. Ignorance
as expressed in Oedipus provides the common element between his circumstances and
ours. Fear, then, primarily concerns identification with circumstances, while pity
occurs through identification with a common humanity as expressed in character as
both are manifested in the twists and turns of a particular plot.

Through the character of Stephen Dedalus, James Joyce offers the following
treatment of terror and pity,

Pity is the feeling which arrests the mind in the presence of whatsoever is
grade and constant in human suffering and unites it with the human
sufferer. Terror is the feeling which arrests the mind in the presence of
whatsoever is grade and constant in human sufferings and unites it with the
secret cause.37

37 James Joyce, A Portrait of the Artist as a Young Man, ed. R. B. Kershner (Boston: Bedford Books of
St. Martin’s Press, 1993) 178. While it is possible that this statement is ironic, it will be taken here in
straightforward fashion.
Here human suffering is connected with the experience of pity through the agency of the human sufferer. In the case of tragedy this would be a character in the drama, one who becomes a representative symbol of human suffering. Human suffering is connected with the experience of terror through the agency of "the secret cause," taken here to mean the situation, setting, or plot. The events and characters combine to produce fear and pity in a work of tragedy.

Aristotle's *The Art of Rhetoric* includes a detailed analysis of fear and pity by which Pilate can be examined. For Aristotle, fear is "...a kind of pain or disturbance resulting from the imagination of impending danger, either destructive or painful." Fear depends on the proximity of the frightening. Pilate has plenty to fear in his situation: unjust power, in the form of the chief priests who threaten to report him to Caesar; insulted virtue with power, in the form of Jesus Christ the creator of the world; those who have been wronged in the form of the Jews Pilate mistreated in the past; rivals for advantages that both parties cannot simultaneously enjoy in the form of the power hungry high priests; superiors in the form of Caesar himself; fearsome things made the more fearsome by not being able to rectify the error in the form of Pilate's too late discovery of the Jews' true motive, the level of hatred of the Jewish leaders against Jesus, and the true identity of Jesus; having no assistance, seen in the fact that Pilate is alone and receives no help from anyone including his wife, Herod, or Jesus.

---

39 ibid.
40 ibid.
Pilate also generates fear through his being caught between justice and personal integrity on the one hand, and expediency and political survival on the other.

Yet these fears remain remote and harmless as long as they belong to Pilate alone. The reader experiences the fears of Pilate by means of identification with his situation as he functions as a representative figure of human beings generally. While Pilate's role as the Roman governor confronted with the decision of whether or not to execute the incarnate Son of God is unique, certain elements of his predicament transcend time and circumstance. Conflicting loyalties, public pressure, lack of timely information, unwanted and unavoidable situations, irreversible circumstances, implacable opponents, fear of superiors, concern for career, knowledge of past wrongs, isolation, lack of assistance, violating one's own conscience; these common experiences of life provide a bridge to Pilate and his situation.

For Pilate, the most fearful of his circumstances is confrontation with Jesus Christ, creator and ruler of the universe. The identity of Jesus extends the consequences of his actions beyond this life as the demands of the temporal conflict with the demands of the eternal. While argued above that Pilate was aware of Jesus being divine in some sense, the state of his knowledge is ultimately beside the point. In the FG the state of the reader's knowledge is all important. Just as the reader or playgoer, both ancient and modern, commands superior knowledge about the circumstances of Oedipus' life then he does as a character, by means of the prologue and preceding narrative the reader of the FG knows more about Jesus than Pilate.

---

The irony of the situation makes the reader unwittingly more identified with Pilate than perhaps desired. Like Pilate, the reader’s awareness of being involved over one’s head in a circumstance comes too late for escape. The reader, aware of the FG’s claims to Jesus’ divinity and further disarmed by the knowledge of Jesus’ resurrection, confronts the crucified Christ with less protection than Pilate. Loathing of Pilate in his weakness becomes self-incrimination.

But given his presentation by John, Pilate is difficult to dismiss through simple loathing for other reasons. Returning to the *Rhetoric* for his analysis of pity, Aristotle defines pity as,

...a certain pain occasioned by an apparently destructive evil or pain’s [sic] occurring to one who does not deserve it, which the pitier might expect to suffer himself or that one of his own would, and this whenever it should seem near at hand. [2.8]

The objection naturally arises that Pilate’s actions demand guilt and that he therefore deserves his suffering, which is of course true. But seeing Pilate only as one deserving of suffering requires a blindness to other positive aspects of his character and circumstances. On the other hand, a too positive reading of Pilate avoids the question of real guilt. Unlike the greedy, initiative taking traitor Judas, circumstances catch Pilate in a situation he would desperately rather avoid. Pilate escapes the charge of calculated malice that hangs about the Jews who implacably oppose Jesus in spite of his teaching and miracles. Operating with far less knowledge, Pilate makes a sincere but futile attempt to set Jesus free. Whatever knowledge Pilate gains of Jesus comes
too late to take prudent action and avoid the plunge of current events. As if to highlight the desperate plight of friendless Jesus, Peter disowns Jesus immediately prior to the Roman trial whereupon Pilate emerges as one of the few people to defend Jesus. Pilate takes sides with Jesus and champions his cause more so than anyone else and suffers most for doing so. Paradoxically, it may be the case that Pilate appears weak only because he stood up for Jesus at all. A simple approval of the Jewish request might have preserved his obscurity. Pilate’s positive actions coupled with the terror induced by identification with Pilate’s situation deters any attempt on the reader’s part to pass Pilate by on the other side of the road.

Significantly, Aristotle devotes much of his attention to a discussion of the situation of the pitier, rather than the object of pity. Aristotle writes “For it is clear that a man must think that he is such as to suffer something bad either in himself or in one of his friends.” Those too miserable do not pity, because they expect no more suffering, and the exceedingly happy or arrogant do not pity because they consider suffering impossible for them. As applied to Pilate, the miserable might consider the consequences of Pilate’s actions while the arrogant might consider Pilate and the New Testament witness of the risen Christ. Most readers fit neither of these categories. Most have suffered and consider its reoccurrence a possibility, or think about suffering as possible through reflection.

---

42 Steiner observes, “The tragic personage is broken by the forces which can neither be fully understood nor overcome by rational prudence. This again is crucial. Where the causes of disaster are temporal, where the conflict can be resolved through technical or social means, we may have serious drama, but not tragedy.” George Steiner, *The Death of Tragedy* (London: Faber and Faber, 1961) 8.

43 Aristotle, *Poetics*, ii.8, p.163-165.
Considering the people who are pitied, Aristotle observes that one pities people close to one's self, such as acquaintances or friends. But if too close, as is the case with children, terror soon overpowers pity. Pilate's position as a ruler and the circumstances he encounters provides the basis for taking him as a serious character; yet his all too human responses ensure that he remains an object of pity. Our common humanity and the universal claims of Christ inevitably link Pilate and the reader together in a common predicament. Unlike Barabbas there is no escape by fiat. With fear and pity we recognize in ourselves the potential to act in a similar fashion. However much Pilate arouses terror, the corresponding tendency to pity prevents the reader from washing the hands of him completely.

Terror and pity together form a kind of tragic equilibrium. I. A. Richards notes, "Pity, the impulse to approach, and Terror, the impulse to retreat, are brought in Tragedy to a reconciliation which they find nowhere else..." In a similar way, Joyce's Dedalus observes,

The tragic emotion, in fact, is a face looking two ways, towards terror and towards pity, both of which are phases of it. You see I use the word arrest. I mean that the tragic emotion is static. Or rather the dramatic emotion is. The feelings excited by improper art are kinetic, desire or loathing. Desire urges us to possess, to go to something; loathing urges us to abandon, to go from something. The arts which excite them, pornographical or didactic, are therefore improper arts. The esthetic emotion (I use the general term) is therefore static. The mind is arrested and raised above desire and loathing...

---

44 Leech, "Implications," 164ff. Leech finds that, "the equilibrium of tragedy consists in a balancing of Terror with Pride. p.171.
45 I. A. Richards, Principles of Literary Criticism (London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1924) 245. On the combination of fear and pity Richards observes, "Their union in an ordered single response is the catharsis by which Tragedy is recognized, whether Aristotle meant anything of this kind or not."
46 Joyce, Portrait, 178-9.
If correct, all proper art produces or demands serious thought rather than producing action. Tragedy leads to contemplation rather than action. *Othello* is more than an object lesson in serpents and doves. Of course, the mind’s being arrested may result in prudent action, but this is a secondary effect.

As argued above, the FG presents a complex portrait of Pilate. The Roman governor is not so easily dismissed as a bad example alone. As 20:31 indicates, the FG clearly possesses a rhetorical purpose, a purpose given greater depth and power through the character of Pilate, a purpose not demeaned by creating a straw man out of Pilate and setting him alight. The full dignity, gravity, and awfulness of the human situation as confronted by the person of Jesus Christ is laid bare in Pilate.

A.2 CATHARSIS

Aristotle connects terror and pity with catharsis. Else remarks concerning catharsis, “‘Catharsis’ has come, for reasons that are not entirely clear, to be one of the biggest of the ‘big’ ideas in the field of aesthetics and criticism, the Mt. Everest or Kilimanjaro that looms on all literary horizons.” In spite of Else’s concern to reconnect the catharsis debate to Aristotle, his remark shows that the debate has forever escaped. The debate about catharsis presents a mountain best not climbed here, while a gaze is certainly in order. “Catharsis” in Aristotle is usually taken to mean

---

something like ‘purification’ or ‘purification,’ often thought to be dependent on a medical use of the term. Nuttall offers a defense of this view and believes that Aristotle followed Plato in holding the emotions in low regard. On this view, tragedy does not then purge something out of the emotions, but purges out the emotions themselves. Relying primarily on a linguistic argument, Else sees Aristotle’s ‘catharsis’ in relation to fear and pity, which Else, mistakenly, takes to be structural elements of the drama itself and confuses them with the dramatic effects. Lucas doubts that catharsis needs to be taken in the sense of purification or purgation and notes that Aristotle wrote the *Poetics* in the shadow of Plato’s negative remarks on poetry and drama. If this is the case and catharsis can be shown to have a positive social effect, tragedy in Aristotle’s day becomes much safer from attack. Leaving Aristotle behind, Lucas himself thinks the phenomenon known to us by the label ‘catharsis’ relates to an intensification of feeling or re-awakening of slumbering emotions. For Lucas, catharsis purges nothing but apathy.

Parts of these views may be constructively combined. If Nuttall’s reading of Aristotle is followed, fear and pity or any other emotion remain important only through their absence. This seems implausible in theory and impossible to accomplish in reality. Yet tragedy drains the emotions in some way. It seems better to see tragedy as purging certain elements of the emotions, more particularly certain types of fear and pity. Pity easily degenerates into sentimentality, a self-centered emotional reaction.

---

52 Else, *Argument*, 230. The relevant sections in Aristotle’s *Poetics* are; ix. p. 70; xiii.2, p. 75.
disproportionate to the events involved. Likewise, fear often occurs out of proportion to the object, either too much or too little. Tragedy purges the sentimentality from pity and strips away insignificant fears by the presentation of an exceedingly fearful situation in which fear and pity are directed to objects and situations of real fear and real pity. The emotions undergo catharsis and are thereby refined through a furnace of reality rather than through esoteric contemplation. Jaspers takes this a step further and sees tragedy as a "catharsis of the soul." He writes,

It [tragedy] makes him more deeply receptive to reality, not merely as a spectator, but a man who is personally involved. It makes truth a part of us by cleansing us of all that in our everyday experience is petty, bewildering, and trivial—all that narrows us and makes us blind.  

Incorporating Lucas' idea of emotional reawakening, the ultimate effect is one of purification resulting in emotional and aesthetic vivification.

While remaining a historical figure, Pilate becomes symbolic for the impossible circumstances of the human race. Events relentlessly move him to an untenable position, one not possible to relieve by means of governmental skill. Yet Pilate's desperate weakness does not allow us to forget that he is human. Through terror and pity characteristic of tragedy, Pilate attracts and terrifies, removing the insomnia of living through the fire of reality.

**B) STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS OF TRAGEDY**

There is no set mechanical structure for tragedy. If there were, creativity in
tragedy writing would be something like filling in the blanks and turning a crank.
Indeed, *The Poetics* has been taken to be just such a literary ten commandments.55
Nevertheless, certain elements appear often and strongly enough in tragedy to merit
their being designated as elements of tragedy. If taken in the weak sense of the word,
such elements comprise what may be termed the “mechanics” of tragedy. In this sense,
the discussion has moved from the audience to an analysis of what occurs on the stage
itself, primarily composed of plot and character.

Concerned as it is with reoccurring elements in tragedy, a discussion of this
type tends to be presented in the form of a list. This is so because each element is listed
and analyzed on its own terms in isolation (so far as is practical) from any relationship
to the whole. Writers inevitably combine elements or present themes in various ways,
yet the same elements or themes frequently reappear. To distinguish at all between
particular works and to include a diversity of works in a single genre requires this to be
the case. The various elements of tragedy differ in importance, but all function as ways
of getting things done rather than what tragedy attempts to do, means as opposed to
ends. The discussion will proceed with an interaction with Aristotle’s *Poetics* and
recognized tragic works as a way to move through a discussion of tragedy in relation to
Pilate.

**B.1 PLOT**

55 Steiner, *Death*, 18. Steiner notes that neoclassic tragedy, especially as seen in Racine, relied heavily
on the authority of Aristotle’s *Poetics*. 
Most of The Poetics may be safely viewed as an analysis of elements of tragedy, rather than a metaphysical analysis of what tragedy says about human life. Aristotle believed that every tragedy consisted of six qualities: plot, character, thought, diction, spectacle, and song. Aristotle's remarks on fear, pity, catharsis, the nature of the tragic hero (neither wholly good or wholly bad) remain important in contemporary discussions of tragedy as do the additional elements of recognition, the tragic error, and action more important than character, which are all related to plot. As noted, Aristotle held plot to be the most important. He offers three reasons for the supremacy of plot over character.

But most important of all is the structure of the incidents. For Tragedy is an imitation, not of men, but of an action and of life, and life consists in action, and its end is a mode of action, not a quality.

Again, if you string together a set of speeches expressive of character, and well finished in point of diction and thought, you will not produce the essential tragic effect nearly so well as with a play which, however deficient in these respects, yet has a plot and artistically constructed incidents. Besides which, the most powerful elements of emotional interest in tragedy—peripeteia or reversal of the situation, and recognition scenes—are parts of the plot.

The Plot, then, is the first principle, and, as it were, the soul of a tragedy: Character holds the second place. A similar fact is seen in painting. The most beautiful colors, laid on confusedly, will not give as much pleasure as the chalk outline of a portrait. Thus Tragedy is the imitation of an action, and of the agents mainly with a view to the action.

---

56 Kaufmann, Tragedy, 31ff.
57 Aristotle, Poetics, vi.7, p. 62.
58 Brereton, Principles, 27.
59 Aristotle, Poetics vi.9, p. 62.
60 ibid., vi.13-14, p. 63.
61 ibid., vi.15, p. 63.
Defending Aristotle, Cornford states, "That action is primary, character secondary, seems to be true of any drama, ancient or modern, that can be called tragedy."\(^{62}\)

Although plot must be connected in some way with the personalities of the characters to be tragic, the driving force of personality serves only to move the action down a certain path.\(^{63}\) It must be observed that the Greeks emphasized plot over character more so than Shakespeare, who breathes into his characters a pervasive vitality.\(^{64}\) The looseness of Shakespeare's plots as compared to the Greek writers is a common observation, but even in Shakespeare plot is primary. Separation of character from plot transforms the character into a separate personality abstracted from the confines and purposes of the text. If one cared to follow this path and imagine Hamlet strolling about Elsinore Castle arm in arm with his wife Ophelia, this fairyland Prince of Denmark ceases to be tragic altogether.\(^{65}\) Like Hamlet, one can scarcely imagine Oedipus apart from the events of the play's plot.

Although differing in their precise formulations, both Hegel and Scheler see tragedy in terms of a clash of values or powers.\(^{66}\) Any clash must necessarily occur

---


\(^{63}\) Brereton, *Principles*, 46, notes the indissoluble connection between plot and character.


within a relationship of events brought to life by means of plot. For Hegel, the inner qualities of an individual spring to life as “the actual execution of inner intentions and aims.” Drama occurs during a clash of two such parties so that “the action has to encounter hindrances from other agents and fall into complications and oppositions where both sides struggle for success and control.” Scheler notes, “It [tragedy] appears in the realm of changing values and circumstances. Something must happen for it to appear. There must be a period of time in which something is lost or destroyed” Brereton argues that tragedy is an exploration of the question of power by means of the tragic hero as exploratory agent. Tragedy necessarily takes the form of narrative sequence of events occurring through a duration of time. Indeed, an interesting story of any kind requires conflict, and conflict requires a plot. Without conflict there is no tragedy.

The greater importance of plot over character may be seen in the fact that some works of tragedy lack a clear central character. Leech wonders “whether, or to what extent, tragedy needs a tragic hero” and notes that “the tragic burden can be shared.” For example, in Antigone, Creon rivals Antigone for our attention while Agamemnon offers Clytemenstra, Cassandra, and Agamemnon as tragic characters. In both cases these works are clearly tragic because the situation and turn of events, or plot, requires it.

---

67 Hegel, Aesthetics, p. 1161.
68 ibid. 1162.
70 Brereton, Principles, 116ff.
71 Leech, Tragedy, 43,46.
The ascendancy of plot over character, however slight in some cases, is of no small importance when interpreting Pilate. John presents Pilate in a carefully structured way as if to emphasize the importance of plot and events. The outside/inside back and forth scheme allows John to use the carefully mark the discourse development and to control character development. Some interpretation of Pilate appears similar to Bradley's treatment of Shakespeare's characters in abstracting Pilate from a structured order of events as presented in the FG. Seen from the end result of his conduct alone, especially when viewed through the safety of time, Pilate appears weak and reprehensible. The sequence of events revealed in the plot functions to both expose Pilate's weakness and vulnerability in the face of powers he neither knows or understands and to reveal his strength as he grows in knowledge and understanding of these very forces as they threaten to destroy him. Unlike the hero of romance who commands events through strength of character, events for Pilate reveal his naked self and drive him to ruin. Had Pilate been completely weak he would have folded immediately. If character were more important than plot in this case, Pilate's character qualities would drive the movement of events, and this is manifestly not the case.

Aristotle notes that a tragedy must be complete and whole, by which he means having a beginning, middle, and end. He writes, "A beginning is that which does not itself follow anything by causal necessity, but after which something naturally is or comes to be." In the case of Pilate, the reader needs to know nothing about him until events burst through his door. The story of Pilate is in this respect self contained, yet

---

72 see above and note 52.
74 ibid., 65.
the story in which Pilate finds himself begins much earlier. On the terms of John 1:1 on the story began in eternity past. Information available then and now about the Pilate of history further complicates the question of a beginning point.

Any work of literature assumes a certain body of knowledge and this is particularly true in the case of tragedy. Greek tragedies often used familiar materials, usually drawn from the Greek epics, with each author shaping the material for his own purposes. Shakespeare explicitly relied on familiar historical material for many of his plays, for example *Julius Caesar* and *Antony and Cleopatra*, and made general use in other cases, for example in *Macbeth*. However helpful, the mere fact of historical or literary precedence need not demand the reader's awareness of them. A thorough knowledge of the real Macbeth adds little to an appreciation of *Macbeth* the tragedy. As noted above, knowledge of Pilate derived from historical reconstruction can crush an appreciation of the FG's presentation of that same figure. At the same time a knowledge of the FG's claims about Jesus is essential. If the rest of the FG, or even the canon of Scripture as a whole, is taken as analogous to the background the epics of Homer supplied for Greek tragedy, the tragedy of Pilate may be said to begin with his encounter with Jesus at his trial. For, as Hegel notes, every action may have numerous presuppositions but the real action begins when the conflict actually breaks out. In terms of dramatic structure and the FG's presentation of Pilate, the story begins at the trial.

---

75 Culpepper notes "...historical analepses in John enrich the narrative by extending it back to the beginning of time and by tying it to the central events in the larger biblical story." Culpepper, *Anatomy*, 58.

76 Hegel, *Aesthetics*, 1169.
Continuing his discussion of plot, Aristotle writes “An end, on the contrary, is that which itself naturally follows some other thing, either by necessity, or as a rule, but has nothing following it. A middle is that which follows something as some other thing follows it.”\(^\text{77}\) The determination of an ending point in the story of Pilate in the FG is more problematic. The end in the drama of Pilate is best located in 19:22 where Pilate peevishly responds to the Jewish leaders’ request to change the sign with, “What I have written, I have written.” Beyond this, Pilate ceases to be the center of any dramatic action. Although dramatic on its own terms, the crucifixion is in a sense anticlimactic because, after the trial, (or after Gethsamane), nothing remains to be decided. Pilate is mentioned later in connection with the request of the Jews to remove the crucified bodies before the Sabbath and in connection with Joseph of Arimathea’s request for the body itself. In both cases he appears removed from the action and says nothing, merely the locus of perfunctory bureaucratic authority.

Although comprising only 35 verses and therefore relatively brief, John presents Pilate with an economy, structure, and precision that demands thoughtful reflection. Aristotle notes that a tragedy should be neither too brief nor too long; if too brief the events will seem to never gather their power, if too long the events will lose a sense of unity.\(^\text{78}\) But these requirements have more to do with the concentration of emotional effect rather than with the nature of tragedy itself. The account of Pilate with its definite structure and sequence of events certainly has the potential for a play. As noted, Shakespeare made frequent use of historical material. Aristotle observes “And

\(^\text{77}\) Aristotle, Poetics, vii.3, p. 65.
\(^\text{78}\) Ibid., vii.4-7, p. 66. Kaufmann in his definition of tragedy calls for tragedy to be about two to four hours long and the experience to be “highly concentrated.” Kaufmann, Tragedy, 85.
even if he [the poet] chances to take an historical subject, he is none the less a poet; for there is no reason why some events that have actually happened should not conform to the law of the probable and possible..." It does no violence to John’s Gospel if its presentation of Pilate happens to be material readily suited for tragedy.

Concerning sequence, Aristotle wrote, “I call a plot ‘episodic’ in which the episodes or acts succeed one another without probable or necessary sequence.” For all its structure, John’s account of Pilate cannot be said to be merely episodic as might be said of a sequence of pericopes characteristic of the Synoptics. Unlike romance, event produces event within a definite cause and effect relationship until the action reaches completion when Pilate capitulates.

Surely to the delight of Aristotle, the events of the trial unfold in such a way so as to effect a reversal and a recognition. For Aristotle,

Reversal of the situation is a change by which the action veers round to its opposite... Recognition is ... a change from ignorance to knowledge... The best form of recognition is coincident with a reversal of the situation, as in Oedipus.

Pilate begins as the person in charge, Caesar’s appointed agent ruling with all the authority of Rome. From him the Jews seek permission to punish one of their own in regards to a religious dispute. However well intentioned and innocent his action, Pilate’s fall from power begins as soon as he agrees to the Jew’s request to meet them on their turf. Here he makes initial contact with the sticky web of circumstance that will be his doom. As he proceeds to investigate the charges against Jesus, Pilate, like

---

79 Aristotle, Poetics, ix.9, p. 69.
80 ibid., ix.10, p. 69.
81 ibid., xi.1-2, p. 72.
Oedipus, begins an ignorant quest for the truth. As events proceed, Pilate unwittingly moves from investigating the truth of what he thinks is something else, (i.e. the charges against Jesus), to an investigation of which he himself is the subject.\textsuperscript{82} Like Pilate, Oedipus begins by searching for the source of the curse on the city only to have himself and his life’s circumstances revealed. Through his questioning of Jesus regarding Jesus’ status as a king, Pilate exposes himself as one who is not really the ruler in charge. Beuchner writes, “...and what Jesus hits Pilate over the head with is Pilate himself. Jesus just stands there in silence in a way that throws Pilate back on his own silence, the truth of himself.”\textsuperscript{83} The situation is precisely the opposite of what Pilate supposed. As events press the matter further, Pilate finds himself unable to cope, not only with the truth itself, but with questions about the truth as well. However comforting an enabling they may have been, the past paradigms by which Oedipus and Pilate lived their lives no longer function as adequate.

Worst of all, Pilate discovers too late that the man upon whom he must pass judgment is in some sense divine, entitled by birth and divine right to be “King of the Jews.” No doubt Aristotle would have delighted in this element of surprise and reversal being simultaneously bound up in the recognition of a person’s true identity. Pilate’s recognition of Jesus and the impossible nature of his own true situation occur at the same time, a time too late to extricate himself from the situation. The Roman ruler who began in a position of authority is undermined from below through the


\textsuperscript{83} Buechner, \textit{Telling the Truth}, 17.
manipulations of the subject Jews, undermined from above by the divine authority of
the one who gave him his authority from above mediated through the Roman
establishment, and undermined from within by his own ignorance and failure to manage
the situation to a satisfactory conclusion. More horrible than Oedipus, whose actions
are past and therefore irrevocable, Pilate confronts future participation in the death of
his own ‘Father,’ God himself come in the flesh. Pilate’s reversal is complete.®

In a similar fashion, the trial sequence brings about the reversal of the Jews.
The Jews, presumably, begin in a position of opposition to Pilate and Roman rule. As
heirs of the Old testament law they recognize the ascendancy of God alone and enjoy a
special relationship with him as a “kingdom of priests.” As adherents and zealous
practitioners of the law of God, they wish to avoid ceremonial impurity during the
Passover and request Pilate to meet them on their own ground. But in their desire to
prosecute their claims against Jesus, they implicate themselves. They reject Pilate’s
offer of the true king of the Jews and choose in his place the infamous Barabbas.
Having chosen poorly once, Pilate offers them a second choice, Christ or Caesar, a
choice that events have forced an unwilling Pilate to make for himself. In presenting
the Jews with their leader as he invites them to “behold your king”, Pilate is fully aware
of his actions and offers their king in part as a taunt.® The Jews respond with
enthusiastic self implication, “We have no king but Caesar,” in effect claiming to be
more loyal to Caesar than Pilate. The Patriarch Abraham initiated a long history of

®Commenting on peripeteia, or tragic reversal, Lucas notes, “the tragic effect of human effort
producing exactly the opposite result to its intentions, this irony of human blindness...” Lucas,
Tragedy, 113.
®Duke, Irony, 135.
Jewish conflicts with the secular gentile rulers; ironically his descendants proclaim loyalty to the very king who dominates them while disowning the long promised Messiah.

The position of the Jews is completely reversed but no recognition occurs. Unlike Pilate, the Jews never waver and fail to realize the irony of their declaration of loyalty to Caesar. Pilate begins in ignorance and ends in knowledge while the Jews, who should have begun in knowledge, persevere in their ignorance to the end. Pilate begins in power and ends in weakness while the Jews begin in weakness and end in power. Yet Pilate appears somewhat noble in defeat, having offered some display of integrity, justice, and appropriate fear, while the Jews achieve a victory that the author and reader know to be ashes in their hands.

Having seen how the story of Pilate fits with an Aristotelian conception of tragedy and plot, Pilate may be seen as similar to Shakespearean patterns of tragedy as well. Frye notes three pervading patterns of Shakespearean tragedy, patterns that may usefully be applied to the present discussion of plot and will serve to illustrate the complexity of Pilate’s situation. In the first pattern, tragedies of order, an authority figure is killed by a rebel figure who is then pursued by a nemesis figure. The central figure of the tragedy may vary among categories. For example, Hamlet is a nemesis while Macbeth is a rebel. Pilate fits this pattern if events are viewed as potential with Christ being the authority figure, the Jews being the rebels, and Pilate the nemesis. Like Hamlet, Pilate proves inadequate as a nemesis; the rush of events overwhelm both

and erodes their untenable neutrality. Neither finds the rush of events a convenient time to explore questions of philosophy or theology.

Frye’s second pattern, tragedies of passion, feature a conflict between the world of passion and the world of order. For example, *Antony and Cleopatra* depicts Antony’s struggle between the order of Rome and the passion of Egypt. Pilate fits this category provided one requires no romantic interest and sees him as caught between the passion of the crowds outside and the inside order controlled by Christ. Antony and Pilate are both real Roman rulers governing subject countries who physically move between two worlds, Antony between Rome and Egypt and Pilate between the Jews and Jesus. Both toil under the ever present gaze of Caesar. Each tries to have it both ways: Antony attempts to ease his situation by marrying Caesar’s sister yet continues in his desire for his “Egyptian dish”; Pilate attempts to ease his situation through the release of Barabbas and the flogging of Jesus yet persists in his desire to placate the Jews. Perhaps against their training and better judgment the Dionysian defeats the Apollian. For both men, the world of order refuses to go away. Christ, like Caesar, demands ultimate loyalty.

The third pattern in Frye’s scheme, tragedies of isolation, present the central figure as misunderstanding the inner workings of the world resulting in isolation and destruction. For example, Lear reaps the consequences of bestowing his kingdom on his treacherous daughters and Timon of Athens manifests the consequences of unguarded generosity. Timon, Lear, and Pilate display inadequate knowledge of the

---

true inner workings of the world. Consequently, the world passes them by and crushes them in the process. A profoundly theological world confronts Pilate who employs futile pragmatic means to manage events.\(^8\) Awareness of the past, planning for the future, and ad hoc management of current human events comprise critical skills for the management of one’s own life and for civilization itself. When confronted with real, transcendent realities, these skills prove useless for Pilate and by implication, for others who would employ them for similar ends.

B.2 CHARACTER

While difficult to remove entirely from a treatment of plot, character merits its own separate discussion. It was noted above that a tragedy need not have a single tragic figure. While this is true, it remains true that most tragedies have one central figure who commands most of our attention. Thus, the notion of a tragic hero remains important for our discussion. Aristotle believed that the tragic hero to be of a certain type, neither too good or too bad and discusses the suitability of four types for tragedy based on their conformity to a certain type of plot.\(^9\) First, the change in fortune of a virtuous man moving from prosperity to adversity is unsuitable because it “merely shocks us.”\(^9\) Second, a bad man passing from adversity to prosperity possesses no

\(^8\) MacRae observes, “In any case Pilate plays the role of an ironical figure. Here I do not refer primarily to his famous question, “What is truth?” (18.38), which may or may not be sarcastic. Indeed if one sees in Pilate a symbol of the power of the state it might be better understood as not sarcastic at all but as reflecting the incapacity of the state to deal with issues involving the truth as Jesus reveals it from the Father.” G. MacRae, “Theology and Irony in the Fourth Gospel” in Mark Stibbe ed. The Gospel of John as Literature: An Anthology of Twentieth-Century Perspectives, NT tools and studies 17. Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1993, 110.

\(^9\) Aristotle, Poetics, xii, p. 75-77.

\(^9\) Lucas quips “The objection to perfect characters is not that their misfortunes are unbearable; it is rather that they tend to be unbearable themselves.” Lucas, Tragedy, 30.
quality of tragedy because “it neither satisfies the moral sense nor calls forth pity or
fear.” Third, the destruction of a villain is unsuitable for tragedy because it would
“satisfy the moral sense, but it would inspire neither pity nor fear.” Judas Iscariot is an
example of the third type; his actions are terrible and inspire little or no pity. Regarding
the fourth type, Aristotle notes that “There remains, then, the character between these
two extremes—that of a man who is not eminently good and just, yet whose misfortune
is brought about not by vice or depravity, but by some error or frailty.”91 Given this
criteria, Jesus can hardly be considered tragic.

The first three character types fail as tragic heroes because they all express a
certain one dimensional view of human existence. The first two express a character
who retains all essential elements of his or her character and moves through a
progression of circumstances in which the inner qualities of the character need not
be expressed at all. For example a good and just farmer may be ruined by drought
while a corrupt and dishonest one may be blessed with abundance. The inner qualities
of the individuals remain divorced from their own involvement in their external
circumstances. In other words, character remains aloof from plot. These do not make
for suitable tragic heroes. The villain, the third type, is rightfully blamed for his or her
own conduct. The fourth type of character, neither too good nor too bad, cannot be
easily dismissed by being entirely responsible for his or her own actions nor be merely
the victim or beneficiary of circumstances entirely beyond their control. Aristotle
believed plot to be more important than character, yet in stressing that a tragic
character be neither too good nor too bad he ensures that the character will be

91 Aristotle, Poetics, xii.3. p. 76.
somehow involved with the plot through inner generation of his or her own actions.

Indeed, Aristotle offers his comments on character in the context of a discussion of plot. The tragic hero must respond to and be in some degree responsible for a situation and its development.

So far it has been argued that Pilate deserves to be called tragic on the basis of plot and that in tragedy, plot is to varying degrees more important than character. Given Aristotle’s character types, Pilate certainly does not fit the first two; he is certainly not a virtuous man moving from prosperity to adversity nor is he a bad man moving in the other direction. And it is difficult to see Pilate as a villain alone, for villains do not make sincere attempts to free an innocent man and do so contrary to their own earthly self interest. While there is plenty of room to debate the degree to which he does so, Pilate clearly fits the fourth category best. The Roman governor can neither be entirely blamed nor exonerated for his actions. The more clearly blame can be traced to its definitive source, the more fleeting is the presence of tragedy.\(^2\)

Character and plot mix in Pilate’s case as he finds himself caught in a situation and yet moves it along as his character is expressed and revealed.

The tragic hero is usually a person of high degree, one who in Aristotle’s words is “highly renowned and prosperous.”\(^3\) Given their increased responsibility, authority, and potential consequences of their actions, kings and rulers provide more appropriate subjects for tragedy than persons of lower status in society. Frye observes that in all tragedies there is the presence of a heroic quality in the central figure or figures, a great

\(^2\) Scheler notes that to the extent a clear and definite answer exists to the question “Who is guilty?”, corresponds to the sense of the tragic being absent. Scheler, “Tragic,” 38.

\(^3\) Aristotle, Poetics, xii.3. p. 76.
capacity for doing and action. This heroic action “is above the normal limits of experience” and “suggests the infinite imprisoned in the finite.”

Elsewhere Frye notes,

If superior in degree to other men but not to his natural environment, the hero is a leader. He has authority, passions, and powers of expression far greater than ours, but what he does is subject both to social criticism and to the order of nature. This is the hero of the high mimetic mode, of most epic and tragedy, and is primarily the kind of hero that Aristotle had in mind.

Frye’s assessment reflects widely held assumptions about tragedy. And herein lies the greatest obstacle to Pilate’s status as a tragic character. Pilate may be seen to lack adequate power of action, lack power of authority, and lack adequate powers of expression. For someone in a position of authority and at least potentially above and beyond the ordinary, Pilate seems all too human, a man unsure of his authority, unsure of his real power, unsure of himself.

This assessment of Pilate is at least partly due to the nature of the plot in which he is featured. The action has already begun (as seen in John and the Synoptics and the fact that the Jews bring Jesus to Pilate) and Pilate is swept away by events. However firmly or weakly he holds them, Pilate’s pretensions to power and authority stand ready to be ripped from his hands. Pilate appears weak only when no consideration is given to how others might have fared when facing similar challenges. Pilate finds himself in medias res as do Oedipus and Hamlet. In consequence, events destroy Pilate and expose his weakness without the mediating effect of character.

---

94 Frye, Fools, 5.
95 Frye, Anatomy, 33-34.
revelation expressed in antecedent action. Pilate appears without benefit of sympathetic glimpses into his personal life wherein the reader might have witnessed discussions with his wife regarding her propensity to dream or his personal anguish over the intractability of Herod.

Additionally, ambiguities of character manifest in Pilate are precisely the stuff that tragedy is made of. The mixed nature of the tragic hero allows for the tragic expression of the ambiguities, paradoxes, and contraries inherent to human life. Characters with no such ambiguities are either nearly or completely good or bad and therefore inappropriate for tragedy. In this respect Pilate is no different than the hesitating Hamlet or the faltering Macbeth. Pilate confronts Jesus and his accusers with inadequate knowledge, a growing knowledge to be sure, but his knowledge grows at a rate behind the growing demands of his circumstances. Pilate might well have profited from Nietzsche’s dictum that “Understanding kills action, action depends on a veil of illusion.” Instead he fails to act in the meantime in which ignorance might have been a blessing. Like Hamlet and Oedipus, Pilate is caught in the twilight zone of knowing both too much and too little and is all the more human and all the more tragic for being so.

B.3 HAMARTIA

Aristotle mentions the much discussed notion of the tragic flaw or hamartia in a context primarily treating plot but having a significant discussion of character as

---

96 Nietzsche, Birth of Tragedy, 39
In this respect the discussion of *hamartia* offers another appropriate transitional link between plot and character. *Hamartia* is generally taken to be some sort of moral failing or an error with no explicitly moral connotations. The fact that the New Testament uses *hamartia* to designate “sin” has complicated discussions of Aristotle as many have sought to flood the Greeks with Christianity via that lexical porthole. Else notes that most moderns prefer the interpretation of *hamartia* as error when used in a Greek context. He begins by noting that Aristotle’s mention of *hamartia* occurs in a discussion of plot, although, as mentioned above, character is significant here as well. Arguing on the basis of Aristotle’s *Ethics*, Else believes that Aristotle had in mind actions resulting from ignorance, in particular actions stemming from ignorance of details rather than ignorance of general principles. For Else, then, *hamartia* is a detail of plot.

Like the debate about *catharsis*, debate about *hamartia* rages in flagrant disproportion to what Aristotle actually wrote about it. It is perhaps best to take an approach like Kaufmann’s. He writes,

> And his (Aristotle’s) main point probably was that the suffering that evokes our *phobos* and *eleos* should neither be patently deserved nor totally unconnected with anything that those stricken have done; the great tragic figures are active men and women who perform some memorable deeds that bring disaster down upon them; they are not passive and, in that sense, innocent bystanders. But they are more good than bad and hence stir our sympathies.

---

99 Aristotle, *Poetics*, xiii.4-6, p. 76.
100 Else, *Argument*, 383. For example, Othello is ignorant of Iago’s treachery and his wife’s innocence and not ignorant of general principles, laws, or social customs prohibiting the killing of one’s wife.
Likewise, Lucas sees *hamartia* as more of a "false step taken in blindness."\textsuperscript{102} Taking *hamartia* in this manner allows it to be thought of as something within or done by the character of the tragic hero that allows the plot to proceed as it does. Without something being amiss somewhere in the character or the history of his or her actions, nothing remains to be tested or exposed, and the doom of the hero is made to appear arbitrary and capricious. Ultimately, tragedy does not depend on the moral status of the tragic hero.\textsuperscript{103}

Pilate's *hamartia* may be seen as his ignorance of the true identity of Jesus rather than ignorance of general principles or blatant immoral behavior. The Jews strategically allow Pilate to continue in ignorance of Jesus' claims of Divinity. Only when well into the encounter do they announce "We have a law, and according to that law he must die, because he claimed to be the Son of God." (19:7) The fact that Pilate proceeds in ignorance is not to say that he escapes blame; Pilate is ultimately responsible for his own actions. Rather, as the trial of Jesus as presented in the FG begins, Pilate enters this situation in a state of relative ignorance and innocence. As a gentile ruler, Pilate may be excused for not being thoroughly familiar with what he considers a Jewish religious dispute. Speculations about what Pilate may or may not have known about Jesus are inconclusive and foreign to the purposes of the FG.

But as Pilate grows in knowledge, the more he responsible becomes. As noted, the basis of his involvement moves from initial questions of a political/judicial nature (ruling on simple guilt or innocence; 18:29-32) to questions regarding authority (the

\textsuperscript{102} Lucas, *Tragedy*, 130.
\textsuperscript{103} Frye, *Anatomy*, 38.
fact and nature of Jesus’ kingship and authority; 18:33-37a) to philosophical (questions about truth with Jesus claiming to be on the side of Truth 18:37b) to metaphysical and theological (the source of power and the true divine nature of Jesus Christ; 19:7-11). While the Jews control the demands on the outside, Jesus controls the course of the conversation inside, all the while moving Pilate along in his understanding. As Pilate’s knowledge and involvement increases, likewise his level of desperation rises as he attempts to be rid of Jesus and avoid a real choice. He begins by rejecting responsibility for Jesus altogether (“Take him yourselves and judge him by your own law.” 18:31); then in a serious misreading of the situation he offers the Jews the choice of Jesus or Barabbas (18:38-40); and finally in pathetic desperation he has Jesus flogged and permits his mocking (19:1-5). Pilate’s growth in knowledge moves him from the Greek sense of *hamartia* as ignorance or “false step taken in blindness” to more of a Christian sense of *hamartia* as sin or moral choice.

### B.4 TRAGEDY IN GREEK AND CHRISTIAN PERSPECTIVE

In his treatment of Greek tragedy in general, Hesla seeks to compare and contrast some of the important elements of Greek and Christian tragedy. He notes that in Greek tragedy, the hero inhabits a *moira*, a sphere of influence governed by a set of laws, or *dike*. The frequently reckless pursuit of *arete*, or excellence, often leads one to commit *hamartia*, an error. The plot commences when a clash occurs between various *moirai*. Hesla notes, “Being finite and ignorant, mortals cannot know in

---

advance the limits that *dike* has set to their *morai*. One can probe the limits of life and answer its questions only through experience and thereby gain wisdom. One's ignorance can be exposed through action and result in shame. Hesla notes that in contrast, the Christian tragedy presents the hero with a fairly well defined choice between good and evil, a circumstance seen most clearly in Macbeth's decision to murder Duncan. Pilate spans Hesla's conceptions of both Greek and Christian tragedy. The Roman governor's *hamartia* rests on his unavoidable and ignorant foray into a world where God becomes all too real. And having once entered this world he confronts moral and metaphysical choices that cannot be divorced from the world he left behind.

Developing a thesis similar to Hesla's, W. H. Auden offers his own comparison and contrast of Greek and Christian tragedy. For Auden, Greek tragedy is the tragedy of necessity while Christian tragedy is the tragedy of possibility. Thus, *Oedipus the King* stirs the response “What a pity it had to be this way,” while *Macbeth* prompts one to ask “What a pity it was this way when it might have been otherwise.” In the case of Pilate, the Greek sense that “it had to be this way” stems from the fact that Pilate held the reins of human power while the Jews brought Christ his way to be crucified. And because his decision lies in the future in the terms of the story itself, Pilate's ultimate betrayal of Jesus provokes Auden's Christian response to

---

105 ibid.
107 ibid., 234.
tragedy by making one ponder that “it might have been otherwise.” Given Auden’s analysis, Pilate is tragic in both a Greek and Christian sense.

Auden also compares and contrasts the differing Greek and Christian conceptions of *hubris* or the tragic flaw. He writes,

The hubris which is the flaw in the Greek hero’s character is the illusion of a man who knows himself strong and believes that nothing can shake that strength, while the corresponding Christian sin of Pride is the illusion of a man who knows himself weak but believes he can by his own efforts transcend that weakness and become strong.  

Thus, Oedipus’ secure position as ruler of the city and husband to Jocasta is destroyed while Macbeth’s attempt at worldly advancement betray the weakness inherent in his character. Pilate is somewhere in the middle. As the Roman ruler he begins in a position of strength, but given his later display of weakness, the reader is free to wonder how secure Pilate believed himself to be. Yet he does begin as the man in charge even though events expose the depth of his weakness. Rather than trying to transcend his weakness and become strong, Pilate wishes to maintain the illusion of strength to the Jews, Romans, and Jesus— and to himself.

Although doubtless more could be said in regard to Pilate and elements of tragedy, the preceding discussion is sufficient to show that Pilate may be rightfully called an archetypal tragic character. The very nature of his situation, moving from ignorance to having to condemn or release the incarnate God, certainly commands attention as offering great potential for tragedy. Beyond the general facts of the situation, Pilate possesses a tragic flaw and undergoes a tragic recognition. Tragedy has

\[\text{\textsuperscript{108} ibid.}\]
a certain effect on the audience and achieves this through certain common elements of structure. The essential elements of tragedy are present in the FG’s portrayal of Pilate.

C CONCEPTUAL ELEMENTS OF TRAGEDY

C.1. APPROACH AND METHODOLOGY

In discussing tragedy so far, elements of audience reaction have been considered followed by a discussion of the elements of tragic drama itself. In other words, we have moved from the audience to the drama as it might appear on stage. This section moves to an examination of the conceptual stage on which the drama is performed. If tragedy is to be more than simply an art form that follows a general format to achieve a certain effect, it must express something true about the world. And to do so in a way that is recognizably “tragic,” it must treat common tragic themes. A discussion of the conceptual elements in tragedy attempts to make explicit through criticism and analysis what is implicit in most works of tragedy. Such a discussion is necessarily more interpretive and more widely disputed. It need not imply metaphysical and theological concerns or transcendence, but need not avoid them either.

In proceeding in a conceptual study tragedy something needs to be said about procedure. In her book, *Elements of Tragedy*, Krook offers some helpful preliminary remarks on method. She notes the common criticism of any attempt to find the common elements of tragedy that finds any such attempt to result in clumsy, trivial, or

---


false generalizations. Circularity of knowledge, that recurring problem, raises another obstacle, concerning which Krook observes: "For we cannot come to our search for the universal elements of tragedy without some notion, however imperfectly grasped and analyzed, of what tragedy is; and we cannot make our selection except in the light of this notion." Studies of natural science suffer the same limitation. In response Krook notes the following,

[a distinction] derived from Plato, between "knowledge" ("science") and "opinion," where opinion is a body of intuitive, unanalyzed perception and judgment which is transformed into knowledge when and only when it has been fully articulated, analyzed and systematized...It [Krook's study] attempts to articulate more fully, precisely, and systematically the elements we in practice (as opinion) recognize as the universal elements of tragedy; and insofar as it succeeds in doing so, it renders explicit the implicit criteria we employ in judging this or that work to be tragic...

Thus any study beyond a mere empirical list must at some point make a connection between two or more relevant facts in such a way as to be illuminating beyond the brute facts themselves. At the same time the integrity of each discrete unit must be maintained.

A purely phenomenological approach to tragedy is inadequate in the sense of being incomplete. This approach typically sees tragedy as simply the display of human suffering or discussion of the mechanics of drama. Kaufmann may be taken as broadly representative of this kind of approach. Writing in Tragedy and Philosophy, Kaufmann stresses an empirical approach, one that analyzes many individual works of tragedy and

---

112 Krook, Elements, 5.
113 ibid. 6.
arrives at limited conclusions verified by their applicability. Kaufmann's definition of
tragedy is as follows,

Tragedy is (1) a form of literature that (2) presents a symbolic action as
performed by actors and (3) moves into center immense human suffering,
(4) in such a way that it brings to our minds our own forgotten and
repressed sorrows as well as those of our kin and humanity, (5) releasing
us with some sense (a) that suffering is universal—not a mere accident in our
experience, (b) that courage and endurance in suffering or nobility in
despair are admirable—not ridiculous—and usually also (c) that fates worse
than our own can be experienced as exhilarating. (6) In length,
performances range from a little under two hours to about four, and the
experience is highly concentrated.\(^{114}\)

An empirical description coupled with existential concerns form the substance of
Kaufmann's definition. Reflecting an ongoing concern for emotional aspects of life,
elsewhere he writes of his suspicion of theology as a whole and philosophy removed
from personal experience.\(^{115}\) Consequently, Kaufmann offers no ideas derived from
tragedies that may, in his opinion, divorce tragedy from experience. At the same time
he offers no theory that may illuminate the tragedies themselves. While Kaufmann
carefully supports his definition, it is in the end mere description, perhaps accurate, but
unhelpful in advancing our understanding of tragedy as a genre in any significant
degree. Kaufmann's definition lacks the penetration and illumination characteristic of a
good theory and displays the weakness of too great a stress on experience. Elsewhere
he offers, for example, a cogent interpretation of *Oedipus the King* that moves beyond

---

\(^{114}\) Kaufmann, *Tragedy*, 85.

\(^{115}\) Walter Kaufmann *Critique of Religion and Philosophy* London: Faber and Faber 1958; *Religions in Four Dimensions: Existential, Aesthetic, Historical, Comparative* (New York: Reader's Digest Press). Commenting on his *Critique* he writes that he argued that "the importance of beliefs was widely overestimated, that theology was one of the worst aspects of religion, and that it was wrong to dissociate religion from experience..." *Four Dimensions*, 14.
the empirical and phenomenological while his definition itself remains restricted and limited. 116

Nevertheless, the existential aspects and audience response aspects of tragedy remain important, especially regarding evil and suffering. But at what stage do they become important and why are they significant? A critical divide in the study of tragedy may be expressed by the following two questions: does tragedy merely express the brute facts of evil, suffering, human nature, and the human condition and thereby make us more existentially aware of them? Or, does tragedy express something about the way things are in and of themselves that cause events to result in evil and suffering? 117 More comprehensive, the second approach sees the concern for audience response as derivative of rather than divorced from the conceptual and will be the approach taken here.

The attempt to analyze tragedy in a conceptual way meets with other problems and objections. Writing from a Marxist point of view, Williams opposes any attempt to abstract tragedy from the particular circumstances that produced it. He writes,

Tragedy is then not a single and kind of fact, but a series of experiences and conventions and institutions. It is not a case of interpreting this series by reference to a permanent and unchanging human nature. Rather, the varieties of tragic experience are to be interpreted by reference to the changing conventions and institutions. The universalist character of most tragic theory is then at the opposite pole from our necessary interest. 118

116 Kaufmann, Tragedy, 102-133.
117 Reflecting this division in approaches to tragedy, Palmer separates critical approaches to tragedy into three groups; those emphasizing audience response, those emphasizing some sort of dualistic chasm, and those that see tragedy as the flowering of the human spirit. See, Tragedy and Tragic Theory: An Analytical Guide, (Westport, Connecticut: Greenwood Press, 1992).
118 Williams, Modern Tragedy, 45-46.
For Williams, tragedy is not something that can be abstracted from a particular time, place, and intellectual milieu. To isolate tragedy in this fashion and say “this is tragedy” reflects the ideological stance of the person and age making that claim. Rather, tragedy and its interpretation displays a developing, organic quality bound up in its times, a reflection of a changing cultural and intellectual climate. By connecting tragedy with its context, Williams sees tragedy itself and the fluctuations of the interpretation of tragedy as reflecting ideological and social concerns of the age that produced them. Any attempt to isolate “the tragic” reduces tragedy to an assertion of ideology reflecting concerns of that particular age.\(^{119}\)

In response, it must be noted that Williams’ own assertions are inevitably ideological and reflect his own Marxist concerns, thereby falling prey to his own criticism. If Williams’ thinking is taken to its logical conclusion, any assertion at all about tragedy falls under a cloud of suspicion. In order to discuss tragedy the category of “tragedy” must be recognizable, an ideological claim in itself. This is further complicated by asserting that some particular element occurs in a significant way in two or more tragedies.\(^{120}\) Raising the red flag of ideology in treatments of tragedy unproductively moves the discussion from the explanatory powers of particular assertions to an analysis of the writer and the concerns of a particular age he or she may reflect.

\(^{119}\) Ibid. 62.

\(^{120}\) Williams makes this claim when he states, “The ages of comparatively stable belief, and of comparatively close correspondence between beliefs and actual experience, do not seem to produce tragedy of any intensity, though of course they enact the ordinary separations and tensions and the socially sanctioned ways of resolving these. The intensification of this common procedure, and the possibility of its permanent interest, seem to depend more on an extreme tension between belief and experience than on an extreme correspondence. Important tragedy seems to occur, neither in periods of real stability, nor in periods of open and decisive conflict.” Modern Tragedy, 54.
Nevertheless, Williams’ emphasis on the historically particular nature of tragedy is well taken, but cannot be absolutized in a way that his own writing contradicts. The value of any theory of tragedy cannot be reduced to an expression of particular concerns and instead rests on its own comprehensiveness, internal coherence, and explanatory powers, as does any theory in any other discipline. A Christian point of view, as is adopted in this study, offers the potential to demonstrate these three elements because, on the terms of the beginning of Genesis and the end of Revelation, Christianity claims a comprehensive framework for interpreting all of history. One need not adhere to Christianity to accept that Christianity, given its own terms, offers a potential framework for a treatment of tragedy in the same way that one need not be a Marxist to appreciate Williams’ otherwise compelling analysis.

C.2 THE TRAGIC CLASH

A few basic conceptions of tragedy may be helpfully analyzed. Harold Watts seeks to explore the perennial question of the relationship between religion and drama, although our particular concern here is tragedy. Watts argues for two kinds of religious myths or narratives, the cyclical and the linear. Humans find comfort in the cycles of life such as planting and harvest. But a more profound insight is that, however comforting the natural patterns of life, individual humans are linear beings. Each will be born and each will die. Watts identifies these contradictory patterns as the

---

comic and the tragic, the cyclical and linear respectively.\textsuperscript{122} In comedy, however much one is at odds with life in a particular situation, the comforting cycles of life will reassert themselves and one will be reconciled to one’s circumstances. In contrast, tragedy is profoundly linear. Each individual will die regardless of the existence and reassurance of cyclical patterns. A linear world view implies real choices, unalterable choices that must be made and lived by. These real choices offer no hope of asserting imaginative control over the world as is possible in comedy.

Aside from his dubious assumptions about the history and development on religions on which his analysis is based,\textsuperscript{123} Watts offers an analysis of tragedy and comedy and their relationship to religion that is at once simple and profound. The linear nature of tragedy may be seen in the inevitability of destruction as events plunge towards a conclusion. Although tragedies may perhaps end happily, something is lost or destroyed in the crush of events and the linear aspect dominates the circular. For Pilate the rush of events moves him unwillingly downstream. Pilate’s assertion of Jesus’ innocence, presentation of the choice of Barabbas, and his efforts to set Jesus

\textsuperscript{122} Frye notes a similar pattern in his distinction between the pattern of increasing isolation from society in tragedy and the pattern of integration into society in comedy. Frye, \textit{Anatomy}, p. 33.

\textsuperscript{123} Watts offers no supporting argumentation. However, Gilbert Murray and others of the Cambridge School of Classical Anthropologists traced the origins various elements of tragedy to Greek rituals. See Gilbert Murray, “An Excursus on the Ritual Forms Preserved in Greek Tragedy,” in Jane Harrison, \textit{Themis}, (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1912) 341-363. Francis Ferguson, who generally accepts this account of tragedy’s origin, notes that, “Professor Murray is interested in the ritual forms in abstraction from all content, Sophocles saw also the spiritual content of the old forms: understood them at a level deeper than the literal, as imitations of an action still “true” to life in his sophisticated age.” See Ferguson, \textit{The Idea of a Theater} (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1949) 33. Williams criticizes attempts to find the historical origins of tragedy as derived from religion. He writes, “The detailed and complicated argument about the origin of tragedy (made more complicated though not less detailed by the extreme scarcity of evidence) is inevitably specialised.” \textit{Modern Tragedy}, 42-43. Critical of Murray, Gerald Else offers a critical interaction and review of representative views of the origin of tragedy in \textit{The Origin and Early Form of Greek Tragedy} (Cambridge Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1965).
free, all represent his attempts to reassert the given cycles of life as he knows them (political realities) through ad hoc manipulation of events. But by the time Pilate symbolically and literally steps out of his palace to meet the Jews, events have already started toward their inevitable conclusion. The Jews have rejected the teaching, claims, and miracles of Jesus while Jesus himself, as the "sent one" come from God and having overcome whatever human struggles with his mission in the Garden of Gethsamane, remains ultimately in control of the situation and informs Pilate of this very fact.

(19:11) Jesus seems somehow at home in the governor's palace while Pilate seems a stranger. Pilate faces a situation of the profoundest kind, the incarnate Son of God offering himself as a sacrifice on behalf of sinful humanity, that will not respond to political solutions. Events are irrevocably linear and out of his, the Jews', and Caesar's understanding and control.

The linear nature of tragedy leads to an inevitable dramatic clash. Usually tragedy leads to the ultimate linear clash; the clash between life and death, which for Pilate means a clash between spiritual life and death. All significant drama of any kind, both comedy and tragedy, must include some sort of plot complication as failure to do so leads to reporting a static state of affairs or a mere chronicle of discrete events. The fact of plot complication and dramatic clash are undisputed; precisely what the clash of tragedy is made up of remains to be seen.

A few examples are in order. In Pilate's case, there is a clash between knowledge and ignorance and between the kingdom of God and the kingdom of man. The clash between ignorance and knowledge presents itself in Oedipus the King.
Hamlet displays the struggle between action and inaction delicately nuanced with questions of being or non-being and knowledge and ignorance. Antigone shows the ongoing struggle between private and public duties as represented by Antigone's love of her brother Polynices and Creon's obligation to treat him as a rebel. Macbeth wrestles with loyalty and duty, qualities he had previously excelled at, and personal ambition. Othello wavers between love and jealousy. The Bacche contrasts the Apollonian formalism and restraint with Dionysian pleasure and experience. Timon of Athens moves between open generosity and vengeful cynicism.

In each case the opposing sides in the dramatic clash, whether represented by a clash between individuals or within individuals, may be legitimately justified in some way. However imperfectly manifested, each side carries with it some moral capital. Of these examples, perhaps Macbeth is most clearly in the wrong, but Shakespeare balances his murder of Duncan with other factors; demonstrated loyalty, the unsolicited prophecies of the wicked sisters, the urging of his resolute wife, the genuine desirability of being king, a certain weakness of character, all combine with easy opportunity to lend Macbeth a certain understandability and sympathy in his actions within the terms of the drama itself. Iago, Judas Iscariot, Polynices, and Hamlet's uncle Claudius, each causally significant in the initiation or development of the dramatic action, receive little or no such balance in their characters to morally justify their actions. Timon and Lear simply act foolishly but do so with noble intentions. Agamemnon chronicles a series of ills each being justified in some measure by some preceding action.

---

Sutherland notes that in tragedy, the individual often "becomes the battleground of two competing patterns of thought, understanding, and action." Stewart Sutherland, "Christianity and Tragedy," Journal of Literature and Theology (July 1990) 162.
Hegel broke new ground in the study of tragedy by positing a dramatic clash and explaining it in terms of a clash between two equally justified powers, a theory that largely follows his familiar basic scheme of thesis, antithesis, synthesis. For Hegel, drama has "developed into the most perfect totality of content and form...the highest stage of poetry and art generally."\(^{125}\) This is because speech is the only "element worthy of the expression of spirit."\(^{126}\) Drama itself works in a particular way. Unlike epic with its all encompassing qualities and leisurely presentation of external circumstances, drama concentrates the activities of the individual in specific and limited circumstances.\(^{127}\) And rather than a purely "lyrical emotional situation" in which deeds are described without participation in them, drama displays the individual and his inner life through concrete activity.\(^{128}\) Hegel observes, "For a drama does not fall apart into a lyrical inner life and an external sphere as its opposite, but displays an inner life and its realization."\(^{129}\) Drama combines the action of the epic with the interior reflection of the lyric and forms a middle ground between them.

Hegel thus inseparably links plot and character as the inner life of the character is revealed in action. He writes, "...in drama a specific attitude of mind passes over into an impulse, next into its willed actualization, and then into an action."\(^{130}\) The action proceeds from the character and has "its repercussion on his character and circumstances...and now his whole being must take responsibility for that the issue is in

\(^{125}\) Hegel, *Aesthetics*, 1158.
\(^{126}\) ibid.
\(^{127}\) ibid., 1158.
\(^{129}\) ibid., 1158.
\(^{130}\) ibid., 1161.
the external world.”\textsuperscript{113} The character is responsible for and responds to his own works, or, “himself picks the fruit of his own deeds.”\textsuperscript{112}

Hegel’s discussion of character and its relationship to action is preliminary to a discussion of the nature of action within the drama as a whole. The action and aims of the individual become drama only when “it calls up in other individuals different and opposed aims and passions.”\textsuperscript{133} The inner qualities and motivations of both characters or sides displayed in action involve dramatic collisions “so that the action has to encounter hindrances from other agents and fall into complications and oppositions where both sides struggle for success and control.”\textsuperscript{134} This explains drama as it relates to human motivations.

Drama also contains a metaphysical element. Hegel connects the dramatic opposition with the display of external powers, or what is “essentially moral” or “divine or true.” The Divine does not appear as removed and tranquil, but in community where collisions and drama take place.\textsuperscript{135} Thus the Divine is made immanent in the action. As the unity of the Divine forces its way into real situations it is particularized and expressed through individual agents, these command “reciprocal independence” and oppose each other in a justifiable way. If taken by itself, each side can justify itself. Hegel notes, “...each can establish the true and positive content of its own aim and character only by denying and infringing the equally justified power of the other.”\textsuperscript{136}

\textsuperscript{113} ibid.
\textsuperscript{112} ibid.
\textsuperscript{133} ibid., 1162.
\textsuperscript{134} ibid.
\textsuperscript{135} ibid., 1162, 1196.
\textsuperscript{136} ibid., 1196.
Because each side infringes on the other, each is involved with guilt and blame and must answer for it.\textsuperscript{137}

Whatever the concrete collisions, for Hegel the drama ultimately stems from the Divine. In consequence no ultimate collision is possible and everything must be resolved. He writes, “Therefore the drama, no matter in what way, must display to us the vital working of a necessity which, itself self-reposing, resolves every conflict and contradiction.”\textsuperscript{138} The onesidedness of each opposing side ultimately dissolves into a unity in the tragic conclusion as each side adapts to working together harmoniously. For Hegel, the appearance of Fortinbras at the end of \textit{Hamlet} hints at such a resolution.

Hegel’s view entails that the divine be present in a presumably pure state in individual characters who each manifest the divine within temporal circumstances. This results in a dramatic clash in which each side opposes the other. Thus, a clash of opposites derives from problems associated with temporality itself, not from any particular state of affairs within the temporal world. Presumably, any intrusion of the divine into the world is doomed to produce opposing forces. Hegel does not take into account the mixed nature of human existence, both in the world itself and within individuals, manifested in drama as setting, and character set in motion by plot. For Hegel, the divine retains its ultimate unity even though expressed in opposing actions as if a housed divided against itself stands firm. On this view, Pilate faces no conflict extending beyond his temporal circumstances, the various oppositions being ultimately reconciled in the divine.

\textsuperscript{137} ibid., 1196, 1198.
\textsuperscript{138} ibid., 1197.
The metaphysical nature of Hegel’s theory renders it untestable by an appeal to examples and it can be critiqued only on the basis of a theological or conceptual analysis. The mixed nature of human existence (and human nature) is better understood as derived from conditions inherent within the world (and human beings themselves) rather than the presence of the divine at odds with itself within a temporal context. In Christian terms, Hegel is wrong on two major points. First, the presence of the divine (setting aside for the moment the obvious differences between Hegel and Christianity on this issue) in the world does not inevitably lead to conflict. Temporality by itself is not the issue. Genesis presents God and human beings in harmonious relationship within the temporal world. The problem extends beyond temporality to include the will, something not inevitably a problem as seen in the harmonious relationships of the Trinitarian God. Second, Hegel fails to acknowledge or take into account the effects of the fall. On a Christian understanding the mixed nature of human existence with its inherent conflicts reflects vestiges of a once harmonious relationship tainted by the ongoing effects of human sin.

Scheler offers a theory of the tragic collision broadly similar to Hegel’s but with key differences, the most important being the absence in Scheler of an appeal to the divine. Tragedy for Scheler, rather than being merely an art product, is “an essential element of the universe itself”\(^\text{139}\) and thus intimately connected with the temporal. Scheler purposely avoids what he deems surface concerns such as speculations on why tragedy gives pleasure. Instead, he offers an analysis of basic elements that make tragedy possible. He thinks the experience of tragedy varies greatly with historical

\(^{139}\) Scheler, “Tragic,” 27.
context, while the essence of tragedy does not. Scheler stresses the importance of defining the tragic before proceeding with any significant discussion of it. He writes, "But to know where the tragic has its source, whether in the basic structure of existence or in human passions and unrest, is to know already what the tragic is."\(^{140}\)

This need not preclude a discussion of "the basic structure of human existence," but requires that the tragic be made explicit if it is to be related to such a structure.

For Scheler, tragedy exists only in the area of values and their relationships.\(^{141}\) Tragedy itself is not a value; it appears only through the interplay of values within a framework of time. Values inevitably conflict, which in tragedy results in the destruction of a positive value by a lesser one.\(^{142}\) The values in conflict must be of "high positive value" such that a high positive value destroys another high positive value rather than a conflict between inherent opposites like good and bad, or beautiful and ugly. The more evenly balanced the conflict, the greater the tragedy. Such balance leads to a certain sense of grief, one in which one side of the conflict is not clearly to blame. Scheler notes, "The great art of the tragedian is to set each value of the conflicting elements in its fullest light, to develop completely the intrinsic rights of each party."\(^{143}\) The greater the sense that one side of the conflict is clearly to blame, the less the tragic effect.

The destruction of a high positive value by another one combines with a sense of inevitability to produce what Scheler terms "the tragic knot." By this he means the

\(^{140}\) ibid., 29.

\(^{141}\) ibid., 29ff.

\(^{142}\) This contrasts with Hegel's idea that the tragic clash be between two equally justified powers.

\(^{143}\) Scheler, "Tragic," 31.
way in which positive values conflict and are destroyed. The tragic knot occurs when the expression of a high positive value produces its own destruction. He writes,

If we are observing a certain action which is realizing a high value, and then see in that same action that it is working towards the undermining of the very existence of the being it is helping, we receive the most complete and the clearest of tragic impressions.\textsuperscript{144}

For Scheler, the tragic knot needs to be pulled tighter yet. The destruction of one positive value (often including the person holding that value) by another positive value be done in such a way that the destruction be made to seem at once necessary and completely unpredictable, inevitable yet subject to variable circumstances. In this way \textit{the value relationships combine with causal relationships}. The tragic occurs only when “in one glance we embrace both the causality of things and the exigencies of their immanent values.”\textsuperscript{145} The causality of things and the expression of values are often not aligned in ordinary affairs, such as when the rain falls on the just and unjust. In tragedy, values and circumstance are at once independent and absolutely combined. Scheler notes, “The tragic comes into sight only when this independence of the two elements becomes embodied in a concrete event.”\textsuperscript{146}

\textsuperscript{144}ibid., 34. This relates to the nature of the tragic reversal. Henn remarks “The reversal arises when the action which we take to safeguard ourselves betrays us and brings about our downfall. The recognition comes when we realize how we have been deluded (this is the mental kind); or when in a physical demonstration, we recognize by a material evidence that a thing is so. In the one case there is an awakening from the ‘strong delusion’ that has brought us to belief in the lie; in the second, a physical event produces a specific kind of knowledge.” T. R. Henn. The Harvest of Tragedy (London: Methuen & Co., 1956) 18. While noting their close connection, Muecke notes that Scheler is viewing what is generally taken to be irony as tragic. As will be seen, this is not the key element in Scheler’s theory. D. C. Muecke. The Compass of Irony. (London: Methuen & Co., 1969), 48.

\textsuperscript{145}Scheler, “Tragic,” 35.

\textsuperscript{146}ibid.
Scheler himself offers only limited examples of his theory as it applies to actual tragedies. A few more extensive examples may be supplied to illustrate and to test the viability of Scheler's ideas expressed so far. In Hamlet's case, the conflicting positive values of action and thoughtful reflection combine with the initially unrelated events of his father's murder and his mother's "o'er hasty marriage" to his murderous uncle. Depending on one's point of view, Hamlet's clumsy attempts at action destroys his detached reflection on a messy situation, or his propensity to philosophize destroys his ability to act decisively. Antigone's private loyalty to her brother clashes with Creon's public duty to protect his city and punish wrongdoers through the chance event of Antigone's brother attacking Creon's city. The positive value as seen in Creon's rulership remains intact while his private world is destroyed along with Antigone herself. The values of love and honor collide as the wicked Iago, by chance Othello's trusted advisor, enflames his leader's jealousy and sense of being wronged so that Othello smothers his cherished Desdemona. In Pilate's case, the contingent events of history provoke a clash between worldly survival on the one hand and personal integrity and eternal divine values on the other. Given these interpretations of these particular works, Scheler's theory offers a compelling interpretation of tragedy.

Continuing, Scheler sees "tragic guilt" as something other than moral or ethical blame. Tragic guilt does not occur as the result of a moral choice wherein one chooses between a clearly recognized good and evil. For guilt to be tragic, everyone must be seen as having done his or her duty. The tragic misdeed is that which "silences all possible moral and legal powers of judgment" whereas the untragic is where "by moral
and legal lights it is seen to be obvious and simple. The tragic hero moves above non tragic guilt because the rest of the world possesses an inadequate view of things. Thus, Jesus is tragic because he acted according to his own knowledge and obligations and suffered accordingly. For Scheler, "Moral or 'guilty guilt' is based on the act of choice; 'tragic' or 'unguilty guilt' is rather based on the sphere of choice....and so the tragic hero 'becomes guilty' while doing a guiltless thing." Scheler believes that tragic guilt obtains because tragedy has "its ultimate roots in the essential makeup of the world itself. It is this which clears away all sense of culpability or responsibility."

Here Scheler's ideas become murkier and more problematic. As noted above, the dramatist may balance the competing sides in a dramatic balance, such as when Shakespeare roots Iago's hatred of Othello in Iago's suspicion that his wife has been unfaithful with the general. Yet it remains doubtful that moral and ethical judgments may be entirely suspended, however difficult they are to make. Nor does this need to be the case for something to be tragic. Scheler takes his ideas too far in suggesting that one may be free from moral guilt and yet experience tragic guilt. This implies that one may be guiltless, or completely good, and yet tragic, a notion at odds with Aristotle and with the overwhelming majority of centuries of writers and critics. Scheler connects the tragic only with setting, or "the essential makeup of the world" to the exclusion of character, insofar as the ideal of tragedy is concerned. Scheler offers Jesus as the paradigm tragic figure, the one the world destroys and whose goodness becomes

\[147\] ibid., 39.
\[148\] ibid., 43.
\[149\] ibid., 33. Scheler's statement here is correct by itself; tragedy is related to the essential makeup of the world. But in context, Scheler is incorrect, as discussed below.
apparent at a later time. The crucial mistake here is to confuse the tragic with romance and suppose that Jesus is in fact tragic. Lacking crucial ambiguities resulting from being a mixture of the good and bad, Jesus is heroic, aware of his destiny, in full control of events, and selflessly proceeding to the cross. However much the tragic hero may or may not enjoy a point of view superior to others, the tragic hero shares the common condition of humanity in having a view of things that is ultimately and necessarily inadequate.

The strength of Scheler’s theory is its ability to combine the values held and expressed by a character and the values and circumstances of the surrounding world through a casual nexus expressed in plot in a way that Scheler himself does not explore. Scheler seems content to place his emphasis on values as expressed in setting to the detriment of values inherent in a given character, meaning that something amiss in a character may exacerbate something amiss in a given situation. Moving beyond Scheler, the events of a plot expose qualities and values latent in setting and character. Here again Aristotle’s contention of plot being superior to character in tragedy comes into importance because plot unites character (and values represented by that character) and setting (primarily values latent in that setting) in a causal series of events. The ambiguities, ironies, and inconsistencies of a given situation combine in

---

150 Chatman notes, “Unlike events, traits [referring to traits that make up a character] are not in the temporal chain, but coexist with the whole or a large portion of it. Events travel as vectors, “horizontally” from earlier to later. Traits, on the other hand, extend over the time spans staked out by the events.” Seymour Chatman, Story and Discourse: Narrative Structure in Fiction and Film (Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1978) 129. Chatman’s statement regarding the atemporality of character traits may be extended to those traits (values, ideals, etc.) found in a particular cultural or ideological setting. Plot, then, does not determine character or setting (as these are already explicit or implicit in character and setting), but rather forms the temporal pathway on which character and setting are expressed.
a certain way in a plot with the ambiguities, ironies, and inconsistencies of a particular character or characters to produce what we call tragedy. Tragedy is then not rooted only in character, but also in the setting. By extension, the roots of tragedy penetrate to the soil humanity in general as expressed in individual characters and to the soil of world itself, the way things are.

Approaches to tragedy centering on character to the exclusion of setting or situation and vice versa are inadequate. In critiquing Scheler's position, it has been shown that Jesus can never be tragic because he lacked the ambiguity within his character to be reasonably blamed for his death even though the situation around him is one filled with ambiguity and relative values. The Romantics proposed an optimistic secular version of this tendency in seeking to exalt the intrinsic potential of human beings and de-emphasize humanity's inherent flaws and limitations. Responsibility for evil lay with society, reform of which would allow for full development of the individual. In this way blame is transferred from character to setting with a corresponding emphasis on the self. On the other hand, Adam fails to be tragic because blame is not transferable to the past and his surroundings. The fracturing and relativization of values in both character and setting are necessary for tragedy. The fanatic makes a poor candidate for tragedy because he or she irrationally commits to

---

151 Steiner, *Tragedy*, 116ff. Steiner notes "If the romantic movement inherited from Rousseau his presumption of natural goodness and his belief in the social rather than metaphysical origins of evil, it inherited also his obsession with the self." p. 136.
152 Frye notes in a discussion of irony that "Tragedy is intelligible because its catastrophe is plausibly related to its situation." He sees Adam as "inevitably ironic" and Jesus as "incongruously ironic" and the tragic hero, in this case Prometheus, as about halfway between. *Anatomy*, 41.
and expresses a cause without adequate appreciation of shortcomings inherent in the self or in the way things are.

Uniting character and setting with the ambiguities and contradictions inherent to both in a causal nexus as expressed in plot allows a plausible explanation of the ambiguous nature of assigning responsibility to a character or a set of circumstances. To the extent that the blame for a certain course of events can be transferred from problems inherent in a setting to a particular character or group of characters, the characters are responsible. At the same time, responsibility can be transferred from a character to a situation because of difficulties and incongruencies inherent in the situation itself. This can only be convincingly accomplished in a situation where the value relationships are united with the causal relationships by means of plot. A properly formed tragic plot forms an open-ended conduit of exchange between character and setting, and necessity and contingency. Oedipus, Hamlet, and Pilate can be seen as villains or victims and neither interpretation is really convincing insofar as it excludes the other contradictory interpretation. Fear and pity as classic elements of audience response also depend upon this two way ambiguity; fear arises by an imaginative identification with the situation and the consequent transfer of blame to the person; pity arises by an imaginative identification with the person and the consequent transfer of blame to the situation. Neither side merits complete or exclusive

---

154 This helps explain the similarities and differences between the Greeks and Shakespeare regarding the tension between fate and free will. Notions of fate emphasize the power of a situation to compel certain actions, a Greek tendency, while the dynamics of free will emphasize the power of an individual to make free moral choices and thereby control events, more characteristic of Shakespeare and his Christian milieu. These generalities, albeit useful ones, indicate tendencies rather than dichotomies. The connection in a causal nexus expressed in plot as argued here helps explain the inviolable connection between the two.

155 See “Elements of Audience Reaction,” above.
justification so an unresolved dynamic tension obtains between fear and pity, attraction and revulsion. The particular value clashes exhibited in tragedy occur in such a way that renders both sides a measure of justification and vilification, a situation that can only exist in a world fractured by relative values and the Fall. Tragedy, then, explores the difficulties of relating beliefs to experience.

C.3 RELATIVE VALUES: KNOWLEDGE AND IGNORANCE IN TRAGEDY

Much of the previous discussion assumes that values can and do exist in relative relationship to each other, a situation prima facie true. Presumably, there exists a possible state of affairs in which positive values do not conflict as is the case within a Trinitarian understanding of the Christian God wherein each of the three separate persons of the Godhead possess equally and fully the attributes of God within a fully united single being. Within a temporal framework a possible state of affairs that includes free contingent beings in which positive values do not conflict is, at best, precarious.

By allowing one positive value to be placed in conflict with another, ignorance and its consequent ambiguities and contradictions forms a crucial part of tragedy. These qualities exhibited in tragedy provide key elements that make tragedy itself possible. Ignorance in tragedy can take the forms of ignorance of fact and ignorance of

---

value implementation. In the first, Oedipus lives in ignorance of a set of true and significant facts about his own life, a set of circumstances that makes the whole drama possible. Elsewhere, as in Sophocles' *Women of Trachis*, a series of strategic ignorance's on the part of the central characters moves the plot along and precipitates its tragic conclusion. But rather than being merely plot devices, the character's ignorance of particular facts says something about life itself, that one can never know or grasp things adequately and that such a situation is filled with dangerous possibilities.

In Sophocles' *Electra*, certain characters operate in ignorance of potentially important information. But here the significant ignorance displayed is collective ignorance regarding the ignorance of all characters, and all humanity as well, as to the proper implementation of a value, in this case justice. The carefully balanced claims of each competing party prevents any one character from occupying the undisputed moral high ground. The rival claims to justice in *Electra* seem at once a bizarre combination of intractable self-centeredness and a plausible appeal to a larger principle. In Shakespeare, Lear's relatively dove like innocence manifests ignorance of snake like values realized in the world as facts of character in the persons of his daughters. Macbeth shows an adequate grasp of the value clash entailed by his murder of Duncan, but displays ignorance of what the future may actually be like once the murder is committed and one value is set against the other. In *Romeo and Juliet* and *Antony and Cleopatra*, the major characters ignorantly underestimate the danger of the value clash between the public order of family loyalty and personal passion inherent in their

---

157 The wicked sisters' predictions further Macbeth's delusions about the future in precisely this way.

---
circumstances. Hamlet combines ignorance of facts with ignorance of value implementation as he walks a delicate line of ignorance/knowledge linked with action/contemplation. Pilate combines ignorance of facts with ignorance of implementing values which he assumes to be entirely relative. Ignorance of value clashes, either potential or actual, makes the world a dangerous place.

Ignorance of the type generally found in tragedy is of a particularly insidious kind. Factual omniscience would of course be useful, but remains impossible for mortals. In Agamemnon and Electra factual omniscience would prevent this or that death but would not solve the problem of the implementation of values in a world where positive values inevitably conflict. While certainly important to Hamlet’s uncertainty, it remains an open question as to whether or not more information would solve Hamlet’s dilemma of whether “to be or not to be,” a dilemma bound up in a quandary about whether and when to act or not. An omniscient wisdom directing the implementation of values may provide help regarding the choice of one course of action as compared to another, but in the end this provides only part of the answer. Oedipus and Pilate are both at heart men of action, and each would rather solve the problem through material means, but their particular dilemmas do not allow them to do so. Hamlet differs in that he is not a man of action but must find his way through the maze with careful reflection.

Ignorance in an inert state presents few difficulties. But the progress of time renders the easy comfort of ignorance as precarious as dawn before the advance of the sun. Events force the condition of ignorance out into the open where the complexities
of life may result in a tragic collision. On the other hand events may pass harmlessly to the side as might have happened had Duncan spent the night somewhere other than Macbeth's castle. The particularly maddening quality of ignorance is that such a condition can never be fully alleviated. The dilemma is such that Oedipus, Hamlet, and Pilate, compelled by inner and/or outer forces with the need to know, face a situation in which their increase of knowledge results in a situation, from their perspective, arguably worse than the one in which they began. Given present realities, ignorance is a necessary part of the human condition. Humans remain ignorant and time and events will force new potential clashes into reality.

The condition of partial ignorance gives rise to several other qualities important to tragedy. Ambiguity, paradox, contradiction, and irony form key elements of tragedy[^158] and operate only in states where a given state of knowledge contains elements somehow at odds with each other. Ambiguity results from incomplete or incorrect knowledge; paradox operates when two states of affairs or ideas conflict in a way not resolvable within a given framework of knowledge; irony obtains only when a given state of knowledge, intentions, or point of view is at odds with another superior or inferior to itself.[^159] Contradiction differs from the other three in that two items may contradict within a unified and complete state of knowledge, for example $2 + 2 = 4$


necessarily contradicts all other possibilities. The contradiction in view here may be referred to under the more general term of ambiguity, the type that obtains when two sides appear to be equally justified and yet contradict in the assertion of their separate interests. The ambiguities, paradoxes, ironies, and contradictions derived from ignorance allow the tragic artist the very means by which two opposing sides can appear justified in their implicit or explicit assertion of values. Only in a fractured world can one positive value be set over against another. Tragedy as an artform uses the ignorance inevitable in a fractured world to function as a drama, and in doing so says something about the world itself.

Ignorance important for contingent human beings most commonly found in tragedy is inevitably connected to the past. Persons may be excused from blame if the future turns out to be otherwise than what might reasonably be expected. Blame may also be lessened if present events lie beyond the scope of what someone might reasonably be expected to know. The past presents another situation in that the range of what someone might reasonably be expected to know about the past is considerably larger. And given that the present necessarily finds its roots in the past, the need to know about the past is much greater. A thorough knowledge of the past may lead one to alter or continue various courses of action in a positive way. Yet a comprehensive knowledge of the past and its collective wisdom serves only to heighten the scope of the problem; more is known all the time and tragic collisions will still occur. Furthermore, given the time difference between past and present, the past is subject to a greater variety of convincing interpretations than the present or future. Tragedy casts
doubt on the assertion that “The one who is ignorant of history is condemned to repeat it.”

Tragedy happens when the past comes roaring to life into the present in a particular way. Like a rock thrown from the past shattering the tranquility of the present, a chance event can place positive values which formerly may have existed in relative harmony in opposition to each other in ways not easily anticipated, or if anticipated, not easily managed. Ignorance and the qualities derived from it comprise key elements of a world where positive values may be found in opposition to each other.

C.4 ABSOLUTE VALUES: MORAL ORDER IN TRAGEDY

Given the difficulty of adequately knowing and responding to the past, much less to the present and future, it does not follow that one is without responsibility for particular actions. Whatever conflicts may arise from ignorance and the fractured state of knowledge and the consequent relativization of values, judgments between one course of action and another must nevertheless be made. Courts of law attempt to establish the relevant facts in a particular case and offer competing interpretations based on an appeal to established values embodied in law. An appeal to ignorance of the law exonerates no one completely because, presumably, a law is a particular embodiment of a larger principle generally accepted as valid.

160 Although he does not connect the past with ignorance as here, T. R. Henn sees the past as a net closing in on the present. See Henn, Harvest, 35-42.
Morality in tragedy is not inherently fluid; rather it is difficult to implement. In tragedy, the careful balancing of opposing forces does not imply that no standards exist by which actions may be judged. On the contrary, the very fact that certain actions may be legitimately justified in some sense implies in itself the existence of a moral order against which opposing actions may both be opposed or defended. The legitimacy of a point of view inevitably involves an appeal to a larger principle either directly through an accepted formulation of a particular value, or indirectly through a principle formulated for the common good. The source of the moral order, whether in divine command, natural law, or social convention, remains in dispute. The present discussion requires only the simple acknowledgment that two opposing sides or forces may command roughly equal moral justification within the moral order itself, while at the same time acknowledging that not all actions approximate moral parity.

As Krook shows, a tragic work inevitably contains some violation of the moral order. For Krook, the existence of a moral order provides the basic framework for her analysis of tragedy. The four elements in Krook's understanding of tragedy will be treated below, the first and fourth being the most important for the present discussion. First, an act of shame, wherein an objective, real act, universal in significance, is committed that precipitates the action of the tragedy. This violation of the moral order need not be committed by the main tragic character, as in Macbeth's murder of Duncan, and may be committed by someone else as, for example, Claudius'...
The violation of the moral order must arise "out of the fundamental human condition" and be "necessarily universal," usually acts of betrayal and rejection. In Pilate's case, the act of shame and violation of the moral order is the betrayal of Jesus by Judas Iscariot, a single act that sets in final motion the larger clash between the Jews and Jesus. Krook's notion of the "act of shame" is precisely the same kind of event that in Scheler's analysis links the value relationships into a set of contingent circumstances and sets them at odds with each other. In tragedy, separate positive values move from being in latent potential conflict to actual conflict by means of a violation of the moral order.

In the second element in Krook's analysis, intense, deeply felt, real suffering occurs that is related to and commensurate with its cause. The suffering must be conscious and felt to be undermining and destructive of the human vessel, often resulting in death. For Pilate, loss of his personal integrity and his pretensions to power result in suffering and spiritual destruction, but not in physical death. Third, knowledge must be gained regarding some aspect of the human condition, not by the characters in the play, but by the audience. In this way tragedy serves a didactic function. Ultimately this coincides with purpose of the FG, to initiate and strengthen belief in the risen Christ on the part of the reader by means of knowledge of and response to certain facts. Pilate's state of understanding and belief, although it

---

163 A violation of the moral order must be distinguished from a hamartia. The former is an intentional act committed by someone, while the latter is "false step taken in blindness" (Lucas) usually consequent on a flaw latent within a the main character ready to be exposed through challenges within the plot.
164 Krook, *Elements of Tragedy*, 10-11.
165 Note the examples given to test Scheler's theory wherein a contingent event unites the opposing values in a plot relationship. See above.
progresses, must be judged to be incomplete and therefore a negative example. The reader gains the knowledge about the human condition, learning that temporal solutions may conflict with theological realities in a way that forces one to choose between them.

Fourth, building on Aristotle’s idea of catharsis, Krook believes that an affirmation must result in an affirmation of “the objective moral order which at once incorporates the human and transcends it.” The stature of the tragic hero is such that his or her suffering expiates the violation of the moral order and in doing so restores the integrity of the moral order. For Krook,

The final “affirmation” of tragedy springs from our reconciliation to, or acceptance of, the necessity of the suffering rendered intelligible by the knowledge; by illuminating the necessity of the suffering, the knowledge reconciles us to it; by being reconciled to (“accepting”) the suffering as necessary, we reaffirm the supremacy of the universal moral order; and by this act of recognition of and submission to the universal moral order, which the reaffirmation of its supremacy implies, we express and affirm the dignity of man and the value of human life.

The presence of the moral order ultimately reaffirms human dignity rather than human dignity being derived from some other source. The greatness inherent to the tragic hero may be connected to the hero’s worthiness as a sacrifice expiating the moral order as a representative figure for the human race. But, like all tragic heroes, Pilate is grossly and pathetically inadequate for the task, a foil highlighting the worthiness of Jesus as the one who does in fact expiate humanity’s collective violation of the moral order.

The presence of the moral order in the world is connected to the presence of some sort of divine or supernatural element to human life. H. D. F. Kitto asserts that

\[166\] Krook, *Elements of Tragedy*, 15.
tragedy contains a necessary religious element regardless of the ability of the individual or age to see it properly. The religious dimension in tragedy is that the moral order of the universe, the fact that one exists being a religious concern, is reaffirmed in tragedy. However much an individual or group may find itself in confusion and be destroyed, the moral order of the world is intact. The gods or moral order need not be present in a particular work for this to be true; the order is everywhere implicitly present. As evidence, Kitto asserts that however well drawn and interesting a character may be, that character ‘never absorbs all our attention,” meaning that a drama raises issues and questions beyond itself. Furthermore, “Only when the human drama is seen against the background of divine action is the structure and significance of the play truly seen.” In so doing, the tragic artist combines seeming contraries; “sharpness of detail and the greatest possible generality” which allows the characters in tragedy to become concretely realized representative symbols of the human condition.

Richard Sewall cautiously attempts to say something about the tragic form by noting three areas of discussion: first, the cosmos and man’s relation to it; second, the nature of the individual and his relation to himself; third, the individual in society. In the first, Sewall notes that man is a part of this world, that tragedy is humanistic by

---

167 ibid., 17.
169 ibid., 238.
170 ibid.
virtue of being focused on an event in this world. Yet tragedy “assumes man’s super-
sensory or supernatural, or metaphysical being or principle...”\(^{172}\) The tragic view is
never purely naturalistic or mechanical. The tragic cosmos is one preoccupied with
ever, not evil in isolation, but in relation to and in tension with the good, a tension that
insures that man is not the measure of all things and that the universe remains a
mystery. In the second, on tragic man, Sewall lists some of the various ambiguities
and paradoxes inherent to the human condition: not divine nor fully of the earth, neither
fated nor free, both creature and creator, guilty and innocent. In this confusion tragic
man, animated by pride, suffers on a high level, more so than the immature, brutish, or
extreme optimist or pessimist. Suffering is part of the human condition, and in
suffering the tragic hero comes to be identified with humanity at large. Third, tragic
man in relation to society chooses to rebel, question, and act, rather than quit, be silent,
or cynical. This puts the tragic hero in “a head on collision with the forces that would
oppress or frustrate. Conscious of the ambiguities within and without, which are the
source of his peculiar suffering, tragic man accepts the conflict.”\(^{173}\) By proceeding, the
tragic hero learns and is transformed and in being transformed, transforms those
around, leading to a higher vision, yet the old paradoxes and ambiguities remain.

In *The Death of Tragedy*, George Steiner surveys tragedy through its history
and offers a simple argument; tragedy and tragic poets need an intellectual climate
infused with known beliefs and assumptions about life that includes a strong theological
or transcendent element, allowing the issues to transcend the temporal. Steiner writes,
“Tragedy is that form of art that requires the intolerable burden of God’s presence. It

\(^{172}\) Sewall, “Tragic Form,” 121.
is now dead because His shadow no longer falls upon us as it fell on Agamemnon or
Macbeth or Athalie.” Steiner argues that the lack of a transcendent order in more recent times accounts for the decline in tragedy as an artform.

The intellectual and theological milieu present in ancient Greece and Elizabethan England allowed tragedy to flourish. The presence of the divine or a moral order forms a key part of each writer’s analysis. Kitto’s argument is the most one sided in that it lacks a clear presentation and account of the evil in the world. Steiner and Sewall make the presence of evil and the incongruities of life very much part of their analysis. Sewall is perhaps more optimistic than Steiner in that he believes that the tragic hero marshals an inherent pride and stands against “the slings and arrows of outrageous fortune.”

For other critics, the moral order, by whatever term it is known, need not necessarily be connected to the divine. For Williams the moral order may be connected to the divine in particular historical situations, but its source is ultimately fluid and changes with the progress of history. Thus Shakespeare drew upon a Christian world view, while later dramatists like Ibsen relied on society itself, and in modern times the order advanced is the individual himself/herself. Increasingly, however,

---

172 ibid., 126-27.
173 Steiner, *Death of Tragedy*, 192.
174 Steiner notes, “When the new world picture of reason usurped the place of the old tradition in the course of the seventeenth century, the English theatre entered its long decline.” Death of Tragedy, 23.
175 Kaufmann disputes Steiner’s analysis by noting, “Are there not millions of believers today?” Tragedy and Philosophy, 192. Kaufmann confuses the particular and the universal. However many believers exist today is irrelevant to the fact that a comprehensive theological world view no longer commands adherence as it did in Shakespeare’s time.
176 Williams, *Tragedy*. 
tragedy, if possible, is restricted in scope such that it becomes experience being set against experience.

The fractured state of the world and the ignorance consequent upon it seems at once to converge and diverge with the presence of a moral order. The moral order functions as an ethical force preventing arbitrary acts resulting from the fractured state of knowledge and the relativization of values; at the same time the fractured state of the world of experience and knowledge about it can prevent one from adequately grasping or implementing the ethical norms suggested by the moral order. The tragic hero is obligated by the presence of the moral order to grasp and/or implement the moral order in a world situation divided by ambiguities and contradictions. This does entail ethical nihilism and that nothing ethical can be accomplished or ought not to be attempted; it only means that the potential exists that two positive moral values can be moved from an inert state into open conflict by some violation of the moral order. In this sense tragedy recapitulates the fall and renders a state of affairs that is the fertile ground for tragedy.

It may be noted as an historical fact, as Steiner does, that the greatest tragedies were produced in times when the presence of the divine was deeply felt as a moral order, yet an order beginning to unravel. The Middle Ages, when the moral order tended to be absolute, was the age of romance and produced very little if anything normally designated tragedy. In comparison, the late modern and post-modern world presents values relativized to such an extent that appeals to an absolute moral order

---

177 Myers observes, “Tragedy represents supplementary elements of relativity and absoluteness in values.” Myers, “Tragic Attitude,” 49.
seem strangely out of place, being much more at home with the ironic. Conflicts of positive value, such as there are, typically emerge from an assertion of the personal rights of an individual or group, as opposed to an implicit or explicit appeal to moral order ordained by God. Neither the tendency toward absolute values of the Middle Ages nor the tendency to relative values of recent times has proved to be a prolific environment for the production of tragedy. The ages most productive of tragedy are those where the absolute values of one age in transition and in open conflict with the relative values another.\(^{178}\) To the extent that Christianity provided a coherence to beliefs and experience, Pilate stands at the dawn of this age while Hamlet and Dr. Faustus signal its decline.

Perhaps nowhere does the clash between relative and absolute values appear in sharper focus than in the case of Pilate. The function of human government, in the Bible sanctioned by God as a way to implement order and good upon the earth, is largely one of the implementation of positive values and the restraint of negative values. Any government’s ability to achieve this is inevitably relative. In the time of Christ, Pilate stood as the one empowered in that instance to implement this role. As a ruler in his or any other era, Pilate’s position inevitably required mastery of the relative values of political intrigue and ad hoc management of current events. Pilate’s confrontation with Jesus, through whom “all things were made (1:3), highlights the inevitable limitations of any system or any person employing relative values. In contrast to Pilate

\(^{178}\) For an illuminating analysis of the progress of intellectual history with respect to transcendent and “sensate” values and their expression in art and science, see Pitirim Sorokin, *The Crisis of our Age* (Oxford: One World, 1941, 1992).
(What is truth?), Jesus (I am the way, the truth, and the life) represents and embodies absolute adherence to absolute values. In doing so Jesus is at once true to the absolute moral order ultimately derived form God himself, and, as a member of the Godhead, true to himself; Pilate belongs to an order of relativized values that ultimately defies anyone to be true to it.

**IV CONCLUSION**

In tragedy, the coherence of romance gives way to a world in fundamental conflict with itself and anticipates the arrival of irony in which the disjunction between beliefs and experience is most fully realized. Sharing many of the characteristics of other tragic characters, Pilate may likewise be viewed as an archetypal tragic character. Further, to a great extent tragedy as an archetype is concerned with a widening disjunction between humans and their environment, between absolute values and their enactment in experience, and between humans and the gods or God. However concentrated and brief, the matrix of theological and structural variables that make up tragedy occur profoundly in the FG’s portrayal of Pilate.
IRONY, THOMAS, AND THE JEWS

"Stop judging by mere appearances and make a right judgment."
John 7:24

1 INTRODUCTION

Irony in the FG has been the focus of much attention in recent years. But rather than simply identifying and classifying examples of irony in the FG according to standard categories, the present work will explore irony in the FG as it relates to the perspectives embodied in the characters of Thomas and the Jews. In this way, variations of irony may be explored in a more dynamic fashion than has otherwise been done and is in keeping with the tendency of the FG to utilize characters to explore various relationships to Jesus. Additionally, irony will be explored in relation to values and beliefs inherent in its use and perception of its use rather than in relation to classification of its specific use as is normally done. In relation to the values and beliefs employed in its use and perception, irony may be divided into positive, equivocal, and negative irony, which will be discussed below. By combining the two aspects of irony as seen in relation to values and beliefs together with its embodiment in character, irony
may be explored as a mode of perception and thinking. Separate literary readings of Thomas and the Jews will be offered.

Thomas, it will be argued, embodies a kind of equivocal irony, (to be explored in detail later) wherein the application of beliefs to specific circumstances renders those beliefs problematic. This famous disciple is “the personification of an attitude,” an ambiguous Erasmian character whose very ambiguity mirrors the perspective of the perceptive yet ambiguous ironic reader. Additionally, because he is a disciple, Thomas is an exploration of irony from within.

The Jews will be seen as representative of negative irony, a perspective characterized by the collapse of perception into a two dimensional view of reality. The Jews are the polar opposite of Jesus and the character (collectively) most frequently ironized. While no doubt of paramount historical importance to the story of Jesus, the fact that they are so frequently Jesus’ conversation partners and so frequently ironized within the FG as a work of literature establishes their status as representative of and vehicles for a certain point of view. The Jews in the FG, it will be argued, embody the perspective of negative irony with its characteristic negation of any belief or ideal, in this case the vertical action of God in Christ in favor of the demands and perspective of present experience. In this sense, the Jews represent a perspective that is perennial, one

---


2 In one sense this is a kind of stereotyping, but in another more accurate sense it simply reflects a certain level of historical reporting. For example, the combatants of the English civil war, whatever the nuances and complexities of their respective positions, are known today simply as the roundheads and cavaliers. The extent to which “the Jews” are stereotyped in the FG is in direct proportion to the possibility that historical reconstructions of the Jewish milieu of the NT era may actually obscure their meaning and function within the FG itself. The issue of the Jews representative status is treated at greater length below.

209
that transcends charges of anti-Semitism by virtue of the fact that the same perspective with respect to the perception of Jesus haunts much of Christendom as well. This does not mean that the Jews are successful ironists in their own right, merely that they manifest an attitude of mind characteristic of one dominated by negative irony. With reference to the four archetypes as defined in the present work, in the FG the Jews are the location at which negative irony is itself ironized.

II THOMAS AND THE JEWS IN THE FOURTH GOSPEL: Variations on the ironization of irony

A) THOMAS AND THE IRONIZATION OF THE IRONIST:
Seeing and not seeing and seeing

Interpretation of Thomas naturally centers on his post-resurrection encounter with Jesus in 20:24-29. The length of the narrative alone, six verses in comparison with two isolated comments in 11:16 and 14:3, coupled with the fact that Thomas is here the primary character, serves to direct attention on Thomas in his last appearance in the NT. And Thomas’ actions within this narrative, namely his steadfast refusal to believe in the risen Lord on the basis of the testimony of his fellow disciples, naturally dominates interpretation of his character. Given this reality, several things about this pericope may be noted that will be of assistance for the interpretation of Thomas in 11:16, and thus in gaining a better grasp on the character of Thomas as a whole.

The first is that “doubt” is not an accurate description of Thomas’ actions. If doubt is take to mean “uncertainty” then doubt in itself does not accurately describe
Thomas’ actions in the resurrection narrative. Certain in his unbelief, doubt is precisely the thing Thomas never does. Jesus’ admonition to “Stop doubting and believe” is probably better understood as “Stop being faithless or unbelieving (ἀπιστος) but instead be faith-ful or believing (πιστος). A definite contrast is indicated. “Doubt” can of course mean faithless in English, but this is not its normal meaning. Translation aside, the narrative itself indicates something of the nature of Thomas’ unbelief. Thomas rejects the enthusiastic testimony of the disciples out of hand (20:25) and places fixed conditions on which he will believe in Jesus’ resurrection. Significantly, a week passes between Thomas’ rejection of the disciples’ testimony and his beholding of the risen Lord. No doubt during this week the disciples continued to insist on the reality of the resurrection and that Thomas with equal fervor continued to deny it. The disciples’ exasperation might well have been matched or exceeded by Thomas’ displeasure at suffering a choir of fools. The context is one of absolute intractability rather than skeptical debate.

The second thing to be noted is that Thomas is both included as one of the disciples and distinguished from the rest. Even the expression “one of the Twelve” (20:24) shows elements of inclusion and exclusion, although this in itself does not mean much. Thomas is notably absent from the other disciples and does not witness the risen Lord. He is thus physically distinguished from the rest which very likely

---


4 Dorothy Lee argues that the absence of Thomas here is only a literary device and that Thomas is no more doubtful than the other disciples. Both assessments are disputed here. Lee reads Thomas in isolation from his other appearances and allegorically with reference to the “Johannine Community.”
indicates that he is to be distinguished in other matters as well. The other disciples are in a locked room "for fear of the Jews" while Thomas is elsewhere and, by virtue of simply being elsewhere, perhaps roaming the streets in public, he is not to be painted with the same brush. Thomas' demonstrated idiosyncratic individuality over the rejection of the disciples' testimony when combined with the fearfulness of the disciples, may well indicate a certain distance and disdain for their hiding away. The appearance of Jesus to the disciples emphasizes the relief of these fears. Jesus' first tells them "Peace be with you" and then invites them to examine the evidence. Fear is nowhere directly associated with Thomas, for whom evidence is of primary concern. When Jesus appears to Thomas and the other disciples a week later, the doors are again locked, but inclusion of this detail calls attention to the fact that Jesus passed through walls with no mention being made, as previously, of fear of the Jews. While the primary purpose of the Thomas incident within the context of the pericope itself is to emphasize the importance and validity of believing without having seen (20:29), to one extent or another Thomas is distinguished from the other disciples.

Having established that doubt is not part of Thomas' character and that Thomas is distinguished from the other disciples on the basis of temporal location and lack of fear, his other appearances can be analyzed with this in mind. Thomas first appears in the FG in the early stages of the Lazarus narrative of chapter 11. Thomas' comment "Let us also go, that we may die with him" (11:16), it will be argued, is of central importance for seeing Thomas in all his ironic glory and interpreting his character as a

whole. On receiving word that Lazarus is sick, Jesus, who had promised that “This sickness will not end in death” and who “loved Martha and her sister and Lazarus” (11:5), inexplicably tarries two more days. The disciples greet Jesus’ intention to return to Judea with fear by noting “A short while ago the Jews tried to stone you, and yet you are going back there?” (11:8) After some confusion over the status of Lazarus, Jesus tells them plainly, “Lazarus is dead, and for your sake I am glad I was not there, so that you may believe. But let us go to him.”

Thomas enters the narrative immediately following; “Then Thomas (called Didymus) said to the rest of the disciples, “Let us also go, that we may die with him.” Again the pattern of 20:24-29 appears, fear of the Jews on the disciples’ part, Thomas distinguished from the rest of the disciples by a show of courage. Normally Thomas’ remark is interpreted with reference to the dangers of returning to Judea voiced previously in 11:8. Carson’s comments are representative of critical opinion,

On this occasion Thomas reflects not doubt but raw devotion and courage, even though it was courage shot through with misunderstanding and incomprehension: misunderstanding, in that he had not grasped the assurance implicit in vv. 9-10, and incomprehension, in that the death Jesus had to face as the Lamb of God (1:29,36) could not possibly be shared by his disciples. Yet there is another sense in which Thomas, like others in this Gospel, spoke better than he knew: his words have become a clarion call to would-be disciples, after the resurrection, to take up their cross daily and follow Jesus.5

---

On this basis Thomas is interpreted in straightforward fashion “heroically” as someone willing to follow Jesus to death after the manner of Peter, naive perhaps, but no less dedicated.

But there is another possible interpretation of this statement. Rather than being interpreted as heroically naive, it is possible to interpret “Let us also go, that we may die with him” as a kind of pessimism with overtones of fatalism or as a kind of mature courage. It remains a statement of dedication but one tempered by realism, facing the full force of the difficulties ahead with no illusions, like a hardened soldier ready for battle. Context offers little help in adjudicating between these conflicting interpretations.6

And there is yet another possible interpretation, one more like the latter, but derived from a different exegetical base. The issue concerns the antecedent of the pronoun “him” (αὐτοῦ) in Thomas’ statement “Let us also go, that we may die with him.” The two above interpretations both make the straightforward assumption that “him” refers to Jesus, but is this necessarily the case? The other possibility is that “him” refers to Lazarus. The two possibilities are as follows:

A- “Let us also go, that we may die with Jesus.”

or,

B- “Let us also go, that we may die with Lazarus.”

6In discussing this verse, a fellow doctoral student noted that the naive or heroic interpretation had never occurred to him and that he had always read it in terms of mature, if pessimistic, courage. Since perceiving the different interpretations of this verse as a teenager, I have never accepted the “naive” Thomas.
The former is assumed without question by virtually all commentators, the latter almost never mentioned. Bultmann mentions it but rejects it out of hand, while Michaels confines his remarks to an admission that the latter is grammatically possible. And yet the latter merits consideration simply by virtue of its immediate proximity to a possible antecedent of someone whose identity, if conceptually unpalatable, is unmistakable, namely Lazarus. Jesus ends his statement in 11:15 with “But let us go to him” and “him” (ὁντος) here without question refers to Lazarus. In contrast, six verses separate Thomas’ remark from mention of returning to Judea wherein going “to die with Jesus” would be an appropriate interpretation. Additionally, both Jesus and Thomas use similar language (“Let us go” and “Let us also go”) when referring to the intended journey of returning to Lazarus. Had Jesus explicitly stated “Let us go to Lazarus” (11:15) the person to whom Thomas refers would at least be in some doubt, Lazarus, on this scenario, being a readily apparent possibility. Rejection of Lazarus as the antecedent of ἀντίθετοι in 11:16 has less to do with exegesis and much to do with its simply being an unpalatable interpretation and/or one without an adequate frame of reference in which such an interpretation seems acceptable or reasonable.

An ironic Thomas offers a better option. Unlike his fellow disciples who suppose “if he sleeps he will get better,” Thomas sees the real problem and offers a more perceptive commentary. The deconstructionist Thomas cleverly detects an aporia in the logic of Jesus’ messiahship apparently missed by the other disciples. The sickness that “will not end in death” (11:4) has done exactly that. A vast gulf exists

between Jesus’ promises and his performance. Thomas might well have thought,
“What good are all these miracles and healings and all this commotion if he can’t help
his friend? And where does that leave us?” Potential trouble in Judea, the Jews with
their sticks and stones, so important to the other disciples, are incidental to the story in
comparison with the fact that Lazarus is dead. If Thomas is being ironical, the other
disciples may well be the victims of it. And Thomas’ recognition of the difficulty posed
for Jesus by the death of Lazarus undercuts his own position as a disciple and renders it
ironic and equivocal. Thomas remains, yet in doing so he can to a significant degree
only pretend to go along. “Doubting Thomas” might well describe him at this point.
Thomas, now as later, clearly perceives the difficulty but fails to see the possibility of
resurrection, and in doing so fails to allow for the possibility of the direct action of
God.

An analysis of other comments on Jesus’ tardiness within the narrative of
chapter 11 offers additional support for reading Thomas’ comment in 11:16, and
therefore his character, as ironic. Rather that reflecting the fears of the disciples
expressed in previous verses, (recall the separation of Thomas from the other disciples
and their fears in chapter 20), Thomas’ comment instead anticipates similar comments
to come. With slight differences in Greek, Martha and Mary both tell Jesus, “Lord, if
you had been here, my brother would not have died.” (11:21, 32) Unlike Thomas,

---

8 Muecke comments, “The ironic attitude of a ‘General Ironist’ is complicated by his own equivocal
position. On the one hand his sense of irony implies detachment, and since the irony he perceives is
General Irony, as I have defined it, he will be detached from life itself or at least for that general aspect
of life in which he perceives a fundamental contradiction. On the other hand, the picture he sees of an
ironic world must show himself as a victim.” Muecke, D. C. The Compass of Irony (London: Methuen
Martha affirms the reality of resurrection but only as something to be realized in the future. Although uttered no doubt with understandable pathos and expressing greater faith, the sisters make the same point as Thomas: Jesus could have prevented the death of Lazarus but did not. Running the emotional gamut from oversentimentality to cold detachment, the conflicting currents of opinion among the Jews express the same dilemma, “Then some of the Jews said, ‘See how he loved him!’ But some of them said, ‘Could not he who opened the eyes of the blind man have kept this man from dying?’” (11:36-37) Whatever their position relative to Jesus in a hierarchy of faith, (perhaps, in descending order Martha, Mary, Thomas, the Jews) all express substantially the same thing. Only Thomas, however, does so from a mixed perspective, as someone firmly on the inside, loyal (he remains a disciple) but ironic, equivocal, believing yet unbelieving, perceptive to the same extent that he is blind.

Given this reading of Thomas, Carson’s comments bear repeating and highlight the altered interpretative context.

On this occasion Thomas reflects not doubt but raw devotion and courage, even though it was courage shot through with misunderstanding and incomprehension: misunderstanding, in that he had not grasped the assurance implicit in vv. 9-10, and incomprehension, in that the death Jesus had to face as the Lamb of God (1:29,36) could not possibly be shared by his disciples. Yet there is another sense in which Thomas, like others in this Gospel, spoke better than he knew: his words have become a clarion call to would-be disciples, after the resurrection, to take up their cross daily and follow Jesus.  

If read in light of the ironic Thomas, Carson’s comments are seen to be themselves “shot through with misunderstanding and incomprehension” because Thomas did

---

indeed grasp "the assurance implicit in vv. 9-10" and astutely applied this insight. Thomas, it appears, knew better than he spoke. The clarion call is perhaps muted or sounding the wrong note.

The point illustrated here is important because it suggests that the mode of thought inherently related to archetype is very much related to proper interpretation; to read Thomas as naively heroic or to read Pilate ironically is to fundamentally misinterpret both characters. To adopt an ironic frame of reference for Thomas, at least provisionally, allows the reader to enter into and explore his world and allows the theology and world view of the FG to interact with and evaluate this point of view from within this point of view itself. Additionally, the interpretation of Thomas being advanced here provides an overall coherence to Thomas’ character within the FG narrative and theology otherwise lacking.

The naive heroic Thomas has come half circle. The disciples’ and readers’ (or commentator’s) own naiveté has been skewered and Thomas, at least for now, is having the last laugh. The altered interpretative context offered for Carson’s analysis illustrates the importance of point of view with respect to irony; by interpreting Thomas ironically, this interpretation has likewise been subjected to an ironic deconstruction or negation. Yet, to the same degree that this interpretation is adopted (or relished), the reader likewise identifies himself/herself with Thomas as practicingironist and runs the risk of participating in Thomas’ blindness and folly. In the FG’s conception of things, sharing insights with Thomas is, like irony, risky business. Self exposure is as possible as insight. In this way, equivocal irony as seen in Thomas
becomes a kind of trap in its double-mindedness. Thomas might well be known as
"Didymus" (or the twin) for reasons having little or nothing to do with his family
status. For Thomas, perception of Jesus’ failure to act in the life of Lazarus both
prefigures and precipitates a failure to accept even the possibility of God acting in
human affairs to raise Jesus from the dead. “Let us also go that we may die with him”
makes a perceptive descent into blindness.

Thomas next appears in 14:3 in the context of the beginning of Jesus’ farewell
discourse. Jesus tells the disciples, “You know the way to the place where I am
going.” (14:4) Thomas replies, “Lord, we don’t know where you are going, so how
can we know the way?” (14:5) The comment is at once perceptive and blind.
Perceptive in that it asks an obvious question related to realistic circumstances, blind in
that the answer to both parts of the question has been provided in the preceding verses.
Alternatively, descending into that slimy slop of irony again, Jesus is being ironic and
knows that they don’t know, or Thomas is being ironic and calling into question Jesus’
connection with anything beyond houses, rooms, coming and going. Recalling such
interpretative conundrums as “destroy this temple” “born again” and “living water,” the
fact that there is nothing in 14:1-3 that, given a certain frame of reference, cannot be
taken as literal reference to physical objects complicates the issue. Is this figurative
language or not? What is he talking about? What narrative is to be employed? While
Jesus’ words as normally understood within the larger context of the FG certainly refer

---

10 Barrett mentions this possibility. "It is conceivable, though not probable, that Thomas appears as the
doubting disciple on account of his name. Διὸς, a natural rendering of Θ(Thoma`, a ‘twin’),
means primarily ‘double,’ ‘twofold.’" Barrett, _John_, 571. The fact that only John includes “Didymus”
twice) strengthens the possibility.
to heaven, in Thomas’ context or frame of reference this is not self-evident. Notably, Thomas’ question forms a counterpart to Jesus final words to his disciples in chapter 16 where Jesus states, “I came from the Father and entered the world: now I am leaving the world and going back to the Father.” The disciples, relieved, reply, “Now you are speaking clearly and without figures of speech.” (16:28-29) Characteristically, Thomas in 14:5 was the first to perceive the difficulty and may not be so thick after all. Or he may be the thickest of all. Here, as in the Lazarus narrative and indeed much of the FG as a whole, the present and future connection between heaven and earth, the action of God in the life of Christ, and the person of Christ with respect to the Father, combine to form a complex of related issues related to the frame of reference occupied by both character and reader. If there is no connection, then Thomas has put his finger on the problem; if there is a connection, and 14:6 states that there is, then Thomas is in the dark. Thomas in 14:5 may be very perceptive, or he may have descended from the sophistication of irony into pedestrian misunderstanding. Thomas and Jesus are at a draw but destined for a showdown.

Given his past performance, Thomas’ rejection of the disciples’ resurrection testimony in chapter 20 is entirely predictable. If the death of Lazarus casts doubt on Jesus, the death of Jesus himself raises the same problem to an infinitely higher degree. The resurrection of Lazarus may have proved to be a short lived and ill founded hope, for the one who raised Lazarus from the dead is himself dead. How can Jesus be “the way, the truth, and the life” if he is dead? And what of “No one comes to the Father except through me?” A sorry hope indeed. Fear of the Jews, so important to the other
disciples here and in the Lazarus narrative, for Thomas is incidental to the fact that circumstances have rendered a fundamental promise impossible of accomplishment. The disciples’ report is the braying of fools in the ears of Thomas, who won’t get fooled again. Read in this light, Thomas’ list of conditions appears entirely reasonable.

Thomas’ perception is equally the cause of his blindness. The ironist, often the first to see, at the same time risks premature closure. Irony rests on differences and oppositions, qualities which threaten to become ends in themselves. Double vision becomes myopia. In the FG, Thomas’ irony also prevents him from making a sustained vertical connection between Jesus and the plan of God and between Jesus and his relationship of divinity with the Father. Glitches in the progress of the story threaten the connection between beliefs and experience. Circumstances threaten to negate his theology and his irony. The solution Jesus offers to Thomas is to “Put your finger here; see my hands. Reach out your hand and put it into my side. Stop doubting and believe.” (20:29) The verse contains two elements; physical reality and belief. Belief, and the escape from irony and misunderstanding, involves placing physical reality into some larger context, in this case the context of the activity of God in the incarnation and the connection of God and earth and God and humanity consequent on the incarnation. Thomas is paradigmatic of this move. In the end, ironically and yet predictably, Thomas, that most blind disciple, comes to see most clearly of all.\(^{11}\)

### B) THE JEWS AND THE IRONIZATION OF IRONY: Seeing without seeing

\(^{11}\) Lee correctly concludes, “The character of Magdalene and Thomas draws the implied reader, through misunderstanding, along the pathway of faith which in this Gospel is the journey to the center of life.” Lee, “Partnership,” 49.
B.1. “THE JEWS” AND SYMBOLIC NARRATIVE

The various ways in which άνθρωποι (hereafter “the Jews”) is employed has been analyzed by Fuller. He notes that “the Jews” in the FG can be used in five ways: 1) as a term contrasting to the gentiles; 2) as a term contrasting to the Samaritans; 3) as a term used in relation to explanations of Jewish customs; 4) as a term designating the Jerusalem populace; and, most importantly, 5) as a term referring to a group increasingly and consistently hostile to Jesus and the disciples. The first three concern only clarification of detail and may be ignored. Fuller lists 5:10, 15, 16, 18 as referring to the Jerusalem populace, but, because these references occur in a context where “Pharisee” might be expected (cf. 2:18, 20), and because they occur in a context of unbelief (see below), they belong to the last category. Analyzing the last category, Fuller notes a number of occasions where other designations are transposed into “the Jews.” For example, the “crowd” of 6:22, 24 becomes the “Jews” in 6:2, 41, 52; the “Pharisees” of 9:15 becomes the “Jews” in 9:18, returning to “Pharisee” in 9:40; and, significantly, in the Pilate narrative only the term “the Jews” appears. Fuller concludes,

Thus the “Jews” become for the evangelist the quintessential expression of “unbelief”-by which he means the acceptance of Jesus as the final bearer of God’s revelation. Thus, too, for him “the Jews” have the same attributes as the kosmos in the distinctive Johannine sense of the word.

---

13 ibid., 32.
14 ibid., 31-37.
15 ibid., 36.
Furthermore, Fuller notes that in the FG Jesus’ conflicts with the Jews, rather than being anti-Semitic, are fundamentally Christological. Significantly, in most cases Fuller links the use of “the Jews” to theological concerns and in doing so provides a basis on which “the Jews” may be viewed as a character in a collective sense representative of a certain point of view. However, Fuller offers no extended narrative analysis.

Dorothy Lee examines a series of similar narratives she terms “symbolic narratives.” These six narratives are: 1) The Story of Nicodemus (3.1-36 [2.23-3.36]); 2) The Story of the Samaritan Woman (4.1-42); 3) The Healing at the Pool (5.1-47); 4) The Feeding of the Five Thousand (6.1-71); 5) The Healing of the Man Born Blind (9.1-41); and, 6) The Raising of Lazarus (11.1-12.11). While each contains unique features, Lee notes a common progression of five stages:

Stage 1: Foundational Image or ‘Sign’, such as bread, water, or the healing of an individual or feeding of a crowd.

Stage 2: Misunderstanding; the central character interprets the sign in relation to material reality. Consequently, Jesus is interpreted the same way.

Stage 3: Struggle for Understanding; the struggle usually takes place in dialogue with Jesus.

16 ibid., 36. Similarly, Culpepper notes, “Through the Jews, John explores the heart and soul of unbelief.” Culpepper, Anatomy, 129. Brown explains “the Jews” in a more restricted sense; “the Fourth Gospel uses “the Jews” as almost a technical title for the religious authorities, particularly those in Jerusalem, who are hostile to Jesus.” Brown, John, LXXI (his emphasis). Whether “the Jews” is general or specific and technical, Brown, in any case, agrees with the general point: “[T]he Jews’ belong to “the world,” that is, they are part of that division of men who are in dualistic opposition to Jesus and refuse to come to him as the light. (John is not anti-Semitic; the evangelist is condemning not race or people but opposition to Jesus.”) ibid., LXXII.


Stage 4: *Attainment or Rejection of Symbolic Understanding;* attainment of a symbolic understanding representing the attainment of faith, or, the movement away from faith in which the symbol is interpreted on materialistic terms.

Stage 5: *Confession of Faith or Statement of Rejection.* The climax of stage 4 in which a commitment is made, (the Samaritan woman), or Jesus is explicitly rejected.

In each narrative the sign or symbolic action functions as an interpretative obstacle to be overcome so that “Symbol and narrative operate together in a cohesive and integrated way.” The key element is whether the sign and Jesus are seen according to the flesh (σαρκί) or according to divine glory (δόξα). Significantly, in each of the four narratives in which the Jews play an important role as a collective character, (the healing at the pool, the feeding of the five thousand, the healing of the man born blind and the raising of Lazarus), they manifest a materialistic understanding that is shown to be inadequate. For Lee, as for Fuller and the present work, the primary emphasis falls on the Jews as a collective character representative of a certain point of view or frame of reference, rather than on the Jews as Jews in any national or ethnic sense.  

Unfortunately, whatever the many strengths of her literary analysis, Lee’s theological premises and conclusions are inadequate. Lee utilizes the specific circumstance of the use of “symbolic narratives” in the FG as a means to build faith in Jesus and transfers it into a general principle of the world’s general symbolic value to represent divine reality without taking into account the effects of the fall and the uniqueness of the incarnation. She writes,

---


21 This is generally the view of Stibbe in his analysis of 8:31-59, which he classifies as satire. Mark Stibbe, *John’s Gospel* (London and New York: Routledge, 1994) 105-131.
The value of the created order lies in its capacity to be the bearer of divine reality. In its symbolic function, the world gains new value and dignity coming from its intrinsic relationship to God. In this symbolic view, creation is neither exploited nor given absolute significance nor undervalued. On the contrary, the meaning of eternal life is to be found in a transformed understanding of the true, symbolic value of natural life.\(^22\)

Lurking in the background of Lee’s analysis is a deficient Christology and an inflated doctrine of creation. Her Christology is one that sees only that “in the human flesh of Jesus, the divine pneuma is radically present.”\(^23\) For Lee, it seems that, if the divine pneuma is present in the flesh of Jesus, it is present in the same way elsewhere in creation. But if the created order in its present state is able to be the bearer of divine reality, what was the purpose of the incarnation? Was Jesus put to death by reason of literal/metaphoric linguistic confusion? For Lee, the stress falls on creation rather than Jesus as creator (contra 1:3). While the FG affirms human life by virtue of creation and the incarnation (1:14), its emphasis is to radically transpose present earthly life into the larger theological context of heaven and God the Father as defined by one’s faith relationship to Jesus. The difference is one of kind rather than degree, one requiring, in Kuhn’s term, a paradigm shift. The Jews saw themselves in symbolic or sacramental terms as the bearers of divine reality of a certain type, as “descendants of Abraham” (10:33) and claimed further that “The only Father we have is God Himself.” (10:41)

But this in itself is insufficient. In the new order, all who believe can become children of God. (1:12-13) To their credit, the Jews often understood Jesus’ claims to be God (5:18, 8:58-59, 10:30), and, for the Jews, “eternal life” doubtless consisted of much

\(^{22}\) Lee, 234-35.

\(^{23}\) Lee 160
more than, as Lee supposes, “the true, symbolic value of natural life.” However well Lee has understood these narratives as narrative, she has failed to understand them theologically. In the symbolic narratives of the FG, linguistic or narrative confusion is theological confusion.

These differences aside, Lee’s analysis is largely correct and is broadly similar to the one followed here. However, here an analysis of the Jews in 4:43-6:71 will be offered with special emphasis on their archetypal relation to negative irony within the literary and theological kosmos of the FG. For the Jews at this point in the FG narrative, the possibility of faith offers a dynamic missing from later narratives where a relationship of entrenched opposition to Jesus prevails.

B.2. THE JEWS IN 4:43-6:71: THE IRONIZATION OF IRONY

Although they do not begin that way, the Jews become the consistent opponents of Jesus in the FG and the group/character most consistently ironized. The situation of the Jews in the FG abounds in ironies. To the extent that they claim to see most clearly they show themselves to be most blind. They manipulate their Roman rulers into putting their messiah to death by claiming (“We have no king but Caesar”) to be more loyal to Caesar than Pilate. And their foray into power politics succeeds only because Jesus willingly places himself into the historical matrix that brings about his death. Their very success unwittingly corresponds to the purposes of God. By establishing the primacy of one point of view, the Jews are seen to frequently speak better than they know (for example, 11:49). But these ironies are established in
relation to choices made and actions taken and are not inherent to the situation of the Jews at the beginning of the FG.

As noted, however great their eventual opposition and rejection of Jesus, the Jews begin the FG in a state of relative innocence. The priests and Levites sent from Jerusalem to investigate John the Baptist serve more as neutral questioners whose question and answer session with John establishes that John is not the Christ and that Jesus is the Christ. (1:19ff) Following the temple cleansing, the mood is slightly adversarial but of a kind more characterized by incredulity and misunderstanding than anything else. The Jews ask for a sign by which to prove his authority, Jesus replies “Destroy this temple, and I will raise it again in three days.” (2:18-19) In a manner prefiguring the major characteristic of the Jewish response to Jesus in the FG, the Jews negate this outrageous statement by interpreting it with reference it to realism and concrete experience. Impossible on the terms of what is immediately apparent, “Temple” and its associated references form an invitation to move to some other context of interpretation. What is in one context nonsense, in another is at least ambiguous (If he does not mean X, then what is Y?), and in another context, that of the cross and the FG narrative, makes perfect sense. What is called for is a hermeneutic of integration wherein interpretive obstacles are transposed into some other frame of reference. Characteristic of the Jews, lack of comprehension of this type is consistently ironized. Unlike the double-minded and equivocal Thomas, the Jews display persistent misunderstanding as their dominant characteristic.
Aside from the private visit from Nicodemus the Pharisee, the Pharisees are mentioned in neutral terms in 4:1 where it is noted that "The Pharisees heard that Jesus was gaining and baptizing more disciples than John." The Pharisees, previously interested in John the Baptist (1:24), now have reason to be more interested in Jesus. In response Jesus returns to Galilee, via Samaria, but the issue is not explicitly one of danger. The overall sense of Jesus' ministry form 1:19-4:54 is that it is going pretty well. Culpepper observes,

These [early] chapters have a powerful "primacy effect," that is, they firmly establish the reader's first impression of Jesus' identity and mission. The reader is led to accept the evangelist's view of Jesus before the antithetical point of view is given more than passing reference.

The healing of the paralytic (5:1-15) and his failure to demonstrate any faith signals a decline from previous good fortune. The healing of the paralytic and the healing of the man born blind are similar in many respects and form narrative bookends to Jesus' open-ended battles with the Jews which increasingly dominate 5:17-8:59. The similarities end as the paralytic's lack of faith is juxtaposed against the triumphant faith of the man born blind in chapter 9.

Significantly, the paralytic's lack of faith is also set against the backdrop of the faith of the royal official immediately preceding (4:43-54). The healing of the royal official must be taken into account for the healing of the paralytic to be seen in its

---

24 For Lee, "Nicodemus...represents the 'Jewish' leadership, which, at this stage of the Gospel, is still theoretically open to Jesus." Lee, Symbolic Narratives, 56.
26 Raymond Collins notes, "[B]oth the lame man and the blind man are representative figures in the tradition of the Fourth Gospel, but they are antithetically symbolical to the point that one cannot be understood without the other." Collins, "Representative Figures in the Fourth Gospel," Downside Review, 43; cf. Bultmann, John, 329; J. Louis Martyn, History and Theology in the Fourth Gospel, New York 1968, 49-50.
proper narrative context. The official hears of Jesus’ presence and seeks him out to come and heal his son. A kind of obstacle or test, Jesus’ response, “Unless you people see miraculous signs and wonders you will never believe” (4:48) is not encouraging but the man persists. In a step of faith, he departs and his servants meet him on the way to tell him his son is healed. The time corresponds to Jesus words, and in response he and all his household believed.27

The details of the story are worth a closer look especially with regard to the nature of the inner logic of the events that resulted in faith. In one sense it is not at all clear that the royal official’s response is justified. A doubter might raise the following issues: How did the royal official know the reports about Jesus he had heard from others were true and not simply a rumor? Was his son seriously ill after all? Had his father panicked as parents often do? Was the fever about to break anyway? Was the timing of the healing simply a coincidence? How could they be sure about the coincidence of the time? What of the distance involved? Was there another healer in the area? Did the son’s recovery impel the royal official to overreact? Did his joy simply get the best of him? Did his belief have proper warrant? Yet in spite of these Humean aporias, to his credit he believes. Whereas Jesus’ encounters with Nicodemus and the Samaritan woman followed a linear progression of vertical steps toward faith (although the faith of Nicodemus is unclear), in the case of the royal official an

interconnected complex of events taken as a whole confirms, tests, develops, and provides the interpretative basis for triumphant faith. For the royal official, events themselves function as a network of invitations and confirmations of faith while they could just as easily function as obstacles, functioning as invitations or obstacles in the same way that “born again” “living water” and “bread of life” do for others in the FG.

The events of the healing of the paralytic and his (lack of) response contrast in almost every way with the royal official. Set in Jerusalem during the time of a feast (5:1), the situation is thoroughly Jewish. The five colonnades and the thirty-eight years of invalidity could mean much (corresponding to the law and the 38 years of wilderness wandering, Deut. 2:14) or little. But given the overwhelmingly Jewish context of 5:1-10:42 and beyond and the paradigmatic function of this incident as introducing this section, much is more likely than little. In any case, being an invalid for thirty-eight years contrasts with the ambiguous illness of the official’s son and renders the healing of the paralytic prima facie much more remarkable. Unlike the healing of the official’s son, and offering a potentially more secure basis of faith, this healing by Jesus is immediate in terms of time and location and establishes the causal connection between Jesus and the healing as virtually certain. But with these advantages, the healed paralytic does not respond with anything beyond physical healing. Jesus’ words to the royal official, “Unless you people see miraculous signs and wonders, you will never believe” (4:48) provide ironic commentary in this context. The immediate and distant

29 For opposing views see Carson, John, 241-42; Lindars, John, 213-214 (con) and Brodie, John, 238-240 (pro).
juxtapositions of the royal official and the man born blind with the paralytic form a narrative based irony that reinforces the overall ironic structure of the FG.

The incident precipitates an open conflict with the Jews over the issue of the Sabbath. Responding to their objections, Jesus states, “My Father is always at his work to this very day, and I, too, am working.” (5:17) If the theology on which this statement is based is understood and accepted— that God works on the Sabbath and the fact that Jesus designates God as his Father, if true, entitles him to work on the Sabbath like the Father—Jesus offers an adequate explanation. Jesus’ working on the Sabbath is an interpretative obstacle to be overcome, an occasion for increased understanding. The Jews understand the theological importance of Jesus claiming God as his Father, which implies Jesus’ equality with God, but despite Jesus’ acceptance of and elaborations on this assessment (5:19-23), they reject the conclusion that follows. If Jesus’ reasons for working on the Sabbath are not considered as anomalies to their present frame of reference, however skeptically and provisionally, no amount of explanation will improve matters. While the Jews might well be forgiven for misunderstanding Jesus’ reference to “temple” (2:19), the decisiveness of the paralytic’s healing ought to have produced more fruit. Whatever the positive inducements offered by the paralytic’s healing and Jesus’ provision of an interpretative context, the reaction is one of negation. Double-mindedness at this point might have proved helpful. In Kuhnian terms, the invitation to make a paradigm shift has badly

29 Culpepper observes, “The conflict with unbelief escalates in chapter 6. There are no other significant conflicts in John, no conflict with demons or nature, no conflict with himself, and little sustained conflict with the disciples.” Culpepper, *Anatomy*, 91.
30 Lee writes “[T]he second level meaning...emerges once the contradiction in the first level meaning is exposed.” Lee, *Symbolic*, 112.
The Copernican revolution has failed; the earth does not revolve around the Son. 31

The healing of the paralytic and its aftermath inaugurates a new phase in the narrative of Jesus’ ministry and represents a missed opportunity of singular importance. Although in the near future there is at least some interaction, from now on Jesus’ relationship with his opponents inexorably deteriorates. From 5:19 on Jesus proceeds to insist on the connection between himself and the Father (5:19-31) and to insist on the validity of his own testimony (5:31-47) as well as to denounce the Jews for the first time (5:39-40, 45-47). Jesus casts the Jews as seeking eternal life in the wrong place, diligent study of the scriptures (5:39) rather than in himself. The issue is not simply one of place or activity; it is to locate eternal life, like Jesus, in the wrong sphere of causality.

The next event in the narrative is the feeding of the five thousand, a group gathered “because they saw the miraculous signs he had performed on the sick.” (6:2) After the feeding, the crowds, (destined to be designated “Jews”), identify Jesus as “the Prophet who is to come into the world” (6:14), a view that is at once correct and

31 Regarding Johannine dualism and paradox in relation to its theology, Barrett notes that, rather than John’s dualism being a static dualism as found in gnosticism, “The distinguishing feature of John’s dualism is its mobility; it is dualism in motion, in becoming. For the keyword is the egeeneto of 1:14.” (C. K. Barrett, “Paradox and Dualism,” in Essays on John, C. K. Barrett, ed. (London: SPCK, 1982), 106. As an example, Barrett observes, “Jesus enters the realm of death and by doing so transfers men out of it into life. Again, the dualism is not static but in motion.” (ibid., 107) In a truly static dualism contradiction obtains and paradox is impossible, paradox having a certain living quality of mystery and potential lacking in the dead incoherence of a contradiction, as in, for example, a square circle. Although Barrett’s precise concerns lie elsewhere, his insights regarding the dynamic of paradox might be applied to the present instance of the Sabbath healing. The Sabbath healing functions in the same way as statements such as “You must be born again,” “whoever drinks the water I give him will never thirst,” “I am the bread of life,” and “My kingdom is not of this world”. Each on its own and in context calls for further exploration and interpretation that can only begin to be achieved in a context beyond surface incongruencies.
grossly wide of the mark. The crowds understand him horizontally as one related somehow to Moses and Deuteronomy 18:18, but fail to integrate their understanding of Jesus into a proper vertical or theological context. Jesus moves away, physically and theologically, from those who would grasp him in this manner. Removed from the crowd, the disciples experience the tempest on the lake. In a kind of living parable of faith, the disciples “were willing to take him into the boat” based on Jesus’ simple words of self identity, “It is I; (εἰμί ἐμὴ) don’t be afraid” and immediately they reach the salvation of the opposite shore. In contrast, through some diligent empirical detective work amidst confusion (6:22-34), the crowds boat across the lake undisturbed, find Jesus physically on the other side of the lake, and that is all.

Refusing to answer the question as to when he arrived, Jesus instead challenges their reliance on miracles throughout 6:26-33. The crowds ask for manna as if (again) Jesus is another Moses, but offer a promising link between heaven and earth when they state “it is written: ‘He gave them bread from heaven to eat.’” (6:31) In response, Jesus affirms the Father as the source or cause of the manna and not Moses. On the back of this association of the manna with the action of the Father, Jesus transfers these associations to an as yet unspecified “he”; “the bread of God is he who comes down from heaven.” (6:34) The reply, “from now on give us this bread” is neutral as to what constitutes the bread, specifying neither manna nor calling attention to the

---

32 The miracle of the feeding, notably more compressed than those in the Synoptics, serves as a parabolic introduction to the discussion that follows. Whatever the actual makeup of the crowds, the content and context of 6:25-59, set in a synagogue (6:59) is thoroughly Jewish.

33 Commenting on the symbolic qualities of this incident Brodie remarks, “...while the disciples were indeed going to Capernaum, they were also going somewhere else- to union with the divine Jesus. He was their “land,” their ultimate goal, and once they had accepted the theophany, they had, in a sense, already arrived.” Brodie, John, 263, 290. cf. Lindars, John, 248.
personification of the bread as “he.” Bread at this point is an open invitation to a conception of bread in terms of synecdoche—bread needs to be understood within a broader frame of reference in the same way that “crown” refers to all aspects of kingship. In a sequential way, Jesus associates bread with manna and manna with the action and provision of God in the past. When fully understood, eating bread functions within the context of the FG as a metaphor for belief in Jesus.

The request of 6:34 and Jesus’ response in 6:35-40 form the climax of this passage; the give and take of previous verses becomes a torrent of theology in 6:35-40 that fills in the content of “bread of life.” Jesus is the bread of life, the “he” or “that which” or “the one who” of 6:33, (ὁ καιρὸς αὐτοῦ), has “come down from heaven” (6:38), the one who “does the will of him who sent me”, the Son who, if looked to and believed, provides eternal life. (6:40) As with the case of Jesus healing on the Sabbath, these statements make perfect sense if seen within the proper frame of reference. The resulting misunderstanding is profound; Jesus is “the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know” who, on earthly logic, did not come down from heaven but came from a location rather more close by. Significantly, at this point and not before, the crowd is designated “the Jews.” (6:41)

In spite of further statements, including Jesus’ attempt to reconnect himself with bread and manna (6:48-51) and advance on this basis (i.e. eating manna resulted in

34 Anderson notes, “Throughout vv. 6:1-15 and vv. 25-40 the crowd is tested as to whether it will see beyond the bread which Jesus gives to the “bread” which Jesus is.” Anderson, “Sitz im Leben,” in Culpepper Critical Readings of John 6, 5.
35 Painter views the change for “the crowds” to “the Jews” in static categories, indicative of “a change of audience and a change of time,” rather than an indication of a failed response. John Painter, “Jesus and the Quest for Eternal Life,” in Culpepper. Critical Readings of John 6, 61-94.
death; believing in Jesus results in eternal life), the response of the Jews remains visionless. They reply “How can this man give us his flesh to eat.” (6:52) While technically best designated misunderstanding, the responses of the Jews represent a radical form of ironic negation. Irony relies on a potential or recognized conflict of understanding, while misunderstanding tends more toward simply not understanding. The border between misunderstanding and irony in these and similar cases is blurred if not crossed. In misunderstanding, the two levels of understanding characteristic of irony is rather flattened out into one- and this is exactly the point. The promising association of bread, manna, and the action of God in human affairs with Jesus himself collapses, negated through an distinctive preoccupation with material reality.

On being told that “no one can come to me unless the Father has enabled him” (6:65), a form of radical transcendent causality, many disciples desert Jesus. When Jesus asks the twelve if they wish to leave too, Peter replies, “Lord to whom shall we go? You have the words of eternal life. We believe and know that you are the Holy One of God.” (6:68-69) Significantly, Peter connects Jesus with eternal life and identifies him in terms which, if less than a full affirmation of deity, affirms that Jesus is greater than a prophet. Unlike the Jews, Peter connects heaven and earth; “eternal life”...
connects earth with heaven and designating Jesus as “the Holy One of God” connects heaven with earth. Rooted in the incarnation itself, heaven and earth as well as God and creation, however estranged, are seen as interpenetrating and inseparable. The stairway to heaven, referred to in 1:51, is envisioned as bearing two way traffic.

The narratives of the paralytic and the feeding of the five thousand and their ensuing discussions both follow a similar pattern: a miraculous event giving rise to an exchange ultimately centered on the frame of reference with which it is to be viewed. In both cases the Jews fail to make the required transition from one frame of reference to another. The materialistic perspective of the Jews prevents them from making the transition to a greater theological reality, one that includes their very material existence. The issue of heaven (or God) or earth as the source and sphere of causality is of primary importance. The Jews limit causality to only one sphere: the material, or if not material, to the past, whereas for Jesus, the ‘cause’ of his actions is vertical, heavenly, of the Father, whose actions Jesus performs. The vertical causality so important to romance is intolerable to this kind of thinking characteristic of negative irony. The decision to put Jesus to death by making use of the realistic means of political manipulation is the natural outcome of one of two radically different ways of viewing things, an incipient conflict rooted in the early stages of the FG’s narrative.

III CONCEPTUAL ISSUES IN IRONY

A) SURVEY AND CLASSIFICATION OF STUDIES OF IRONY IN THE FG
The presence and use of irony in the FG is a well established feature of literary analysis of the FG during the last several decades. Irony in the FG is a major concern of MacRae, Wead, Culpepper, Duke, O’Day, and Staley, with Duke’s *Irony in the Fourth Gospel* being the standard and best work. While Duke is certainly theological, his primary concern is an applied study of irony as a literary structure and device to which the present work is indebted. Duke’s comprehensive classification of irony in the FG need not be repeated here. Like Duke, Culpepper is generally content to explore the presence of irony as a literary phenomenon.

With mixed success, O’Day attempts to move beyond the literary and link narrative mode and theological claim. O’Day notes that for irony to function at all, it is necessary to have two states of knowledge that are in opposition to each other. To see the irony of a situation is to see things with a state of knowledge, one believes, superior to that which is immediately apparent. Irony draws the reader in by requiring the reader to make a series of right judgments in regard to the proper state of knowledge. To illustrate, O’Day offers a detailed analysis of this principle at work in Jesus’ encounter with the Samaritan woman in John 4. For O’Day, revelation in the FG is not to be connected with existential encounter with Jesus as revealer or connected to propositions; rather, revelation occurs in one’s encounter with the text and being drawn into it through irony. She observes, “The locus of revelation is thus seen to lie in the

---

biblical text and in the world created by the words of that text." Thus, for O'Day, narrative mode is a theological claim.

O'Day correctly draws attention to the interplay of narrative mode and theological claim, but reverses the proper order. Rather than narrative mode, in this case irony, making and establishing a theological claim, the theological claims of the FG work themselves out in a narrative that inevitably makes use of irony. To argue the reverse is to a bit like supposing a tennis net supports the posts that hold it up. The eternal divine word coming into the world as flesh and dwelling among us is a new way of thinking at odds with present reality. This is a theological claim. The prologue makes the initial presentation of this claim that is supported and worked out afterwards in the narrative. Irony, with its conflicting states of knowledge, may well be the expected result. As will be argued later, while irony rests on values, beliefs, and perceptions and challenges them, it does not establish them.

Wead notes the author’s point of view, both in terms of physical position and mental understanding, as it relates to irony and other literary devices. The fact that the author’s understanding of the characters and events is superior to those within the gospel allows irony to work; thus, “The “godlike” position of the author is one of the key marks of irony.” Wead also comments on need for a “union of thought between

---

38 O’Day, Revelation, 47. her emphasis.
39 In contrast, O’Day states, “Johannine irony provides the overarching category through which to view Johannine dualism.” ibid., 8.
40 O’Day makes an astute distinction by noting that Johannine irony can be approached in two ways: as a literary device, (Culpepper, Duke) or with reference to John’s theology, (O’Day, MacRae). O’Day, Revelation, 3-6. Here irony will be approached in a more general manner related to questions of value and belief, which inevitably involves questions of theology.
41 Wead, Literary Devices, 1-12.
42 ibid., 50.
the author and his audience" in order for irony to be recognized and employed, a union that finds its foundation in the prologue. He writes,

John acts upon the assumption that his readers have superior knowledge from his prologue, the information he has given them in the entire gospel, and other traditions known to Christians. This superior knowledge forms the basis for the "reality" upon which irony depends. 43

Wead rightly connects irony with the superior point of view and understanding of the author, an author who wishes to put forth a transcendent theological reality and bases his irony upon it.

Staley offers a variation on Johannine irony in his contention that the implied reader is victimized. He comments, "In the prologue, the implied author establishes the implied reader's sense of control over rudimentary aspects of the story, only to undermine the implied reader's superior position through victimization in chapters 4, 7, 11, 13, and 21." 44 The incidents Staley refers to are: the Samaritan woman (4:1-42), where one is led astray by supposing this parody of a type scene will turn out other than it does; Jesus declining his brothers' suggestion that he attend the feast only to attend anyway (7:1-10); the Lazarus incident, including the two Bethanys (10:40-11:18); the introduction of the heretofore unmentioned beloved disciple (13:1-30); and the continuation of the book following its assumed ending in 20:31. Assuming Staley is correct, however much the implied reader is led astray from an insider's position set out initially in the prologue, the irony in the FG remains generally stable so that the

43 ibid., 67-68.
44 Staley, First Kiss, 116.
implied reader’s victimization is limited. It may be noted, however, that what Staley sees as dead ends are perhaps better taken as detours and rough spots. Staley’s reader response methodology is notably horizontal and linear in its emphasis. Thomas as a character embodies the kind of equivocal irony analogous to that outlined in Staley’s narrative analysis. To use E. M. Forster’s categories in this instance, Staley’s reading is notably a “flat” reading, whereas, Thomas provides a “round” exposition of this type of irony.

Moore and Kelber challenge the stability of Johannine irony by arguing that John’s irony collapses into paradox as Jesus, the source of living water to the Samaritan woman, becomes the one who thirsts on the cross. Culpepper frames the issue as follows,

The issue in dispute between those who read John’s irony as stable and those who read it as unstable hinges on whether the narrative context and intertextuality of John 19:28 collapses the distinction between the physical and figurative senses of thirst. Does the text allow the reader to find a vantage point from which the figurative sense is stable or does the text defy such interpretations?

45 Culpepper reads Staley as holding to a Johannine irony that, however provisionally unstable, is stable in the end. see Culpepper, “Reading Johannine Irony,” in Exploring the Gospel of John: In Honor of D. Mooody Smith, R. Alan Culpepper and C. Clifton Black, eds. (Louisville: Westminster John Knox Press, 1996) 198-199. see Staley, First Kiss, 95-118. Charles Giblin offers an alternative reading of the incidents of Jesus brothers and the death of Lazarus. Namely, these pericopes, together with the changing of the water into wine (2:1-11) and the healing of the official’s son (4:43-54), show that Jesus will act on his own terms and not in response to the merely human concerns of others. see Giblin, “Suggestion, Negative Response, and Positive Action in St. John’s Portrayal of Jesus,” NTS 26, 197-211.


Culpepper defends the stability of irony in this instance by noting: (1) that the reader is prepared for the “I thirst” by Jesus statement “Am I not to drink the cup that the Father has given me?” (18:11); (2) Jesus fulfills what the Father has given him, hungering and thirsting for this fulfillment (4:34); (3) “I thirst” fulfills scripture and figuratively announces his own death; (4) Jesus the dying man might reasonably be expected to be thirsty. Well worth a closer look, Culpepper’s defensive strategy is to nuance the senses in which living water and thirst might be used and in doing so must inevitably move beyond the confines of the narrative itself; Moore and Kelber, on the other hand, in effect base their argument for the collapse of irony on what is in reality a collapse of the various uses of water into one sense. Theological collapse becomes narrative collapse. Culpepper interprets the text with all its intertextual and prophetic hills and historical valleys; Moore and Kelber see only water in all its flatness, which may indicate that each side is question begging to some extent. Interpretation becomes a matter of perspective to a significant degree and in this sense one is forced to make clear the paradigm one wishes to employ or, alternatively, one’s interpretative paradigm is exposed. However imposing the theology of John may be, Moore and Kelber prefer the two dimensional fiatland of deconstruction. Even Culpepper’s defense is notably non-theological.

Moore might well agree and say this is precisely his point. Regarding the attempt to clearly differentiate between the figural and literal in the Samaritan woman narrative, he notes, “To draw a clear line between them, as Jesus attempts to do, is about as effective as drawing a line on water.” Moore, 62.
From this survey of treatments of irony in the FG, the broad outlines of classifications of irony begins to emerge, classifications of irony based on values and beliefs and applicable to any context. For Duke, Culpepper, Wead, and O'Day, irony in the FG operates from a stable narrative and theological position. For Staley, the irony is stable, but this does not prevent the reader from being taken for a bit of a ride. For Moore and Kelber, the irony of the FG is radically unstable if not completely collapsed. These three variations on irony will be respectively termed positive, equivocal, and negative irony and may be located on the chart below.

**ROMANCE**
- JESUS
- SUMMER
- REPRESENTATION

**BELIEF OR IDEAL**

**COMEDY**
- PETER
- SPRING
- INTEGRATION

**TRAGEDY**
- PILATE
- FALL
- REDUCTION

**IRONY**
- JEWS/THOMAS
- WINTER
- NEGATION
The content and nature of each type of irony will be developed in detail below. For now it is enough to note the difference in perspectives and observe that in the various treatments of irony in the FG themselves, these interpreters manifest distinct perspectives. But first, use and perception of irony in whatever form, as will be seen, is related to beliefs, values, and world view.

B) VALUES AND BELIEFS IN IRONY

Irony is a slippery concept, difficult or impossible to grasp fully and yet an important aspect of any sophisticated discourse. While it is beyond the purpose and scope of this work to provide a comprehensive classification and definitions of the various types of ironies, a basic framework and definition of irony will be offered as a starting point for further discussion. Muecke’s delineation of the three elements of irony (followed by Duke) will be used, however much it must be admitted that any definition of irony is pregnant of a thousand qualifications.

The first is that irony is double layered. For irony to be present, two levels of understanding must be possible, for “Irony...needs and looks for contradictions and

---

49 Duke, Irony, 14-18. Muecke, The Compass of Irony, 19-21. Stibbe notes, “Irony itself is an oppositional structure which thrives on two orders of meaning contrasting with one another. For a word, a phrase or a sentence to be ironic, it must be possible to imagine someone or some group interpreting something superficially and missing completely the deeper dimension of truth.” Stibbe, Storyteller, 120. Norman Knox offers a similar definition; “Irony may be defined as the conflict of two meanings which has a dramatic structure peculiar to itself: initially, one meaning, the appearance, presents itself as the obvious truth, but when the context of this meaning unfolds, in-depth or in time, it surprisingly discloses a conflicting meaning, the reality, measured against which the first meaning now seems false or limited and, in its self-assurance, blind to its own situation. (his emphasis) Norman Knox, “Irony,” in Dictionary of the History of Ideas, v. II (New York: Charles Scribner’s Sons, 1973) 626-634. For a incisive evaluation of Muecke, see Knox, “On the Classification of Ironies,” Modern Philology 70 (1972) 53-62.
In a famous example, when Mark Antony states that "Brutus is an honorable man," his seemingly straightforward statement when repeated is intended to be taken ironically and to mean precisely the opposite. Thus, irony is often defined as "saying one thing and meaning another," often, but not always true. This relates to the second element, that, irony presents opposition. There must be some perception of at least some degree of opposition between what is said or done and some other possible meaning. Irony cannot be merely double layered, for many statements may be double layered without being in opposition, as, for example, in allegory. In stable irony, the opposition between layers will result in one of the layers being negated in favor of the other. The third element is that irony usually contains an element of unawareness giving rise to someone being victimized. The victim varies according to context and according to the perceptions of the reader. The victim may even be the author.

These three elements of irony suggest that irony is also absolutely related to values, beliefs, and perceptions; irony is not simply a literary device. Several things may be observed. Minimally, the presence of irony intended or not indicates other ways of perceiving something and/or calls something into question and, maximally, irony clearly negates one meaning in favor of another. The difference relates to Booth's familiar designations stable and unstable irony, or irony characterized by negation and questioning respectively. The stability or instability of irony is bound up with the perceptions of its use and perception, which, again, relates to values and beliefs. When considered abstractly as a literary structure, device, or methodology, irony is value

---

50 Muecke, Compass, 129.
neutral. But to confine irony to the status of literary device is to confuse its particular form and manifestation with its relationship to values and beliefs. The actual use of irony and perceptions of its use are absolutely bound up with values, beliefs, and ideals, or at least the presence of irony raises the issue of values and beliefs. 52 ‘Double layered’ is a useful conception of irony, but misleading insofar as it casts irony as a neutral two layered structure after the manner of a cake or a house. While irony is double layered with opposition between the two layers and is in this sense trans-ideological, both the content of each layer and the position of each layer relative to each other rests on perceptions and beliefs of the ironist and those of the audience. According to Hutcheon, “Irony is always (whatever else it might be) a modality of perception- or, better, of attribution- of both meaning and evaluative attitude.”53 Referring to irony as “double layered” provides a convenient way of referring to something inherent to irony, but irony can never be only that.

On encountering irony, the actual choice of one layer over another inevitably involves questions of value or belief. The “superior” position implied by the ironist may not be shared or accepted by an audience. In terms of its perception, Mark Antony’s designation of Brutus as an honorable man affirms, questions, and then negates the notion of Brutus being an honorable man. But Brutus might just as easily have made the same speech about Mark Antony. Or, with regard to values and beliefs, to the extent one perceives Brutus to actually be an honorable man, the irony may

52 This is the major argument of Linda Hutcheon, in Irony’s Edge: The Theory and Politics of Irony (London and New York: Routledge, 1994), and figures prominently in Booth. Hutcheon observes, ‘...irony can and does function tactically in the service of a wide variety of political positions, legitimating or undercutting a wide variety of interests.’ ibid., 10.
53 ibid., 122
perhaps be missed or taken as a self-indictment on the part of Mark Antony. However
strong the tendency to do so, perception of irony does not imply acceptance of the
values implied in its use. On values in irony and its perception Booth observes,

Even if an author presents no argument or position, claiming strict
objectivity, indifference to the reader, or aesthetic impassivity, the reader
will find himself choosing, perhaps unconsciously, to accept or reject the
pose, or stand, or tone, or claim to poetic craft. But irony dramatizes this
choice, forces us into hierarchical participation, and hence makes the
results more actively our own.54

But it is also clear by now why irony causes so much trouble. An
aggressively intellectual exercise that fuses fact and value [my emphasis],
requiring us to construct alternative hierarchies and choose among them;
demands that we look down on other men’s follies or sins; floods us with
emotion-charged value judgments which claim to be backed by the mind;
accuses other men not only of wrong beliefs but of being wrong at their
very foundations and blind to what these foundation imply—all of this
coupled with a kind of subtlety that cannot be deciphered or “proved”
simply by looking closely at the words: no wonder that “failure to
communicate” and resulting quarrels are often found where irony dwells.55

Booth argues that decisions about irony inevitably rest on “knowledge of value” and
faults Frye over his eschewal of such judgments in literary criticism.56 Even simple
understatement or overstatement involves a value judgment. The ironist takes a risk in
being perceived correctly, at least to the extent that being perceived correctly is a
desired intention. Irony also opens up and exposes the beliefs and values of the reader
or perceiver who may or may not make the same interpretative moves as the ironist.

54 Booth, Irony, 41. Booth employs the example of Mark Antony but does not mention that perception
of the irony does not entail an alignment with Mark Antony’s assessment of Brutus.
55 ibid., 44.
56 ibid., 193.
Given the value laden nature of irony, and the many forms in which irony appears, the classification of irony as positive, equivocal, or negative, follows naturally. The reference to irony as double layered suggests as much. The terms positive and negative are of course hardly neutral, the application of these terms in the present work being itself a value judgment, one guided by both a Christian perspective and these terms as might be traditionally conceived.

C) POSITIVE, EQUIVOCAL, AND NEGATIVE IRONY

C.1. POSITIVE IRONY

In positive irony, a known, accepted, or offered belief or standard is assumed or affirmed by which departures from it are ironized or negated. Positive irony is manifestly present in the overall theological structure of the gospel and is the primary type of irony used in the FG. Supremely logocentric, the FG has a definite theology and point of view to which it aspires to cultivate belief (20:31) and negate unbelief (3:18). Introduced and grounded theologically in the prologue, Jesus is the ideal of the FG and the center of its function as romance; it is on the basis of who Jesus is as “the Word made flesh” that most of the irony in the FG operates. Because he is God and because he is human, Jesus ironizes this heretofore unbridged dichotomy between ideal and experience, between God and a fallen world. The treatments of Johannine irony by Duke, O’Day, and Wead assume the position of positive irony. The FG contains
positive, equivocal, and negative irony, the latter two having been explored in relation to Thomas and the Jews respectively.

The theological basis on which irony in the FG operates as positive irony very much relates to the familiar “dualism” of the FG. The dualism of the FG has less to do with an upper world meeting a lower world as much as it has to do with a proper understanding of Jesus, earthly life included, in light of who he claimed to be. While irony in the FG is a matter of perceiving it in its various literary forms, such as those identified by Duke, it is much more an issue related to perception, faith and belief, and theological understanding of Jesus. In the FG perception of Jesus as the Word, the “Holy one of God,” or as “My Lord and my God” is a matter of faith and belief; yet belief and faith consist of a proper perception and understanding of Jesus as the Word, the “Holy one of God,” or as “My Lord and My God.” The dualism suggested by darkness and light, blindness and sight, etc., forms the basis for an analogy with irony. The dualism of the FG relates to the frequent use of irony and relates to conflicting interpretation of the same data. The advantage offered by the prologue is a two-edged sword; to perceive the irony without belief is a radical form of self-indictment.

Exhibiting positive irony in another form, Swift’s *A Modest Proposal* offers the ostensibly serious proposal for solving the problem of poverty and hunger among the Irish by using surplus Irish children as table delicacies for the rich. The problem of “What can we do to relieve the poor? is transposed into “What can we do to be relieved of the poor?” The true value structure assumed is based on the sanctity and value of human life and is employed ironically to expose and negate its opposite,

---

57 Muecke, *The Compass of Irony*, 74.
mistratment of the Irish. The value structure of *A Modest Proposal* is polarized and much of its power stems from feigning the exact opposite of what it proposes, hiding its satire behind the straight face of irony. The greater tone of militancy and invective, or the greater the emotional element, the more irony moves toward satire.\(^{38}\) Although it works by negation characteristic of irony, the type of irony employed by Swift is positive irony in that it assumes a recognized value or belief, one whose value remains, whatever the particular circumstance, in order to negate its opposite. Swift’s “Modest Proposal” bridges the gap between the eternal and present by employing a principle assumed to be of enduring validity and directing the application of this principle to a specific circumstance.

C.2. EQUIVOCAL IRONY

Irony in other works is not so straightforward and occupies the swampy middle ground of equivocal or unstable, or paradoxical irony. For example, in Erasmus’ “In Praise of Folly,” Folly is the name given to a personification of a certain kind of wisdom on which the world operates. No one gets married or attempts anything without Folly working her spell. While the work is ironic in that it contains irony, the extent of its irony is difficult to determine. Affirmation and negation, principle and experience, are mixed like so much iron and clay, painted as a kind of wisdom, and presented to the reader for evaluation. Folly deserves a measure of respect, but to adopt Folly as a comprehensive explanation of things would be folly of an ill-informed kind. In a similar vein, Thackerey’s *Vanity Fair*, an ambiguous but value affirming ironic novel, one without heroes, also affirms and negates: Becky Sharp is at once

subject to criticism and sympathy, responsible for her actions yet an indictment of her society and times.\(^{59}\) Irony of this type relies on an appreciation of opposites, an approach having similarities to the critical realism of Reinhold Niebuhr.

The book of Esther displays equivocal irony of another sort. Whereas “In Praise of Folly” can be said to be intended to occupy a middle ground, Esther presents a case where an interpretative dilemma obtains. While Esther does not explicitly mention God, an implicit theology seems to affirm the sovereignty of God over human affairs.\(^{60}\) What is most unclear is the relationship of Mordecai and Esther to the plans and actions of God of which they, presumably, are a part. Or are they? Is their attempt to save themselves and their people one of heroic, courageous, and principled action or are they unwitting secular instruments of the sovereignty of God? The issue is therefore not of a middle ground, but of polar opposites with each interpretation vying for control. One interpretation negates the other, but which one is correct? The matter is further complicated by whether this interpretative oscillation was intended by the author or not. Is this the clever strategy of a genius to draw in the reader, mitigate opposites, or simple authorial bungling? Credit or blame are equally plausible. And, once recognized, the reader is inevitably sucked into a debate involving judgments of value and belief. The ironic/heroic dilemma also affects interpretation of Shakespeare’s Henry V, Marlowe’s Dr. Faustus, Flannery O’Conner’s Wise Blood, John’s treatment of Pilate, and countless others. Even Don Quixote, ironic and satirical but sympathetic


to its victim, may be read as an indictment of a society that has lost its ideals. The mixed reception of Esther by both Jews and Christians no doubt reflects something of these interpretative difficulties. Esther and “In Praise of Folly” may be classed as equivocal, although their ambiguity is of a radically different kind.

Equivocal irony can also be expressed by means of a naïve speaker uttering ironies unawares. Commenting favorably on the life of Uncle Silas Phelps and his preaching in particular, Huckleberry Finn observes, “He never charged nothin’ for his preaching, and it was worth it, too.” Near the conclusion of The Tempest Miranda observes, “O brave new world that has such people in it.” Miranda refers to “beauteous mankind” but her words can be taken ironically, as Aldous Huxley did for the title of his negative utopia. Recalling the tendency of the FG toward double meaning, Thomas’ statement to go that “we may die with him” may be of the same cloth; a statement presented in the narrative as ostensibly naïve, as it is usually taken to be, but one that on further examination means something entirely different, functioning as a trap laid out for the clever. On this reading, Thomas is presented, like Socrates, as something of an eiron, as one only pretending to be naïve or presented as such, but one who, unlike Socrates, in the end is ironized in his irony.

In Jane Austen’s Pride and Prejudice, a work, like the FG, of shifting perceptions and judgments explored through character, Mr. Bennet is similar to Thomas in that both are archetypal ironized ironists. From the detachment of his library, Mr. Bennet presides over his silly wife and five daughters, some of whom are silly and some not. The absurdities of life and wife supply a feast of irony. The arrival
of his cousin Mr. Collins becomes an event of particular enjoyment. Prompted by Mr. Bennet to comment on his “talent of flattering with delicacy,” Mr. Collins offers suitably inane remarks. We then read,

Mr. Bennet’s expectations were fully answered. His cousin was as absurd as he had hoped, and he listened to him with the keenest enjoyment, maintaining at the same time the most resolute composure of countenance, and except in the occasional glance at Elizabeth, requiring no partner in his pleasure.

Whether or not Elizabeth shares his pleasure, the narrative presents the reader with an invitation to do so. Unlike Thomas, whose irony is easily passed over, the effect of this interchange is to establish Mr. Bennet as someone on the inside, someone in the know with whom sophisticated readers might well identify. But to exchange glances with Mr. Bennet is to run the risk of (not) seeing as he does.

Mr. Bennet’s irony and detachment fall under scrutiny on the scandalous departure of his daughter Lydia with the unscrupulous Mr. Wickham. Concluding an unsuccessful search for them in London, he returns home, saying nothing of the affair. But prompted by Elizabeth, who cautions him “not to be too severe on himself,” he remarks, “...No, Lizzy, let me once in my life feel how much I have been to blame. I am not afraid of being over-powered by the impression. It will pass away soon enough.” The remark is at once sincere and an escape, the irony being that the impression does “pass away soon enough,” perhaps too soon. Mr. Bennet regains something of his resolute composure of countenance and, turning his wit on his daughter Kitty, threatens to lock her away from society.

Kitty, who took all these threats in a serious light, began to cry.
‘Well, well,” said he, ‘do not make yourself unhappy. If you are a good girl for the next ten years, I will take you to a review at the end of them.’

To the extent that the reader has earlier feasted at the table of irony with Mr. Bennet, this series of exchanges is perhaps lighthearted and funny, propelling the reader over the real irony when Mr. Bennet’s irony and wit are perhaps wearing a bit thin. At the very least, Mr. Bennet at this point is an equivocal figure, the human qualities and sensitivity the situation demands having been exchanged, like a birthright, for the pottage of irony’s detachment and superior perspective. To exchange glances with him at this point is to risk seeing one’s self in the mirror.

Mr. Bennet’s descent into blindness reaches its nadir during the events immediately preceding Darcy’s engagement with Elizabeth. He has no knowledge at all of Darcy’s efforts in patching up Lydia’s marriage to Wickham and no knowledge of Darcy and Elizabeth’s past involvement or their growing affection, recalling only his daughter’s past disapprobation of the man. Lady Catherine, Darcy’s aunt, calls on the Bennets to denounce the match, but being detached, the meaning of this event passes him by. Mr. Bennet reads Mr. Collins’ letter concerning the inadvisability of the marriage of Elizabeth to Mr. Darcy ironically and satirically and with exquisite delight, painfully inflicting his wit on his daughter. For Elizabeth, “It was necessary to laugh, when she would rather have cried. Her father had most cruelly mortified her...she could do nothing but wonder at such a want of penetration...” In so doing he fails, like Thomas, to perceive or accept the obvious clues to the wonder-full nature of present events, in his case that particularly social phenomenon of love and marriage. The scene
is one of extended irony, an irony made more effective by Mr. Bennet having traded places with Mr. Collins as ironic victim and being equally or less perceptive than his silly wife. Yet through Elizabeth’s reactions, the reader is cautioned against ironizing with indelicacy because of its social effects.

There are a number of parallels between Mr. Bennet and Thomas. Paradigmatic of an equivocally ironic point of view, both make astute observations on their respective situations from a position of superior insight and, while both remain within their social context, do so with relative ambiguity and detachment. From this position, both descend through positions of equivocal interpretation on into misunderstanding and blindness at which point both fail to perceive events as they really are. Further, both fail to accept evidence to the contrary, no matter how obvious or compelling. But, within the respective works in which they appear, both Mr. Bennet and Thomas are redeemable, experiencing a reversal of circumstances through the efforts of others. The difference between them concerns the nature and content of the worlds in which they operate; in the FG the world is one dominated by theological concerns related to present experience, in *Pride and Prejudice*, the world is profoundly social. Thomas and Mr. Bennet must operate within their respective worlds; for Thomas his ironic perspective has theological consequences whereas social consequences obtain for Mr. Bennet. Yet it is worth noting that both function as social misfits, each to a certain degree strangers in their own worlds. For Thomas though, deliverance happens as theology is reintegrated with experience. For Mr. Bennet deliverance occurs on social terms through his daughter’s marriage to Darcy and through it the restoration of the
family fortunes. However different the contexts or narratives in which they occur, both are experiments in equivocal irony in character form. And through a similar process both Mr. Bennet and Thomas present the same thing: the ironization of ironist.

Thomas instead sees too early, his observations, like Austen’s Mr. Bennet, also paradigmatic of an equivocally ironic point of view, are astute and premature. Undershooting the mark, Thomas is an ironic character with comic tendencies who fails to anticipate the glory to follow. In contrast, Peter overshoots the mark and fails to anticipate the sorrows and defeats consequent on circumstance and experience. Thomas is to some degree and ironized *eiron*, while Peter is analogous to the *alazon*, or braggart. For Thomas the resurrection delivers hope while for Peter the cross brings restoration and temperance.

C.3. NEGATIVE IRONY

With respect to values and beliefs, another type of irony exists which may be characterized as negative irony. In this type of irony, a known, accepted, or offered belief or standard is negated or rendered absurd by applying it to a difficult circumstance. Present experience proves decisive over any assertion of transcendent beliefs, as, for example, in Voltaire’s reaction against the providence of God related to the horrors of the Lisbon earthquake or similar reactions to the evils of the twentieth century. White comments,

The archetypal theme of Satire [or irony] is the precise opposite of this Romantic drama of redemption; it is, in fact, a drama of diremption, a drama dominated by the apprehension that man is ultimately a captive of the world rather than its master, and by the recognition that, in the final analysis, human consciousness and will are always inadequate to the task of
overcoming definitively the dark force of death, which is man's unremitting enemy.\textsuperscript{61}

Negative irony tends to be parasitic; without some belief or value, even if held only by a few, it has no two levels to set against each other and hence nothing to ironize.\textsuperscript{62} In its negation of some belief or ideal without offering some other in its place, negative irony is a form of deconstruction, a radical negation of any pretensions to two levels of meaning. If two levels of meaning are allowed, they cannot be integrated in any meaningful way. Irony of this kind is the archetype of the anti-hero in which persons holding a belief or ideal worthy of acting upon are viewed as naive, phoney, dangerous, or any combination thereof. Booth comments,

\begin{quote}
[A] good deal of literary controversy [exists] today in which critics, unable to believe that an author could really contradict their own beliefs, conclude that he is being ironic. Pious authors cannot possibly have meant their piety, defenders of authority must have been kidding...Jane Austen must have been ironic in her treatment of Fanny Price in \textit{Mansfield Park} because- well, because the Crawfords whom she takes to be so deficient morally are really-to us- so much more interesting.\textsuperscript{63}
\end{quote}

The preference for the morally deficient Crawfords sheds more light on the views of the interpreter than the novel itself. In recent American politics, this hero/anti-hero polarity goes a long way toward explaining the admiration of some for either Ronald Reagan or

\textsuperscript{61} White, \textit{Metahistory}, 9. n.b. "dismemberment" means "forcible separation."

\textsuperscript{62} Gans notes "...by its very expression, irony resentfully affirms the authority of the form it has denied. The ironic deconstruction of the hierarchy between words and things pays homage to this hierarchy by implying that it presides over its own deconstruction." Eric Gans, \textit{Signs of Paradox: Irony, Resentment, and Other Mimetic Structures} (Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1997) 68.

\textsuperscript{63} Booth, \textit{Ironic}, 82. It is worth noting in passing the main characters of \textit{Mansfield Park} generally correspond to the four archetypal patterns: Fanny Price as romance, Mariah Bertram as tragic, the Crawfords as ironic, and Edmund Bertram as comic.
Bill Clinton, an admiration that usually and predictably corresponds to loathing for the other.

Negation functions in these simple verbal ironies. Job comments, “No doubt you are the people and wisdom will die with you” he negates the conventional wisdom of his friends, “wisdom” and “friends” being ironic notions in themselves in this case.

A recent entertainment magazine offered a cover story entitled “Party Politics,” a title referring to scandal of a certain type that resulted in the fall of Harold Macmillan’s government. An opinion page article entitled “America: Always a Class Act” highlighted the existence of a class system in America. In both cases, a standard or natural meaning assumed from the context of wider use and on which the irony rests is negated, effecting a complete reversal as the original meanings of “party” and “class” are transposed into ironic commentary.

On a larger scale, James Joyce’s Ulysses offers an ironic transposition of the Homeric epic. The lengthy homecoming of Odysseus the hero becomes one day in the life of ordinary Dublin in all its glory, the unfaithful Molly replaces the steadfast Penelope, and the stylistic performance of language becomes and end in itself.

Certainly aware of what he is doing, Joyce also speaks for his times. Muecke observes,

For most ‘serious’ writers, whether poets, novelists, or dramatists, irony is now much less often a rhetorical or dramatic strategy which they may or may not decide to employ, and much more often a mode of thought silently imposed upon them by the general tendency of the times.64

When fully realized, it is in negative irony of this type that irony and negation become part of a habit of thinking and world view characterized by concern for the

---

64 Muecke, Compass of Irony, 10.
contradictions and problems of the immediate here and now within a context of isolation, frustration, and limitation. What Steiner calls “the wager on transcendence” is seen a bet not worth making.\textsuperscript{65} The metaphysics of absence banishes the metaphysics of presence. The indecipherabilities of life, and language, always present, become decisive, comprising a context in which the work of God becomes unrecognizable.

There is perhaps no better example of this kind of perspective than Beckett’s \textit{Waiting for Godot}. In contrast to the hero of romance who acts upon and displays an ideal, for Estragon there is “Nothing to be done.” Stasis supplants the quest. Whatever “happens” in the play shows that nothing happens, the situation is static and sterile.\textsuperscript{66} Typical of irony, there is no plot and only the barest story. The hero, Godot, whoever or whatever he is, never arrives so as to render the lives of Estragon and Vladimir meaningful, nor is he at all likely to, rendering mere reference to his arrival absurd and meaningless. The waiting is absurd, but so is travel. Williams remarks, “Pozzo and Lucky belong to the world of effort and action; Vladimir and Estragon to the world of resignation and waiting. Neither response is more significant than the other, in any ultimate way: the travelers fall and the tramps wait in disappointment.”\textsuperscript{67}

Beckett forever seeks to keep the present radically in front of the audience or reader to enforce the “directly communicated experience” of waiting.\textsuperscript{68} Whenever the dialogue threatens to “mean” something and transcend circumstance, it is negated by

\textsuperscript{65} George Steiner, \textit{Real Presences: Is there anything in what we say?} (London and Boston: Faber and Faber, 1989) 214.

\textsuperscript{66} Chatman notes, “Joyce, Woolf, Ingmar Bergman, and other modern artists do not treat plot as an intricate puzzle to be solved. It is not a change in the state of affairs, but simply the state of affairs itself.” Seymour Chatman, \textit{Story and Discourse: Narrative Structure in Fiction and Film} (Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1978) 92.


\textsuperscript{68} Raymond Williams, \textit{Drama from Ibsen to Brecht} (London: The Hogarth Press, 1993) 303.
some means, prolonging and intensifying the sense of waiting. Estragon’s incomprehension and indifference negates Vladimir’s attempt to talk of the two thieves, or the Savior. Contrary to expectation, Godot is never identified, let alone arrives, focusing attention on his ever present non-arrival. Near the end, the building desire to leave and wander in the Pyrenees, idyllic and hopeful, is deflated with a scatological remark, stifling hope within the bounds of present reality. Even suicide, that most final of all commentaries made on life, to some degree sublime in its sadness, is impossible of accomplishment. Estragon removes his belt to hang himself and his trousers fall down. Dialogue does not always follow or flow, interrupted with silence, frustrating expectations. Even the instances of comic dialogue and repartee serve to ground the action radically in the present, counterbalancing any attempt to consider any other situation or frame of reference wherein one might search for meaning. The play is focused in the here and now, even to the point of calling attention to the stage and the performance as performance as a means to accomplish this. After one interchange, Vladimir and Estragon also comment on themselves,

Estragon: “That wasn’t such a bad little canter.”
Vladimir: “Yes, but now we’ll have to find something else.”

At one point Estragon leaves the stage to relieve himself. Lucky, perhaps the most philosophical character, is weighted with baggage and roped by his neck, jerked, as the audience is, held fast by this constant reminder of present experience.

---

81 ibid., 65.
The central emphasis of frustrated waiting in *Godot* is very much the same as the waiting of the man at the pool in John chapter 5. The pool itself, as a potential but sterile source of hope, functions as ironic commentary analogous to the tree in *Godot*. John 5:3 describes the scene, "Here a great number of disabled people used to lie—the blind, the lame, the paralyzed." None can move well and some not at all. In any case, and unlike the royal official, they do not move but lie about in a scene of static hopelessness. Perhaps the addition of 5:4 was an attempt to insert some hope into this dismal scene and make sense of it. Estragon and Vladimir wait— as does the paralytic—who waits, and has waited, for a Godot like deliverance from some ill-defined healing not available at the pool. In a Catch-22, because he is lame, the paralytic cannot enter the pool yet to enter the pool is his only hope of being cured; his hopes and waiting endlessly frustrated. Yet, because the dubious healing cannot be accessed, its effectiveness can never be tested and proved false or true. Waiting of this kind renders life at once meaningful and absurd. For the tramps and the paralytic alike, deliverance on the terms they live by is impossible of accomplishment. They can only pretend. Both continue in a condition of unstated negative irony. When Jesus asks, "Do you want to get well?" (5:6), in disjointed fashion the answer supplied by the paralytic does not really apply to the question. By failing to integrate his healing into the meta-narrative of the FG, for the paralytic, the healing, however fortunate, is meaningless. The reader is implicitly cautioned: without faith the advent of the messiah and the offer “to get well” may result in nothing more than blindness, or, as Jesus cautions the paralytic (5:14), something worse.
Whereas the FG relentlessly demands that its characters and readers take into account the transcendent world and its claims to render this world meaningful, *Godot* is equally relentless in terminating these moves. In *Godot* the fallen world or radical experience continues its triumph over the world of wonder and grace. In the FG, the cross achieves something whereas in *Godot* it is a means of ironic commentary. Representation, in the sense of 'this means this and that' characteristic of romance, in *Godot* has broken down; in *Godot*, this is all there is. In such an environment, metaphor itself survives as a tenacious and unwanted weed and then only precariously. The hero is banished because there is nothing to stand for. The arrival of the messiah in the FG both contrasts and coincides with the non-arrival of *Godot*; for some, the arrival of the messiah is seen to the extent that he is placed into the proper meta-narrative, the messiah and his meta-narrative being inseparable; for others, failure of the meta-narrative coincides with his rejection. For the latter, life is reduced to *Godot* like waiting.

By its combination of temporal waiting and negation of the transcendent, *Godot* reduces life to a kind of one dimensional view of reality. This can be interpreted with reference to the end of modernity, with its angst over the (non)arrival of meaning, or the incipient arrival of post-modernity with its acceptance and unconcern that Godot will never arrive. Nealon interprets *Godot* as transitional. On Lucky’s think he comments,

The text of Lucky’s speech is akin to the product of taking all the great works of Western thought, putting them through a paper shredder, and pasting them back together at random...Lucky’s think... is a narrative

---

that disrupts and deconstructs all notions of universal, ahistorical, consistent meta-narrative - all Godots.\footnote{ibid., 47.}

For Nealon, \textit{Godot} is the tyranny of meta-narrative. Citing the following dialogue, Nealon argues that Vladimir and Estragon are “on the verge of a deconstructive breakthrough, but their dependence on the meta-discourse of Godot holds them back.”\footnote{ibid. 50}

\begin{tabular}{l}
Estragon\ldots Lets go far away from here. \\
Vladimir\ We can’t. \\
Estragon\ Why not? \\
Vladimir\ We have to come back to-morrow \\
Estragon\ What for? \\
Vladimir\ To wait for Godot… \\
Estragon\ \ldots And if we dropped him? (Pause) If we dropped him? \\
Vladimir\ He’d punish us.\footnote{Beckett, \textit{Godot}, 93.}\end{tabular}

For Nealon, \textit{Godot} implies or anticipates the move toward postmodernism and the rejection of meta-narrative. The breakthrough Nealon argues for, the one separating the modern from the postmodern, is the rejection of grand narratives in favor of the celebration and freedom of language games.\footnote{ibid. 51.} In such contexts, however, the meaning-fullness of language tends to decline. For Jesus and the Jews, because they do not share the same meta-narrative or frame of reference, the conversation tends to move away from any sort of serious dialogue and more toward a talking past each other. At one point Jesus admits as much, saying “Why is my language not clear to you?” (8:43) In such situations of antithetical paradigms, the only recourse is to satire
and a radical denunciation of the opposing side. The healing of the paralytic and its immediate aftermath cast a long shadow over succeeding chapters. The ensuing narratives are narratives of frustration. To fail to enter the meta-narrative or frame of reference of the FG is to participate in the blindness of the Pharisees and ultimately to place one’s self by the pool.

Ironic, whether positive, neutral, or negative, because it rests fundamentally on values and beliefs and not narrative structure is characterized by the possibility of narrative disembodiment and narrative stagnation. While irony may be embodied in and carried by a character, as is the case with Thomas and Mr. Bennet, there is no necessary reason why this must be so. Irony may be found in situations requiring a narrative progression, as for example in tragic irony, but this need not be so for irony to be present. In this sense, irony tends to be more of a state of mind or perception more easily removed from narrative progression than the other archetypes, or, looked at another way, any narrative progression in irony tends to be borrowed from tragedy or comedy. Romance, tragedy, and comedy each require embodiment in a character and some form of narrative progress whereas irony does not. A tragedy without character where nothing happens remains unthinkable whereas the same thing cannot be said about irony. In this way, the characteristics of irony as an archetype requiring neither

---


77 In comedy this is true to a lesser but nonetheless significant degree. For comedy to be “transitive” rather than “intransitive” (see chapter on comedy) embodiment in a narrative progression is required.
character nor movement correspond to associations of irony with isolation, detachment, and sterility.

IV CONCLUSION

In summary, whatever the actual form irony takes, be it verbal, dramatic, situational, etc., (the classifications are endless) irony necessarily involves issues of belief or value at some level of perception. With this in mind, irony may be characterized as positive, equivocal, or negative with reference to the values and beliefs on which it operates. Insofar as their respective value structures are accepted, both positive and negative irony are stable whereas equivocal irony is unstable or ambiguous.

In romance, the world of experience is integrated into some system of belief and affirmation and is therefore meaningful in terms of and beyond present experience. In positive irony, the belief or ideal remains constant but it is recognized that experience has departed from it. The stable belief or ideal forms a basis on which to evaluate present experience through irony and satire as, for example, when the mercy of God forms the position against which Jonah is satirized. Negative irony forms the polar opposite of romance and the two are virtually incompatible. Tragedy and comedy may each contain irony, but of a kind that tends to be based on a situation and tends to resist polarization over questions of value or ideology. The actions of Agamemnon, Oedipus, and Hamlet tend to be ambiguous because all experience the tension between ideals and circumstance. Characteristic of tragic heroes, Hamlet waives between irony and
romance, inaction and action, and philosophic detachment and social involvement. Likewise, Pilate waivers between Jesus and the Jews with similar dilemmas. In romance and also in positive irony, an ideal or belief is assumed by which experience is to be governed or interpreted; in negative irony any such value or belief is negated by its inability to govern or interpret present experience or render it meaningful. In romance the concern is for the transcendent and eternal; for tragedy, the past, while in irony the concern lies in the temporal and present. With it emphasis on possibility and hope, comedy is the archetype of the future.
COMEDY AND PETER

"...a comic character is generally comic in proportion to his ignorance of himself. The comic person in unconscious."

Bergson, Laughter, 16

1 INTRODUCTION

A literary analysis of Peter's series of encounters with Jesus follows, in which particular attention will be given to the dynamics of each scene, the growth of Peter's understanding of Jesus, and the dynamics of their relationship with a view to laying the groundwork for the study of Peter as an archetypal comic character. Like all characters in the FG, Peter must be understood in relation to Jesus. The story of Peter is less about his encounter with Jesus and his faith response, as is the case with Nicodemus, the Samaritan woman, or Pilate, and more about the possibilities and perils of that faith in action. The growth of Peter's understanding of Jesus will be traced in relation to his knowledge as it reflects that outlined in the prologue and in its application to concrete reality as taught and exemplified by Jesus himself. Peter exhibits the archetypal comic pattern of moving, with mistakes, toward an integration of beliefs and reality.
II PETER IN THE FOURTH GOSPEL

A. PETER AS FOLLOWER

The prologue tells us that "the word became flesh and dwelt among us" (1:14) and that this Word was testified to by John the Baptist (1:6-7, 14-18). Jesus in the FG appears in maturity without benefit of birth accounts that mark him out as different and designate him in any way, yet we are told that "he was in the world" (1:10). In 1:19-25 the Baptist’s task is to resist identification of himself as the Christ, Elijah, or the Prophet. Then in 1:26-28 the Baptist makes known to those in his hearing the fact that this special person is among you, "One whom you do not know." If the logic of the prologue is allowed to play out in the text, the question is not that Jesus of Nazareth is the Messiah, as is emphasized in Matthew and Luke, but that this "Word made flesh" this one who "comes after me [who] is greater than me because he was before me", this mystery man is Jesus. The Baptist, we are twice informed (1:31, 33), "did not recognize him." The Baptist’s lack of recognition, a telling fact in its own right, is overcome by Jesus being designated by the Spirit through the Spirit’s descending and remaining upon him in 1:32, an event which is linked to the testimony of the Father, "the one who sent me to baptize with water." In the Johannine discourse, the historical witness of the Baptist merges with the discourse witness that the "word made flesh" is Jesus, simultaneously the "lamb of God" and "Son of God."

---

1:35-51 narrates the decrease of the Baptist and the increase of Jesus as the former's disciples become followers of the latter as they move from the Baptist's own witness to encountering Jesus for themselves. Two of John's disciples hear John speak and follow Jesus (1:37). Filling out the story narrated in 1:38-39 a bit by combining the details of the separate verses, it may be surmised that these two disciples spent a significant amount of time with Jesus and were taught by him. One of these two, Andrew, finds his brother Simon Peter and informs him, "We have found the Messiah." It may be that they found the Messiah on the basis of looking for him based on the witness of the Baptist, or in general terms from the Old Testament itself, or, most likely both. Thus Andrew, the Baptist's disciple and instructed by him, is in turn instructed by Jesus himself and designates the Messiah as Jesus to his brother Peter. The point here is that on the terms of both story and discourse Jesus is presented to Peter by his twice taught brother Andrew as the Messiah. Whatever the precise content of Peter's understanding of Jesus at this point, the fact remains that in the FG it may be reasonably inferred that Peter begins with significantly developed knowledge of Jesus, being more or less aligned with the designation of the Messiah as Jesus right from the start. Significantly, Peter in this passage is passive, the initiative coming from Andrew and, more importantly, Jesus himself. Like his call, Peter is to learn that his mission must be defined and directed by Jesus himself.

---

2 The term "Messiah" is found in the New Testament only here and 4:25. Bruce notes that, while the term in the Old Testament referred to the roles of prophet, priest, and king, at the dawn of the Christian era messianic expectation term took on a predominately royal form. See F. F. Bruce, The Gospel of John (Basingstoke, U. K.: Pickering Paperbacks, 1983) 57. As will be seen, Peter very much displays this understanding.

3 Brodie observes, "...the call of Peter...is like the call of David, the outsider who, by sheer choice on the Lord's part, was brought in and given a position of leadership." Thomas Brodie, The Gospel
A final confession of faith from Peter's own lips does not occur until 6:68-69. Peter's statement is in many ways equivalent to his confessions in Mt. 16:16, Mk. 8:28 and Lk. 9:20. The differences, however, are more striking than the similarities, first of all in regard to the differing narrative contexts of the Synoptics and John. The Synoptics present Peter's confession as a high point, the culmination of what has gone on before that indicates a new level of understanding. The situation in John 6 is quite different. Following the feeding of the 5000 and the walking on water, Jesus confronts the crowds with his teaching that he is the bread from heaven, a difficult teaching that gives rise to numerous misunderstandings. To those who grumble or find the teaching difficult to understand or accept, Jesus offers further challenges culminating in his statement that “This is why I told you that no-one can come to me unless the Father has enabled him.” (6:65). Jesus’ statement is deliberately provocative, having its intended effect of separating the committed wheat from the uncommitted chaff. (6:66) As many leave, Jesus asks, “You do not want to leave too, do you?” (6:67) Peter’s reply follows. As compared to the Synoptics, Peter’s statement comes as the result of a challenge, as the passing of a test by the denial of a negative course of action and remaining loyal when others turn away. Indeed, the notion of testing might be extended back to everything that has happened since the disciples calling and extended forward to future events as well.


The content of Peter’s statement in John differs significantly from the Synoptics. Peter’s rhetorical question, “Lord, to whom shall we go?” excludes other possibilities. The designation “Lord” can mean much or little, but in this context probably means much. Jesus offers “words of eternal life” implying that all other words are of a different and lesser category. In the FG, Peter does not say that Jesus is the Christ, or Messiah, or a teacher sent from God, as does Nicodemus, but that he is “the Holy One of God.” The designation “Messiah” has already been connected to Peter, albeit indirectly, and the designation “Holy One of God” likely includes and advances these concepts. By naming Jesus in this manner, Peter places Jesus alongside God himself as over against those who saw Jesus as a second Moses and would make him King earlier in chapter 6.

In line with the theology and rhetoric of the FG discussed earlier, 6:69 presents a Johannine epistemology in miniature. Peter says, “And we have believed and have come to know that you are the Holy One of God.” Significantly, both verbs appear in the perfect tense. On the terms of the FG, belief, however mature or immature, cannot be separated from knowledge and vice versa. Peter’s belief allows him to come to know certain things about Jesus, although parts of his belief will prove

---

7 Moloney states, “For the first time in the narrative a character has expressed faith in Jesus for the right reason: His origins. The holiness of Jesus comes from the fact that he is of God.” Moloney’s specific point is debatable, but is in line with the more general point argued here. Francis Moloney, *The Gospel of John* (Collegeville, Minnesota: The Liturgical Press, 1996) 229.
8 Carson notes, “Knowledge in the Fourth Gospel is frequently personal (it is knowledge of God and of Jesus Christ that constitutes eternal life, 17:3), but it is no less frequently propositional (as here: the disciples know that Jesus is such and such).” See, D. A. Carson, *The Gospel According to John* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1991) 303, his emphasis. Carson (303) and Barrett (81ff) note that knowledge and belief are virtually synonymous. C. K. Barrett, *The Gospel According to John: An Introduction with Commentary and Notes on the Greek Text* (London: SPCK, 1978).
to be in excess of his knowledge. Pilate, on the other hand, illustrates the dangers of knowledge in excess of belief and of attempting to isolate the two.

These accounts of Peter in 1:41-42 and 6:68-69 together place Peter firmly on the inside, as one with a significant and developed understanding of Jesus coupled with a tested devotion to him. As if to emphasize the point, Peter’s statement of belief is juxtaposed against the mention of Judas as betrayer immediately following. At the same time, the separating out of Judas as betrayer offers a corrective postscript to Peter’s all too inclusive “We” of 6:69.

B. PETER AS LEADER

B.1 PETER IN CHAPTER 13

Chapter 13 signals a change in emphasis in John. Tovey notes “…the focus shifts from the public arena of proclamation, where the foremost questions have to do with Jesus’ identity and status and response to him, to the inner circle of the believer, where the issues are discipleship and bearing witness.” But at least one participant in the story fails to make this same move. In this context Peter reappears and figures prominently in the narratives of the footwashing and predictions of denials. While the incidents overlap, with respect to Peter the discourse moves from one emphasis to another. Peter begins the chapter as a firmly committed follower of Jesus, one who has persevered through some trials with his faith and commitment intact. But in chapter 13, a rift appears between the kind of discipleship Jesus has in mind for himself in

---

9 Derek Tovey, *Narrative Art and Act in the Fourth Gospel* (JSNTS 151, Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1997) 107.
relation to the Father and for his followers as over against the kind of mission and 
discipleship Peter himself has in mind for himself and for Jesus. Peter plans a mission 
of triumph while Jesus intends one of service leading to death. Peter is firmly a 
follower of Jesus insofar as his understanding of Jesus is concerned, but is mistaken in 
his conception of how being a follower of Jesus works itself out in time and space, 
representing "faith without understanding."^10

Having concluded its narration of Jesus' public ministry, the FG now turns its 
attention to Jesus' concern for his followers. Jesus knows that his hour is at hand 
(13:1) and seeks by the symbolic action of washing the disciples feet to demonstrate the 
kind of self giving love they should have for one another. Peter makes the obvious 
conclusion that the Jesus' action implies even before Jesus explains it later (13:13-17); 
namely, that if Peter is to be a follower of this Lord and master and if this Lord and 
master performs acts of menial service to others, it implies that 1) this Lord and master 
is demeaning himself in the eyes of his followers, and/or 2) that if Peter is to follow this 
Lord and master he himself is expected to perform similar acts. Neither prospect 
appeals to him.

Incredulous, Peter asks Jesus, "Lord, are you going to wash my feet?" (13:6) 
Jesus' reply is instructive, saying "You do not realize now what I am doing, but later 
you will understand." (13:7) Understanding or the lack of it is an important Johannine 
theme, but the lack of understanding Jesus informs Peter of is not one of theological 
identity, which Peter seems to understand, but of the nature and object of his mission - 
sacrificial love and death. Jesus statement functions as a warning to Peter not to persist

with this course of action. Peter persists. Jesus tells him that “Unless I wash you, you have no part with me.” (13:8) Having no desire not to be a part with Jesus, Peter takes the opposite tack of making the task more difficult by asking that his hands and head be bathed as well.

With iron logic, Jesus explains his actions in 13:12-17. He asks if they understand (13:12), then tells them that they themselves call him “teacher and Lord”, thereby aligning the disciples themselves with Jesus by their own admission. Jesus also designates himself as “teacher and Lord.” (13:13). And if Jesus is their teacher and Lord, then they ought to follow his example and do likewise. (13.14-15). Jesus offers an aphorism to reinforce this message by adding that “no servant is greater than his master, nor is a messenger greater than the one who sent him.” Jesus concludes by adding that “you will be blessed if you do them.” These, then, establish the conditions on which one is to follow Jesus. Just as Jesus offers “words of eternal life” (6:68) and is the only way to the Father (14:6), following Jesus necessarily entails service. Service to others after the manner of Jesus is a necessary part of being on the inside.

Peter persists in his own understanding. It will be useful to cast a backward glance over the pages of the FG to suggest why this is so. His persistence can be viewed as stubborn blindness or even willful disobedience. But whatever warnings Jesus puts in Peter’s way, it is nevertheless true that Peter’s actions are justified to a significant degree. Jesus’ miracles of turning the water into wine, healing the official’s son, healing the invalid at the pool, feeding the 5000, walking on the water, healing the man born blind, and triumphantly, the raising of Lazarus, may be taken as having
occurred before the eyes of Peter. The raising of the dead of the last day, which
Martha affirms, is brought forward into the present in the raising of Lazarus. Jesus
claimed to exist before Abraham, be sent from God, have God as his Father, be at one
with the Father, claims, or similar claims, that repeatedly fell upon the ears of Peter.
The raising of Lazarus followed by the triumphal entry comprised a grandiose
experience of the first order. In such an environment the opposition to Jesus and
threats of death might well be ignored or taken as a challenge waiting to be met to one
inclined to do so. Peter well understood Jesus' own predictions of death as contingent
on the actions of others (Judas' betrayal) and therefore preventable. In any case, Jesus'
predictions of his own death and his symbolic foot washing seems to have fallen on
deaf ears and blind eyes.

The scene continues with the issue of betrayal rising to prominence. The
context of eating a meal with one's own group suggests intimacy, a mood broken by
Jesus' declaration that, "I tell you the truth, one of you is going to betray me." (13:21)
Peter, notably designated here as Simon Peter (cf. 13:6), asks "this disciple" to inquire
which one he means. (13:24) On being asked, Jesus dips the piece of bread and gives it
to Judas Iscariot, notably designated here as "son of Simon." (13:26, cf. 13:6) Beyond
these references to the common name lies a larger point; in this passage Peter and Judas
are at once linked together and distinguished, each departing from the Lord but each in
his own way. For Judas, the reception of the bread from the hand of Jesus marks him
out as The betrayer and initiates his departure into the night.
Keeping with the Johannine concern to portray the crucifixion as glorification rather than humiliation, in 13:31-33 Jesus certainly refers to the cross, but not everyone understands it that way. The speaker and one of his hearers have in mind two different scenarios. Observe Jesus words in 13:31-32, “Now is the Son of Man glorified and God is glorified in him. If God is glorified in him, God will glorify the Son in himself, and will glorify him at once.” By all indications, events are moving to the climax of Jesus’ final glorification. Jesus says this glorification of the Son of Man will occur “now” and “at once” (vuv, αὐτός). Variations of the verb glorify (δοξάζει) occur four times.\(^\text{11}\) Whatever the precise meaning of “Son of Man” as used by Jesus in the FG, in this context it would certainly call to Peter’s mind Daniel 7:13-14 with all of its triumph and glory.\(^\text{12}\) God figures prominently in this glorification; now the Son of Man is glorified and God is glorified in him. And if God is glorified in him, a given fact, God will glorify the Son in himself. Unlike the better informed reader, Peter’s attitude may be construed as, ‘If God is for us, who can be against us’ and God is unquestionably involved in this instance. Whatever the danger, the situation is certain to end in triumph and Peter wants to be there and be a part of it. On the contrary, Jesus indicates that what he has to do he must do alone, summed up by his statement that, “Where I am going, you cannot come.” (13:33)

\(^{11}\) Although given a “C” rating, the phrase in question (τὸ ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐν αὐτῷ ἐπεφέρετη διὰ τοῦ θεοῦ) receives a positive endorsement by Metzger. Bruce Metzger, A Textual Commentary on the Greek New Testament (London: United Bible Societies, 1975) 242. Even if omitted, three repetitions of “glorify” provides nearly the same effect as four.

\(^{12}\) The debate about the meaning of “Son of Man” only proves the point; it is an equivocal term understood differently in this single example.
Having made his point about himself, Jesus changes the focus to the disciples in 13:34-35. As if to reinforce the message of the footwashing, Jesus stresses that love is essential; it stems from Jesus himself (13:34a), governs their relations with one another (13:34b), and testifies to their being Jesus’ disciples (13:35). Peter pays little attention to these instructions. Rather Peter replies, “Lord, where are you going” (13:36) and in doing so moves the discussion back into the context of glorification and going away of 13:31-33. Jesus replies, “Where I go, you cannot follow now, but you will follow later.” (13:36) The emphasis falls not so much on the fact of glorification as on its timing and its precise nature. A glorification of the type Peter has in mind will occur, but not now; and the glorification Jesus has in mind at present, death on the cross, will certainly be followed on by Peter. Persisting in his misunderstanding and yet being blindly correct in his assertion, Peter asks, “Lord, why can’t I follow you now? I will lay down my life for you.” (13:37) As Jesus has explained it, the specific conditions of being a disciple involve service to others and love (13:13-17, 31-33), in contrast to Peter who would rather “follow you right now” and promises to lay down his life for Jesus. Responding, Jesus predicts that Peter will deny him three times and thereby moves the discussion yet further back to the context of Judas and denial. Rather than moving ahead with Jesus, Peter will regress toward Judas. Peter, this strutting rooster, is destined to have his wings clipped.

The thrust of chapter 13 precludes any reduction of Peter’s defense of Jesus in the garden to the mere spontaneous defense of a friend. Peter carried a sword and

---

intended to use it. While Peter is a committed and loyal disciple, Peter and Jesus depart for the garden with very different ideas of what should take place. The reader may with justification wonder how Peter is to be blamed for his mistake, given that many of Jesus' statements are riddled with mystery. But this perception only serves to underscore the responsibility of the reader not to do likewise.

B.2 PETER IN CHAPTER 18

Chapters 11-13 display a sense of the historical, event-like quality being very much in the foreground, insofar as the discourse itself is concerned. This quality fades into the background in chapters 14-17 as the teaching element of the discourse is highlighted. Events return suddenly in 18:1, a verse that informs the reader of Jesus leaving with his disciples, crossing the Kidron Valley, and entering the garden. Into this previously safe and intimate temporal and spatial setting, one analogous to places of innocence in romance, Judas enters as betrayer and brings to a head the ongoing conflict between Jesus and his opponents. Lurking danger becomes active as the mob of soldiers and others arrives bearing torches, lanterns, and weapons, the trappings of those who walk in darkness and of temporal earthly power, pathetic in comparison to the light and power of Jesus. In spite of the threat, Jesus appears in full control. Jesus knows "all that was going to happen to him" (18:4) and yet offers himself up. In addition, Jesus' position of ultimate control is reinforced as his utterance of "I am He" (Ἐγώ ἐμ, 18:5-6) compels his hearers to draw back and fall to the ground. Soldiers

---

14 Francis Moloney observes, "But such love flows from a radical following of Jesus and never from an imposition of one's own worldview on God's designs." Moloney, John, 386.
15 See Brown, John, 809, 817; Brodie, John, 524.
and weapons pose little threat as compared to the power and words of Jesus. Seeking to bring closure to the scene, Jesus tells his pursuers to “let these men go.” (18:8). The discourse likewise moves toward closure, noting, “This happened so that the words he had spoken would be fulfilled: ‘I have not lost one of those you gave me.’” (18:9)

But the scene is not over. As an unwanted addendum Peter draws his sword and cuts off the ear of Malchus, the high priest’s servant. The act is at once brave and fool hardy, daring and pathetically ineffective as Peter succeeds only in separating a servant from his ear. In wielding the sword Peter hopelessly opposes the collective temporal power of the mob and opposes Jesus and the purposes of God the Father himself. While ostensibly intending otherwise, Peter is thus aligned with the methods and purposes of the very enemies he seeks to combat. Consequently, Peter is placed at some narrative distance from Jesus. The sword is an offensive instrument held in the hand for use on others; the cup is a hand held container for something one voluntarily gives to one’s self. Ironically, Peter the friend of Jesus seeks to thwart the plans of God while Judas, the betrayer assists their accomplishment.

The openness and confusion of the garden gives way to confinement and order of the high priest’s courtyard. Having given himself up, Jesus is in the hands of the High Priests who will unknowingly execute the plan of God. Peter continues as outsider, well meaning but opposed to the plans of God, an assumption given symbolic reinforcement here by Peter’s exclusion from the center of the action. The other disciple, twice mentioned as being known to the high priest (18:15,16), acts to bring Peter into the high priest’s courtyard. The fact that Peter is brought in by the other
disciple, known by the high priest most likely as a disciple of Jesus, and that this other disciple speaks to the girl at the door on behalf of Peter, makes it patently obvious that Peter is among the disciples of Jesus. Yet when asked by the girl at the door, presumably the same person who gave him entrance, Peter denies being a disciple, a denial made more pathetic and disgraceful by the likelihood of its being believed. As the scene ends, Peter joins the officials and servants around the fire, fades from prominence as an individual, and becomes closely identified with the group and his surroundings. Jesus the true light of the world is replaced by the natural but false light of the world.

The scene shifts to the inside where Jesus is questioned about “his disciples and his teaching.” (18:19) Jesus denies nothing. On the contrary, he states that he has “spoken openly to the world,” teaching “in the synagogues or at the temple, where all the Jews come together.” (18:20) Jesus “said nothing in secret” and thereby makes all his hearers potential witnesses against him. Carrying this line of thought to its conclusion, Jesus asks, “Why question Me? Ask those who heard me. Surely they know what I said.” (18:21) The scene ends inconclusively with Jesus being taken to Caiaphas.

Meanwhile, outside, there is one follower, one of “those who heard me,” one who surely knows what Jesus said, still warming himself by the fire. But when asked if he is “one of his disciples,” Peter denies it, negating the key feature of Jesus’ statements before the high priests. The narrative juxtaposition of Peter’s denials with

---

16 Brodie makes the plausible and interesting suggestion that the other disciple is Judas. Brodie, John, 529. cf. Brown, John, 822.
17 Brodie, John, 530.
the steadfastness of Jesus highlights the primacy of the theme of denial vs. standing firm.

Peter’s final denial differs from the other two. Although asked in historically specific situations, the first two questions put to Peter concern his denying that he is a disciple of Jesus, a general and wide-ranging question. In contrast, note the specific historical details of 18:26: “One of the high priest’s servants, a relative of the man whose ear Peter had cut off, challenged him, ‘Didn’t I see you with him in the olive grove?’” Peter is hereby linked by a specific person (both fellow servant to the high priest and relative to Malchus) to a specific time and place (the garden where Peter cut off the ear of Malchus). By implication, if Peter is to deny this query he must not only deny Jesus, as he has twice done before, he must deny his own actions on Jesus’ behalf. To deny Jesus this time entails denying himself as well. In blindness or not, Peter plunges ahead and the rooster crows.

The difference between the sword wielding Peter of the garden and the shivering Peter of the high priest’s courtyard deserves some attention. The usual explanation for this change is that Peter’s courage evaporates with the arrest of Jesus. But it may be equally possible, given his desire to go with Jesus and see the triumphant glory of God (13:31-33), that Peter does not so much become a coward as he sheathes his courage in bewilderment. In retrospect, as the mob approaches the garden, Peter is quite willing to fight for a triumphant Christ, but he is unwilling to offer a show of loyalty for a man whose condemnation is highly probable. In a reversal of roles, Peter may not see himself so much as denying Jesus as he does Jesus denying Peter, the cause
of Israel, and possibly the cause of God himself by abandoning the garden revolution.

It is time for Peter and Jesus to carve their names in the pages of Israel's history just as Moses, Joshua, Ehud, Gideon, Samson, David, and Judas Macabee have done. The fact that Peter, as has we have seen, is perceptive to a certain degree but consistently misinterprets the situation and ignores warnings to the contrary, renders this scenario all the more appropriate.

If the crowing rooster may be allowed to be part of the hermeneutical milieu of this passage and seen as an image of Peter himself, Peter’s denials might be taken not strictly as a sheepish and cowardly response to danger but also as an expression of real denial of Jesus over the shame of Jesus’ conduct. Thus, when Peter says, “I am not [a disciple]” he is less a coward more of a disgruntled leader. Jesus denied Peter by denying Peter’s cause. In either case, Peter is courageous in defending his version of Jesus, his own cause of which Jesus is a part, a soldier, a recruit; Peter is most vulnerable to denial when he must confront those who question his connection to Jesus rather than Jesus’ connection to him. In any case, Peter’s threefold denial separates Peter from Jesus such that if the relationship is to be reestablished, it must be done on a different basis than before.

As in the Synoptics, Peter’s denials end with the crowing of the rooster. (Mt. 27:74-75; Mk. 14:72; Lk. 22:61) The Synoptics record a recognition on Peter’s part followed by weeping. Significantly, John omits this; the rooster crows and that is all. The negative effects of the denial remain unmitigated by contrition. Recall that Peter in the FG, although carefully distinguished, is very much paired with Judas. The fact that
bitter weeping does not follow Peter’s denial underscores the seriousness of this denial and the danger of the type of misguided discipleship Peter represents. Personal sorrow is not enough; a radical reorientation in thinking is in order. Although this phase of Peter’s appearance in the FG ends on a decidedly negative note, the rooster’s call announces the morning and the first glimmers of new light to come.

B.3 PETER IN CHAPTER 20

It is first necessary to retreat into chapter 19 to properly focus Peter’s role in the resurrection appearances of chapter 20. Much has been made of 20:30-31 with its editorial comments as the natural end of the FG and chapter 21 forming an appendix. But the same thing might be said for 19:35-37 with its testimony and summary as forming a natural end to the story of Jesus, an ending soon to be shown premature. The end comes as Jesus dies and the scripture is fulfilled. The concern over the correspondence of the details of Jesus’ death to the fulfillment of scripture fades into the background as Joseph of Arimathea asks Pilate for the body of Jesus in 18:38. The movement from history and its relationship to scripture to history by itself emphasizes the brute fact of Jesus death in itself. The account details two phases of the burial process; (1) the wrapping of Jesus’ body and its anointing by the seventy-five pounds of spices supplied by Nicodemus, according to Jewish burial customs albeit to a lavish degree, and (2) the placing of the prepared body into the new garden tomb, supplied by Joseph. If Jesus is dead, he must be buried can also mean, when viewed from another perspective, that if Jesus was buried, he must have been dead. Like Dickens’ emphasis
on Marley being "dead as a doornail," care is taken to show that Jesus is likewise dead as that piece of ironmongery.

Chapter 20:1-9 builds on and from the certainty of the death of Jesus. The narration of the resurrection of Jesus must undo what has been done. Mary and the two disciples function transitionally as witnesses to the death of Jesus in their expectation of an occupied tomb and as witnesses to the empty tomb on finding it so. The account opens with Mary Magdalene's discovery that the stone had been removed from the entrance, news that she hurriedly reports to Simon Peter and the other disciple. Mary's report, ("They have taken the Lord out of the tomb, and we don't know where they have put him!" 20:2) does not admit the possibility that Jesus has risen from the dead. Peter and the other disciple arrive at the tomb and likewise discover it empty. With characteristic eagerness Peter enters the tomb first, and, presumably with the other disciple, sees the grave clothes. Thus the placing of Jesus in the tomb in 19:41-42 is reversed and his burial preparations narrated in 19:39-40 are reversed as well.

As 20:1-9 concerns Peter, the passage must be taken primarily as foregrounding Peter's role as historical witness as over against any kind of symbolic function wherein Peter and the other disciple are played against one another. Along these lines Quast observes,

Contrary to what might be expected, the capacity in which Peter performs is actually heightened by not being linked to any response of faith on the part of Peter pertaining to the significance of what he saw. Peter did not immediately understand the significance of what he saw, therefore his witness can be regarded as an objective report of the actual physical situation."^{18}

This, coupled with the fact that neither Peter nor the other disciple says anything allows for little character development. Yet the other disciple “saw and believed,” and this is not indicated of Peter, but here it most likely refers only to the fact of Jesus’ unexpected resurrection. It is noted that “They still did not understand from Scripture that Jesus had to rise from the dead.” (20:9) Despite Peter’s denial, the fact that Mary reported to Peter and that he ran to the tomb indicates that he remains an important figure and subtly begins the process of his reestablishing his relationship with Jesus.

C. PETER AS FOLLOWER AND LEADER

C.1 PETER IN CHAPTER 21

Chapter 20 closes with the status of Jesus being resolved as worthy of belief as one raised from the dead. In contrast the position of Peter with respect to Jesus remains unresolved, his threefold denial lacking any kind of narrative mitigation. Chapter 21 opens by setting the scene on the Sea of Tiberias where Jesus appears again to his disciples. Peter, named first in 21:2, functions as leader of the group, announcing “I’m going out to fish.” The others follow. This nighttime fishing expedition may represent a lapse into quotidian existence, but more importantly it represents the failure of Peter’s leadership. They catch nothing. Peter fails as leader in two contexts, disciple and fisherman. Jesus appears early in the morning and suggests a more successful way of fishing. Jesus is master over the grave and over fishing, Peter’s own area of expertise. Yet by offering Peter spectacular success at fishing, albeit on
Jesus’ terms, the negative effects of Peter’s occupational failure are forgotten as is indeed fishing itself.

Peter’s plunge into the water recalls his characteristic impetuous plunges into other activities but with a difference; Peter here returns to Jesus. The narrative movement of 21:1-14 suggests several themes; want to plenty, night to day, separation to union, cold to warm, work to worship, ignorance to knowledge, sea to land, and Peter to Jesus. The fire of burning coals recalls the fire in the high priest’s courtyard, this time the fire is prepared by a friend, while the provision of fish served by the hand of Jesus recalls the meal in chapter 13, this time given to the true disciples. The comment that, “None of the disciples dared ask him, ‘Who are you?’” coupled with the absence of any two way conversations in verses 7-14 builds into the scene a quality of wonder and reverence. Jesus the risen Lord is firmly in charge yet continues his example of humility by serving the meal. The actions and tone of 21:1-14 place the final abasement of Peter and the beginnings of his reinstatement on the gentlest of terms. Verse 14 offers a summary and draws this phase of the narrative to a close.

For the first time in this scene, Jesus engages in a significant and personal conversation. Jesus thrice refers to Peter as “Simon son of John” (21:15, 16, 17) and recalls Peter’s first contact with his Lord (1:42). If John is the name of the beloved disciple, (either the son of Zebedee or the Elder) as well may be the case and any reader of the FG cannot help but speculate on this person’s identity, then Jesus’ reference to “Simon son of John” is significant if read over against Simon Peter’s connection with Judas son of Simon in 13:24-26. The respective narrative contexts of these name
associations would indicate this to be the case. In both cases, Peter is moving from being allied with the traitorous Judas to being allied with something altogether more positive.

The focus changes in 21:15 as Jesus engages Peter in a sustained personal conversation, in a limited way following the familiar Johannine pattern of event (fishing and meal) followed by discourse. Jesus first asks Peter, “do you love me more than these?” a question that may refer to either the other disciples or to the fishing gear and the ordinary life it represents. The former is to be preferred but the meaning is ambiguous enough to accommodate both. Peter’s reply is instructive in that it makes no comparisons, differing significantly from the form of the question and showing something of a new found maturity of thought. (compare Mark 14:29) Jesus’ second question to Peter is perhaps more difficult. Jesus asks, “do you truly love me?” The element of comparison having been dropped, the issue becomes Peter’s love for Jesus in and of itself without reference to others. The scene as a whole is deeply personal, as Jesus’ posing of the question a third time evokes an emotional response in Peter. Peter’s appeal to Jesus, “Lord, you know all things; you know that I love you,” affirms the omniscience of Jesus and implicitly testifies to the truthfulness of Peter’s assertions. Peter, whatever his mistakes, truly does love Jesus.

Quite the opposite of flashing a sword to prove his love, Jesus instructs Peter to “feed my lambs.” Herding sheep calls to mind images of pastoral activity rather than grandiose achievement. The references to tending sheep recall Jesus’ teaching that he is the good shepherd. (10:1-21) On the terms of that passage, Peter is a hireling who

runs away and abandons the sheep to the wolves. Jesus’ instruction to Peter to feed his sheep gives to Peter the role of shepherd. Peter’s earlier question to Jesus, (“To whom shall we go?” 6:68) referred to Jesus in that context, but might be expanded upon here by the reader to include other issues as understanding moves into action and doing.

The flock will hereafter hear his voice and respond, the implicit assumption being that Peter will not “run away because he is a hired hand and cares nothing for the sheep.” (10:13) Peter’s association with sheep also recalls Jesus’ teaching that he is the good shepherd and that “the good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep.” (10:11) It also anticipates Jesus’ words to Peter concerning the death he would die.

Peter’s designation as shepherd by Jesus entails in turn following Jesus, a course of action that will lead to being led “where you do not want to go.” (21:18-19) Peter’s desire to “follow you now” (13:37) means, contrary to Peter’s previous attempts at following, that he will not be master of his own fate. Jesus challenges Peter to “Follow me” (21:19) may be read as “follow me now” and to do so with the knowledge, gained from Jesus himself (20:18-19), that following Jesus means giving up control of his life. The sword of self-will must be forever put away. If Peter is to shepherd the sheep of Jesus, he must likewise follow the voice of the Good Shepherd.

If this were a western movie, it could well be imagined that Peter and Jesus would saddle up and ride off in the sunset together. But it is not to be. Peter seems to accept the role Jesus outlined for him, but “turned and saw” the beloved disciple following as well. Peter’s query “What about him?” seeks to locate his own following of Jesus with reference to others rather than simply following Jesus with reference to
Jesus alone. For Peter, and other would be followers, being a disciple of Jesus cannot mean pursuing one’s own vainglorious visions of discipleship, nor can it mean following the way of the cross on any terms but its own.

D. OTHER ISSUES

D.1 PETER AND THE STATUS OF CHAPTER 21

Chapter 21 is often thought of as comprising an appendix to the rest of the FG, with 20:30-31 forming the natural ending as it offers a statement of purpose for the whole gospel. The arguments for and against the unity of John and the related questions of divergent traditions and redactions in themselves lie outside the scope and object of the present work. The question of the unity of John is of concern as it relates to Peter and will be explored on a limited basis in with this in mind.

Some hold that chapter 21 forms an integral part of the gospel as a whole. Minear offers an excellent case for including chapter 21 with the rest of the gospel, but probably errs in restricting the concluding verses of chapter 20 to chapter 20 itself. Brodie argues that 19:35-37, 20:30-31, and 21:24-25 fit a larger pattern of conclusions with separate emphasis on witness, writing, and witness and writing, respectively. Tovey offers a broader argument based on the thematic unity of chapter 21 with previous themes in the book, a unity that he regards as decisive for including chapter 21.

---

22 Brodie, John, 574-582.
in the original gospel. For Tovey, the FG displays two great themes or movements. The first has to do with the public proclamation where the issues concern Jesus’ identity and response to him and culminates temporarily in 12:44-50. The second theme begins in 13:1, (a widely acknowledged division point), and concerns the inner circle of believers where the issues are discipleship, bearing witness, and remaining in Jesus. The first theme reaches its climax in chapter 20 with Jesus’ encounter with Thomas whereas chapter 21 completes the second theme of discipleship and witness as it centers on Peter’s rehabilitation and commission. The treatment of Peter offered in the present work, that Peter displays this twofold movement in himself, corresponds to Tovey’s overall argument.

Additionally, the false ending of 20:30-31 could be a bit of staged misdirection, a misunderstanding handed to the unwary for the purpose of breaking up stock response. Staley writes,

But just like the disciples who, at the story level, make wonderful confessions (1:41-51) only to discover later on that following Jesus entails much more than knowing the proper words (5:60-71; 16:28-33), so too the implied reader, at the discourse level, is forced to realize through his victimization (20:30-21:1) that there is more to his journey of faith than mere confession.

To see the FG as ending in 20:31 runs the risk of seeing Jesus as Peter saw him at the height of his folly; as the Holy One of God abstracted from duties and responsibilities.

---


24 Tovey notes, “Peter is a representative type of discipleship and belief in Jesus...” and, “Suffice to say that the rehabilitation of Peter resonates with teaching found in the farewell discourse and elsewhere.” Tovey, *Art and Act*, 112, 113.

and failing to account for the necessity of discipleship within the confines of earthly life. Chapter 21, then, is not extricable from the very heart of the FG itself. The Synoptics echo the discipleship theme; each account of the confession of Peter is followed by a section predicting Jesus’ death which is in turn followed by a section detailing the cost of discipleship. (Mt. 16:13-26, Mk. 8:27-38, Lk. 9:18-27) Whereas the Synoptics connect Jesus’ identity with the theme of death and discipleship by simple narrative proximity, in the FG Peter embodies the perils of not connecting Jesus as Lord and God with a more sober and enlightened view of what that means.

D.2 PETER AND THE BELOVED DISCIPLE

Because they appear so often together, the role of Peter in the FG must inevitably take into account the role of the beloved disciple. For Bultmann, the beloved disciple represents the Hellenistic Christian Church while Peter represents the Jewish Christian church. The most common view is that the beloved disciple represents a kind of ideal disciple, one who is steady and perceptive and functions as a foil to Peter. Collins speaks for this view when he comments, “he [the beloved disciple] is the representative figure, the one who epitomizes all that faith in Jesus implies.”

26 Quast provides a helpful survey of the various options. Quast, Peter and the Beloved Disciple, 8-13. Throughout this discussion, it will be assumed that the beloved disciple and the narrator refer to the same person.
This view is helpfully critiqued by Bauckham, who argues that the beloved disciple is not to be seen as the ideal disciple for the following reasons: (1) The BD may function as ideal disciple, as do others (Nathanael, Mary Magdalene), but this fails to account for the majority of what is said about him; (2) His privileged access to Jesus places him in a unique position that is precisely not representative; (3) Most significantly, the role of the BD as ideal disciple is not stated or even emphasized in his last appearance (21:20-23) where it would be most expected even though the BD has hitherto been portrayed in a more positive light. For Bauckham, the BD is superior to Peter only in so far as they each “represent two different kinds of discipleship: active service and perceptive witness.” The beloved disciple functions primarily as witness by virtue of (1) his special intimacy with Jesus; (2) his presence at key points in the story; and (3) his perception and spiritual insight into the meaning of the Gospel events. The BD’s role as ideal witness allows him in turn to be the ideal author. Recalling Harvey’s discussion of the role of witness in Jewish culture and in the FG, it may be added that the beloved disciple’s closeness to Jesus and his singular status as one named “the beloved disciple” establishes him as a witness as regards his character and in addition gives him the important status of an agent. The beloved disciple’s closeness to events establishes him as a witness as regards his position as personal eyewitness to the facts.

30 Ibid., 35. his emphasis.
31 Ibid., 36-37.
In literary terms, the beloved disciple is very much a flat character, one far less interesting than Nicodemus, the Samaritan woman, the man born blind, Mary, Martha, and almost everyone else in the Gospel including Caiaphas. Indeed, his ambiguous identity provides his most interesting feature. He is generally passive, for instance in his being prompted by Peter to inquire of the betrayer’s identity or being entrusted with the mother of Jesus. He speaks little, saying only “Who is it?” (13:25) and “It is the Lord.” (21:7) This kind of flat presentation easily leads to idealization in much the same way that it is easier to read personality traits into a quiet person than a loud one because one’s perception of a quiet person’s character often remains uncontested for lack of evidence to the contrary. The beloved disciple in the FG might be better seen as a window rather than wonderful, neutral rather than ideal. Yet it is precisely this type of presentation that suits the role of the BD as witness, theologian, and reliable narrator. By appearing in the narrative itself, the BD avoids the trap of being at an ironic distance from his subject matter, and by (not)appearing as a flat character, the BD avoids the necessity of developing his own character and having to account for the resulting self-conscious intrusion of his own perspective. This problem is more acute in John, where characters are more developed, than in the Synoptics, where the pericope format inherently provides a certain narrative distance. Whereas the other characters respond to Jesus in a variety of ways, the BD in his function as author presents the common center, Jesus Christ the Logos, to which everyone must respond.

---


III  THE COMIC AND PETER

Comedy forms a natural conversation partner to tragedy, a mirror image in many respects. At the most basic level, comedies end happily and tragedies end badly. Both comedy and tragedy endure as significant forms of cultural expression. Yet there are important differences. Comedy seems more at home in the present world and in numerous expressions, such as TV and film, continues as a significant form of expression. Tragedy, on the other hand, has fallen on hard times. Yet certain tragedies of the past, notably Oedipus the King, Prometheus, Hamlet, King Lear, and perhaps Antigone, provide widely influential cultural reference points in a way that individual works of comedy do not. Even Shakespeare's best known comedies, perhaps *A Midsummer Night's Dream*, or *Twelfth Night*, fail to command as much attention as certain tragedies. Aristophanes languishes in obscurity compared to Sophocles.

Comedy in life and art is ubiquitous, while individual comedies are not. Tragedies are more like mountains while comedies are more like the plains; perhaps not as spectacular or commanding, but all the more livable for being so.

Tragedy attracts more widespread critical attention than comedy as seen in the number of attempts to give a theory of tragedy, balanced in many respects by the rejection in principle of any such theories. No doubt the critical attention given to tragedy stems from the influence of Aristotle's *Poetics* which provided the starting point for any discussion of tragedy and remains influential today. Critical discussion of tragedy has thus had a standard conversation partner through the ages which comedy
has always lacked. It is possible that Aristotle wrote a similar critical work on comedy no longer extant. Lane Cooper sought to correct this in his book *An Aristotelian Theory of Comedy* in which he attempted to give what Aristotle might have said based on a synthesis of what he did say in other sources, making some educated guesses, and mirroring the issues and format of the *Poetics*.

The lack of a standard critical work on comedy is a fact of history. But what is not clear is whether or not that contingent historical fact should be taken as the primary reason critical theory of comedy appears less developed than tragedy, however diverse theories of tragedy may be. A more compelling explanation lies in the very nature of comedy itself and its subject matter. Comedy includes much that is unexpected, thereby breaking the link of expected causal relationships and rendering a theory of comedy in many respects more difficult to come by. Although widespread in life, comedy often appears to be mysterious and just beyond our grasp.

Comedy requires a fundamentally different kind of theory than tragedy. For the present the differences can be summarized by stating that tragedy concentrates while comedy integrates. Tragedy concentrates certain forces so as to bring about the reduction and/or destruction, physical or otherwise, of individuals. Thus, tragedy requires a theory that clarifies how this thematic and dramatic concentration takes place, precisely the kind of explanation offered in Aristotle's *Poetics*. The exposition of tragedy offered above follows the same approach. Comedy, on the other hand, is a more general phenomenon, and is expansive in the sense of moving toward a new and integrated arrangement of things, one perhaps not immediately apparent at the start.

---

And, discussions of comedy inevitably involves a discussion of jokes, humor, wit, and related issues. A theory of comedy, therefore, needs to be more general in nature, yet still be specific enough to yield some explanatory value.

A ELEMENTS OF AUDIENCE REACTION

A.I. COMIC EMOTIONS: SYMPATHY AND RIDICULE

Sympathy and ridicule form the comic counterparts to fear and pity in tragedy. Although useful designations, they do not possess the same stature and authority that fear and pity do in tragedy, partly do to the absence of Aristotle's influence. Weighing emotions is difficult, but should not be avoided where appropriate, as is the case here.

Sympathy and ridicule function the same way that fear and pity do in tragedy; they provide a balance between closeness and distance in the reader's emotional relationship to a character. Ridicule proceeds only where there is little or no emotional involvement with a given character, whereas too much sympathy for a character tends to prevent any sort of objective evaluation of a character. The amount of sympathy and ridicule obviously vary, but these elements must be in approximate balance if a comic tone is to be maintained. For example, in *A Comedy of Errors*, the mix-up caused by having two sets of identical twins causes all sorts of ridiculous complications, but we never see the characters as objects of ridicule because they are acting in accordance with what they might reasonably suppose to be true and so we feel a corresponding amount of sympathy with them. The tendency toward ridicule is not too pronounced, so the need for sympathy is not very strong either.
Peter is different altogether in that the tendency toward sympathy and ridicule are both very strong, although the tendency toward ridicule is often missed by readers so inclined for confessional reasons or out of reverence for the Bible. Additionally, the FG presents Peter as a sympathetic, developed character with virtually no tendency toward caricature. Yet, Peter’s actions and statements consequent on his understanding of Jesus, coupled with the pre-crucifixion events taken by themselves and seen in a certain light, hold Peter up to severe ridicule, a feature especially notable in the contrast of Peter’s sword wielding defense of Jesus as contrasted to his three-fold denial. Peter’s pretensions far outstrip reality to the point where the divergence between them moves beyond the ridiculous toward becoming painful. The Synoptics mitigate the effects of this incident by immediately narrating the fact of Peter’s bitter remorse (Mt. 26:75; Mk. 15:72; Lk. 22:62). In addition to contrasting Peter to himself, John makes Peter’s denial all the more painful by contrasting it with the steadfastness of Jesus before Annas, (sandwiched between Peter’s denials), and Pilate’s threefold declaration of Jesus innocence. In John, Peter’s restoration comes not through tearful repentance, but through reinstatement and commissioning by Jesus himself.

In both the Synoptics and in John, the tendency to sympathy balances the ridiculous quality of Peter’s actions. Peter is real, well intentioned, and transparent, someone with endearing qualities sufficient to even cover over his Quixotic mistakes. Unlike the dark and thieving Judas, Peter is someone with some moral capital to spend. Judas’ betrayal is inherent to his character; Peter is merely blind to himself. At the
same time, Peter’s denial is painful, but its very painfulness shortens the emotional distance and prevents Peter from being held up for ridicule alone. Had Peter been merely naive, his denial would have been too close emotionally, unexpected and shocking in the wrong way, malicious on the part of those who might have prevented it. On the other hand, Peter’s comic excess, most apparent in his uneven encounter with Malchus, is of a kind that needs to be brought under control if Peter is to be useful. The reader, like Jesus, can almost see it coming and has the sense of it being justified in some way, however distressing its arrival may be. Without pathos, Peter veers toward farce; without a ludicrous dimension, Peter careens toward tragedy, a theme to be explored later. Only by steering a middle course can an emotional tone suitable for comedy be maintained. And only through sympathy and ridicule in strong doses does the FG’s account of Peter achieve an emotional depth characteristic of serious comedy.

A.2. LAUGHTER

Laughter is the most obvious element of audience reaction in comedy and may be viewed as the comic counterpart to catharsis in tragedy. But, as noted above in reference to sympathy and ridicule, laughter, however much it is associated with the comic, is not a necessary requirement of it. Yet, laughter is common enough so that it transcends the borders between jokes, wit, satire, humor, and the comic.36

Although catharsis in tragedy may well manifest itself physically, laughter has an obvious biological aspect and is physically apparent in a way that catharsis in tragedy is not. Hauser describes it as follows,

Laughter is produced through a complex interplay of anatomical structures and physiological processes, and these are brought into operation by culturally conditioned behavioural and emotional stimuli in normal, healthy individuals.  

Hauser also offers a technical description of laughing which explains, among other things, differences between smiling and laughing. Significantly, she notes that laughter, whatever its biological manifestations, brought into operation by certain conceptual and emotional stimuli.

Bergson examines the conditions under which laughter occurs. He observes,

...the absence of feeling which usually accompanies laughter. It seems as though the comic could not produce its disturbing effect unless it fell, so to say, on the surface of a soul that is thoroughly calm and unruffled. Indifference is its natural environment, for laughter has no greater foe than emotion.

For example, Peter is a comic character, yet we do not laugh at him precisely because the reader is emotionally engaged such that he or she is not “thoroughly calm and unruffled.” There is generally too much sympathy for Peter to laugh, 13:9 being an exception. In a similar way, works of comedy in which the characters themselves face


38 Bergson, Laughter, 4. In his famous definition of the comic, W. H. Auden makes a similar observation: “A contradiction in the relation of the individual or the personal to the universal or the impersonal which does not involve the spectator or hearer in suffering or pity, which in practice means that it must not involve the actor in real suffering.” Auden, “Notes on the Comic,” in Robert Corrigan, ed. Comedy: Meaning and Form (Scranton, Pennsylvania: Chandler, 1965) 61.
too much emotional turmoil do so at the expense of laughter. For Bergson, laughter must originate in some aspect of our humanity. He writes,

To produce the whole of its effect, then, the comic demands something like a momentary anesthesia of the heart. Its appeal is to intelligence, pure and simple.\(^{39}\)

Bergson does not mean that the comic resulting in laughter involve a conscious mental process. Bergson correctly regards laughter as an appeal to intelligence, while the mental processes involved are often sudden and unconscious. Like good food, a joke is better experienced than explained.

Attempting to integrate the physical and biological, Freud regarded the process of joke formation as a kind of “psychic compression” or economy of expression wherein the psychic energy needed to express something is compressed into the form of a joke.\(^{40}\) This basic idea of compression can take several forms, such as condensation, multiple use of the same material, or double meaning.\(^{41}\) The compression into the form of a joke often allows psychic or social barriers to be overcome. On reception, this compressed psychic energy is released and laughter results. The psychic release manifest in laughter corresponds roughly to the amount of psychic energy conserved during the joke’s formation, working as a kind of thermodynamic law of laughter. Laughter, then, is something like a psychic safety valve.

These three examples take three different approaches to laughter, approaches that will be dealt with below in relation to theories of the comic. The basic point is that

\(^{39}\) Bergson, *Laughter*, 5.


\(^{41}\) ibid., 41-42. Freud offers a detailed analysis of jokes.
there exists in laughter a connection between the abstract or cognitive aspects and the concrete and material expressions of it. Comedy is in this respect like tragedy which connects the abstract and material through suffering and death whereas irony differs from both by being primarily cognitive with no analogous physical expression. Comedy tinged with irony may well evoke laughter, but pure irony is no laughing matter. Detached from experience, irony is cognitive to a much greater extent than romance, tragedy, and comedy. The connection between the cognitive and concrete, so important to laughter, will be seen to be important in the comic itself. But whatever the connection, the two must be kept separate, the cause or stimulus, being comedy or humor, must not be confused with its effect, laughter.

B-STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS OF COMEDY

B.1 CHARACTER

Like tragedy, plot and character form the two most basic elements of comedy. Following Aristotle, it was argued that in tragedy plot is more important than character. Following this same line of reasoning, Cooper simply assumes a close correspondence between comedy and tragedy so that whatever is not obviously different in comedy and tragedy must be the same in both. The following statement from Cooper may be compared to Aristotle's statement on tragedy by substituting "tragedy" for "comedy." Cooper writes,

(1) The Plot, then, is the first principle, and, as it were, the very soul, of comedy. (2) And the Characters of the agents come next in order of importance. -There is a parallel in the art of painting; the most striking colors laid on with no order will not be so effective as the simplest caricature done in outline. -Comedy is the imitation of an action: mainly on
Thus, for Cooper, in comedy plot is primary and character is secondary. It will be argued, however, that Cooper is mistaken and that character is primary and plot is secondary in comedy. Whether or not Cooper correctly represents Aristotle here is not the issue. Referring to his own and Aristotle's position that plot is primary over character in tragedy, Cornford remarks, "Nothing of all this applies to comedy." Comedy relies less on a linear sequence typical of Aristotelian thought and more on a holistic emphasis on character. The comic character is comprised of a mixture of beliefs, desires, freedom, and choice, these qualities being hard to separate from each other.

Hegel compares tragedy and comedy and argues for the supremacy of character over plot in comedy. Regarding dramatic poetry (tragedy, comedy, and drama), Hegel states that it "makes central the collisions between characters and between their aims." For Hegel, the difference between genres has to do with the relation of the individuals to the nature and purpose of their aims which manifest themselves in actions. Every true action involves two parts: (1) the substance of the action, which Hegel traces to some aspect of the Divine, the good and great, such as honor, love,

---

42 Cooper, Aristotelian Theory, 184-185.
43 The Italian Renaissance critic Francesco Robortello offers another attempt to transpose Aristotle's work on tragedy on to comedy in "On Comedy," in Paul Lauter, ed. Theories of Comedy (New York: Anchor, 1964), 48-63.
duty; and (2) the subject, which Hegel defines as “the individual himself in his unfettered self-determination and freedom.” For Hegel, tragedy is more closely related to substance, while comedy is more closely related to subject, or character. Hegel observes of comedy, “...the mastery of all relations and ends is given as much to the individual in his willing and action, as to external contingency.” For Hegel, the resolution of tragedy relates to the substance in that “the eternal substance of things emerges victorious in a reconciling way,” whereas in comedy “it is subjectivity, or personality, which in its infinite assurance retains the upper hand.” Regardless of the accuracy of Hegel’s analysis of the respective resolutions of tragedy and comedy, his emphasis on character in comedy is correct. Comedy unmasks a character while tragedy unmasks a situation.

Using Hegel’s terms and analysis, it is in tragedy that a substance restricts a subject’s or character’s action. For example, in Antigone Creon must act according to duty and punish Polynices who has attacked the city. Pilate must act to administer justice and/or maintain political control as he confronts God in the flesh. The restrictions on action imposed on a subject results in a collision and the destruction of that character. On the other hand, in comedy a character chooses in freedom to act according to a substance (love, honor, greed or whatever), and this choice, usually done in blindness and/or excess, result in complication and folly. Thus, Peter, a subject or character possessed of “infinite assurance” chooses to act according to some substance such as love or honor but does so in blindness.

---

46 Hegel, Aesthetics, 1194, his emphasis.
47 ibid.
48 ibid., 1199.
Again comparing tragedy and comedy, Wylie Sypher notes that tragedy is a “closed” form of art with an emphasis on necessity and law, whereas comedy is less complex and less structured with “a precarious logic that can tolerate every kind of improbability.”

He observes,

The coherent plot is vital to tragic theater (Aristotle says that plot is the very soul of tragedy); and a tragic action needs to convey a sense of destiny, inevitability, and foreordination. The tragic plot often implies there are unchanging moral laws behind the falling thunderbolt. The fate of a tragic hero needs to be made “intelligible” as the comic hero’s fate does not; or at least tragic fate has the force of “necessity” even if it is not “intelligible.” Somehow tragedy shows what “must” happen, even while there comes a shock of unsurmised disaster. As Aristotle said, in tragedy, coincidence must have an air of probability. Then too, tragedy subordinates “character” to the design of the plot; for the purpose of tragedy, says Aristotle, is not to depict “character,” but, rather, to show “men in action,” so that the “character” of a tragic hero reveals itself in a deed which expresses his moral disposition. Comedy, on the contrary, can freely yield its action to surprise, chance, and all the changes in fortune that fall outside the necessities of tragic myth, and can present “character” for its own sake.

Bergson expresses a similar opinion,

And so we see why action is essential in drama, but only accessory in comedy. In a comedy, we feel any other situation might equally well have been chosen for the purpose of introducing the character; he would still have been the same though the situation were different. But we do not get this impression in a drama. Here characters and situations are welded together, or rather, events form part and parcel with the persons, so that were the drama to tell us a different story, even though the actors kept the same names, we should in reality be dealing with other persons.

50 ibid. 35-36.
51 Bergson, Laughter, 145.
Hegel, Syphe, and Bergson make the same essential distinction; tragedy relates to necessity while comedy relates to choice, a distinction inextricably linked with tragedy's emphasis on plot, the vehicle of necessity, and comedy's emphasis on character, the vehicle of choice. Obviously, these qualities will vary with each individual work, but they remain distinctive and defining tendencies to their respective archetypes all the same.

The primacy of character over plot in comedy is seen clearly in Cervantes' *Don Quixote*, one of the great comic figures in all of literature. Having lingered too long over too many books on knights and knighthood, this misguided soul acts on his delusions and embarks on a career of knight errantry. The reality that Don Quixote sees is not usually the same one seen by everyone else. An inn becomes a castle, the innkeeper becomes the warden of the castle, windmills become giants, etc. The fact that Don Quixote mistakes them as such has nothing to do with inns, innkeepers, or windmills in and of themselves. Rather, perceiving them in this manner has everything to do with Don Quixote and his state of mind. Whatever happens in the book serves to expose this state of affairs by juxtaposing illusion with reality. Had Don Quixote been in his right mind, nothing would have happened; there is no hint of causality or necessity following on from events alone. Only his false beliefs about reality propels the account of his wanderings.

Furthermore, because Don Quixote himself generates the action of the story, as in romance there is no necessary causal relationship between the separate incidents. The fact that his tilting at windmills occurs before his encounter with the goatherds is
of no consequence and reversing the order would have made little difference. This is not to say the book can be read in any order with no effect, the characters of Don Quixote and Sancho Panza and their relationship develops as the book proceeds, but this could have done irrespective of the order of the content of the incidents themselves. Don Quixote is typically comic in that it is fundamentally episodic. In contrast, Aristotle notes, "But most important of all [in tragedy] is the structure of the incidents."\(^{52}\) In this remark "structure of the incidents" means the incidents as they relate to one another more so than their individual composition. In tragedy there exists a strong causal link between incidents. For example, the public verses private clash in Antigone is causally and sequentially linked to the attack on the city, the action necessarily following from this incident. Strong causal links between incidents leads to an emphasis on plot. But in Don Quixote's case, the primary link between the incidents is Don Quixote himself. In both comedy and romance, character is primary over plot. But in romance the hero is integrated with his/her surroundings and/or world view whereas in comedy the hero is not.

The example of Don Quixote is simple and obvious and illustrates the point. But other examples are to be found as well. It is no accident that Hardy's novels emphasize plot and tend more toward tragedy, whereas Dickens' works, especially the early Dickens, are generally comic and feature looser plots and generally flatter characters.\(^{53}\) The fact that comedians perform independently of plot and tragedies are

---

\(^{52}\) Aristotle, *Poetics* vi. 9, p. 62.

\(^{53}\) The distinction of flat and round characters comes from E. M. Forster, who singles out Dickens as a writer whose characters are generally flat and Jane Austen as a writer whose characters are generally round. Forster, *Aspects of the Novel* (London: Edward Arnold, 1927) 65ff.
performed as works containing a causal sequence is not due simply to commercial reasons; it is inherent to the nature of comedy to be linked to character and tragedy to be linked to plot. The primacy of character over plot permits sitcoms to continue from week to week as the characters with their strengths and weaknesses proceed intact, ready for new adventures with each new episode. Comic strips rely on the same dynamic. *The Canterbury Tales*, a loose collection of tales connected only by the convention of a trip to Canterbury, relies mostly on character for its comic effect. The plays of Aristophanes (especially *The Birds*) are notable examples of works being driven by character rather than plot.\(^{54}\)

A more difficult example is a work like *A Comedy of Errors*. Here the mix ups caused by the existence of two sets of identical twins is set in motion by an accident of plot. But even here the plot only provides opportunities for expressions of character. Although the play has a strong element of farce, in which character development tends to be limited, the characters drive the action by acting on their justified but false beliefs about reality. The existence of the two sets of twins, an accident of plot, provides the possibility of comedy, however likely, but not the necessity of it. Comic characters are deluded in some way, but it does not have to be so.

The example of Peter and the disciples follows the same pattern. Whatever their backgrounds, of which very little is given in the FG, each must respond to Jesus’ teaching, ministry, and person. This forms a common ground for all the disciples, yet

\(^{54}\) Frye notes, “In Aristophanes there is usually a central figure who constructs his (or her) own society in the teeth of strong opposition, driving off one after another all the people who come to prevent or exploit him, and eventually achieving a heroic triumph...” Northrop Frye, *Anatomy of Criticism* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1957) 43.
there is no set pattern of coming to faith. Peter, Thomas, and Pilate all respond to Jesus in different ways at different times. None is particularly constrained by a situation to act in the way they do. Peter’s comic actions happen by his own volition, not by what happens to him. Both Peter and Thomas persist in a course of thinking when each has been given a warning or evidence to the contrary, a fact that is best explained by the power of characters to make choices. Jesus’ words to Peter serve as intended warnings, but his misunderstandings, propelled by the force of his character, causes him to overwhelm any helpful boundaries on his actions. Because the comic is more about character than about plot, Peter’s appearances in the FG need not be linked in any strong causal relationship manifest in tightly structured incidents, as is the case with Pilate, but can be of looser and more informally arranged, linked together by Peter himself. Significantly, Shakespeare uses Falstaff in several plays on the same basis.

The stress in Comedy is fundamentally on character rather than plot has to do with the nature of comedy itself. Comedy is primarily driven by beliefs and desires rather than by events and beliefs and desires by their very nature reside in character. Only a conscious being can have beliefs and desires. Beliefs and desires have to do with the future as they relate to the present; they concern what will or might happen. Beliefs and desires are expressed as by making choices and choice concerns the present as it relates to the future. Tragedy, on the other hand, is concerned with what has happened, and the past is not subject to choice. Thus tragedy contains "reversals" while comedy features "unmasking." While tragedy and comedy are very much

---

55 The substance of this paragraph will be elaborated in detail below as part of a discussion of conceptual elements in comedy.
concerned with beliefs and their relationship to reality, in tragedy the reality is one related to the past and therefore irrevocable. Oedipus has killed his father and married his mother; this is reality. Events of incident and plot ruthlessly expose this reality and destroy previous beliefs as the past parks its car in the present. In comedy the relation to beliefs and reality is open-ended because comedy is about the future rather than about the past. Don Quixote’s beliefs motivate him to ride into the future clad in armor with lance in hand. Like Don Quixote, Peter’s beliefs lead him to stride into the future sword in hand.

To be comic, a character must intrinsically possess a strong sense of freedom. If he or she is to be at odds with reality, he or she must possess freedom to do so. McFadden comments,

The associations of the comic with spontaneity, liberation from inhibition and constraint, unblocking, vital movement, and ease and grace of behavior all point to freedom as an indispensable component.\(^5\)

...we can conclude that the comic is in a special relation to freedom. Other genres of art cannot do without freedom; but comedy is the only genre continually to assert it. Furthermore, although no genre may be adequately defined by a simple quality, comedy is the only one wherein freedom predominantly gives the tone to the complex quality that emerges from the work as a whole.\(^6\)

McFadden relates the principle of freedom to his basic principle of the comic, which he defines as "...a characteristic maintenance-as-itself, despite the implicit threat of alteration."\(^7\) Thus, whatever threatens reality may pose, the comic character is free to challenge them and remains intact. The onslaughts of plot test, and expose, but do not

---

\(^5\) McFadden, Discovering, 11.
\(^6\) ibid., 14.
\(^7\) ibid., 25.
destroy. In Peter’s case there is never any hint that his denial is pre-determined or fixed; it is simply the outgrowth of his character, an outcome that any perceptive person might have seen coming. In the end Peter is still Peter, though chastened and changed.

In a similar way, this quality of self-preservation, or self-projection in the face of whatever difficulties prompts Torrance to argue that, rather than being simply a butt or scapegoat, the comic character is admirable. He writes, “The Comic hero is a contradiction in terms, or at least in perspectives. He is comic because he differs from others and heroic because he is always himself.” Although largely correct, there is a very real sense where the fact that the comic character “is always himself” or displays “maintenance-as-itself,” deserves an important caveat, one separating comedy from romance. Allowing for an enduring dignity in the comic character, it must be noted that the comic character’s freedom to act is a two edged sword; freedom to act is freedom for folly and mistakes. The same is true for self preservation and always being one’s self; the individual remains intact, but not everything is worthy of preservation. The comic character’s freedom is best taken as an unconscious, or unexamined freedom, a freedom that may result in examination and modification once exposed to experience and events. The comic character continues as self and displays perhaps the greatest freedom, the freedom to survive, modify one’s own behavior, and achieve an integration with one’s surroundings.

Freedom resulting in mistakes, rather than being an option for a comic character, is intrinsic to the comic itself. The comic character usually displays a

mixture of mistaken or exaggerated beliefs or desires, as for example, the quintessentially comic Don Quixote. Scott notes this feature in his definition of the comic. For Scott,

...the comic is a contradiction in the relation of the human individual to the created orders of existence which arises out of an over-specialization of some instinct or faculty of the self, or out of an inordinate inclination of the self in some special direction, to the neglect of the other avenues through which it ought also to gain expression.  

All the while the comic character may be unaware of his folly. For Bergson, “a comic character is generally comic in proportion to his ignorance of himself. The comic person is unconscious.” The comic character’s freedom is best taken as an unconscious, or unexamined freedom, a freedom that may result in examination and modification once exposed to events. The comic character is a veritable fountain of folly as much as freedom because he has the freedom to do so. To be free or ignorant or unconscious is to be free from everything but one’s self. Choices about the future must be made by fallible beings within the blindness of the present.

If the comic stems more from character than from plot, and if the comic character is fundamentally about mistaken or exaggerated beliefs or desires freely expressed, then it becomes clear why comedy often features fantastic plots. Comic plots grow out of a character’s mistaken beliefs, and the human capacity to be mistaken is almost boundless, especially in regard to the future. Comic characters reflect the human propensity to make unjustified inferences that lead to a certain credible falsehood about life. Fantastic plots take on an air of plausibility, not because things

60 Nathan Scott, “The Bias of Comedy and the Narrow Escape into Faith,” in Corrigan, Comedy, 104.
61 Bergson, Laughter, 16.
normally happen that way, but because characters express their beliefs and desires in choices that make them happen that way. One does not normally single-handedly confront a band of armed soldiers, yet doing so seems consistent enough with Peter’s character to lend it an inherent plausibility.

The supremacy of character over plot in the comic does not mean that comic characters are more fully developed than tragic characters; the reverse is quite often the case. In a comic character, some trait or belief is usually exaggerated such that other aspects of character suffer as a consequence, as Scott has noted above. The greater the exaggeration, the more the work tends to move from drama (as Hegel defines it) toward farce with a consequent flattening of character. The characters in *A Midsummer Night’s Dream* are less developed than those in *Twelfth Night*, the former having a more fantastic plot than the latter. Dicken’s novels can be richly comic, but his characters, Mr. Mcawber for example, tend to be relatively flat. The works of Jane Austen are generally comic and feature well rounded and developed characters coupled with a greater stress on plot. Much of the greatness of Don Quixote and Falstaff lies in the fact that both defy this tendency and combine a roundness of character with strong comic tendencies.

Peter displays all of the significant qualities of a comic character. His desires and beliefs propel him to make choices and act on those choices within a context of freedom. Jesus can only do so much to curb his excess. Reality will eventually speak with its own voice. For Peter, the very freedom that made him the comic character he is becomes the very thing that will be restricted. Jesus tells him, “I tell you the truth,
when you were younger you dressed yourself and went where you wanted; but when you are old you will stretch out your hands, and someone else will dress you and lead you where you do not want to go.” (21:18) This narrowing of freedom will ultimately deprive him of life itself. Yet there is something gloriously refreshing about Peter and his next statement, “Lord, what about him?” The Peter we have come to know, although chastened and wiser, is still very much alive.

B.2 PLOT

Like any other type of plot, comic plots must feature a clash of some kind. Rather than the clash being related to the past being manifest in the present as in tragedy, comic plots feature competing versions of the future as they are manifest in the present. This is a fundamental difference between tragedy and comedy. Thus in tragedy a past action, or an action soon to be past, catches up to the protagonist in some way, whether or not the protagonist was responsible for it. In comedy, the future is envisioned in such a way as to impact the present. The future presents numerous opportunities that are inevitably tied to beliefs and desires. If character X has belief Y about the future coupled with desire Z, X stands a good chance of acting on that desire. Acting on one’s desires with respect to the future contains as many pitfalls as it does possibilities.

The comic action usually grows out of a conflict between two or more visions of what the future should look like. Frye notes, “The action of comedy is not unlike the action of a lawsuit, in which plaintiff and defendant construct different versions of
the same situation, one finally being judged as real and the other as illusory.\footnote{Frye, \textit{Anatomy}, 166.}

Although Frye’s comparison is correct as far as it goes, a better comparison might be made between comedy and deliberative rather than judicial rhetoric, the latter being more appropriate for tragedy. In deliberative rhetoric, the rivals each construct competing versions of what \textit{should} take place rather than what \textit{has} taken place, as in judicial rhetoric, which may well be what Frye intended to say. To act, then, is to simultaneously display and test a set of beliefs and one’s character.

The comic action, then, features a course of events in relation to the future, or possible futures, plots in which the one action or state of affairs competes with another. Usually a character’s desires are blocked in some manner and the desired future refuses to come easily into the present. Frye observes, “The obstacles to the hero’s desire, then, form the action of the comedy, and the overcoming of them the comic resolution.”\footnote{Ibid., 164.} This makes no explicit value judgment on the desired future, the comic character could desire an inappropriate reality, as Malvolio does, just as easily as an appropriate one. In comedy there is usually a social judgment taking place as to the desirability of a given state of affairs,\footnote{George Meredith presents the social functions of comedy. See Meredith, \textit{An Essay on Comedy and the Uses of the Comic Spirit} (Constable: London, 1918).} but this has less to do with the nature of the comic itself than with the values of the society in which it occurs. In comedy there is often a note of grace expressed in not having all one’s desires fulfilled, as is plainly the case with Peter.

\footnote{\textit{Ibid.}, 164.}
The comic character acts on his or her desires and meets with resistance, what are normally called blocking agents. Blocking agents in comedy may be divided into two types, active and passive. Active opposition takes the form of blocking characters, usually members of the older establishment whose vision of the future is at odds with those who desire change. Frye outlines this process as follows,

What normally happens is that a young man wants a young woman, that his desire is resisted by some opposition, usually paternal, and that near the end of the play some twist in the plot enables the hero to have his will. In this simple pattern there are several complex elements. In the first place, the movement of comedy is usually a movement from one kind of society to another. At the beginning of the play the obstructing characters are in charge of the play’s society, and the audience recognizes that they are usurpers. At the end of the play the device in the plot that brings hero and heroine together causes a new society to crystallize around the hero, and the moment then this crystallization occurs is the point of resolution in the action, the comic discovery, *anagnorisis* or *cognitio*.

A typical example of this pattern is *A Midsummer Night’s Dream*, in which Egeus forbids his daughter to marry Lysander in favor of her marrying Demetrius. Several of these elements are apparent in the Peter’s situation in the FG. The prologue establishes a context wherein darkness has usurped the position of the light. Jesus is aligned with the light, with God, and has come into the world to bring light to everyone. Peter understands Jesus to be the Messiah, it is assumed, in 1:40-42 and he understands him further to be “the Holy One of God” in 6:69. This much Peter and Jesus have this understanding in common; those holding any other view are usurpers, hirelings, and false shepherds.

---

63 Frye, *Anatomy*, 163
The most obvious blocking characters in the FG are the Jewish leaders, opposing Jesus more than anyone else in the FG. Throughout the FG the Jewish leaders represent the older established order, the insiders who block innovation and change and adamantly oppose Jesus. The temple, with its status as the center of Jewish religion, is destined to be replaced by Jesus himself, the true temple who will be thrown down and rebuilt in three days (2:19-22). Nicodemus, a cardinal member of the Jewish establishment, is told he must be “born again.” The new society consists of those who are born again, drink of the living water, receive deliverance from blindness. The Jewish leaders do not simply oppose Jesus, but also oppose those who follow or would follow him and attempt to block the formation of the new society by excommunicating believers from the synagogue. Furthermore, steps are taken to destroy Jesus himself. The disciples have been aware of the danger of following Jesus. (11:8) Following the resurrection of Lazarus, the Jewish leaders plot to take his life. (11:53) Events move toward their climax during the Passover celebration when the Jewish leaders come to the garden with a detachment of soldiers to arrest Jesus. In the garden Peter’s identity with Jesus is such that he draws a sword and opposes these blocking characters.

In so far as Peter’s view of things is concerned, the major blocking character is Jesus himself. Peter’s vision of a glorious future competes with Jesus’ own vision of what that glory consists of. In the incident of the foot washing, Peter’s understanding of Jesus, his mission, and Peter’s own role in it, conflicts with Jesus’ emphasis on love and service. Jesus’ command to Peter to “put your sword away” blocks his role as
participant in this glorious revolution. Peter displays boundless confidence in Jesus’ identity, authority, and power, but profoundly misunderstands his specific intentions.

Those standing around the fire with Peter may also be seen as blocking characters serving a transitional function. Whatever the actual danger lurking behind each question, Peter’s denials are certainly out of proportion to the potential threat to his safety especially when compared with Peter’s previous actions. The Peter who commits three denials under verbal challenge stands in ironic contrast to the Peter who wields a sword at physical danger. Compared with the real danger of confronting an armed band, the potential danger posed around the fire seems small indeed. Whatever they themselves thought, nothing in the FG states explicitly that any of the disciples were in danger and care has been taken to show that Jesus took steps to secure their safety (18:8). Peter’s interlocutors provide three opportunities to take a stand, three unheeded warnings of perils to come. In this sense, they are blocking characters who perform a potential ministerial function. Their role is not so much to present a destructive threat to Peter as it is to prevent Peter’s self destruction. Or, given the larger purposes of Jesus, this fireside chat provides the situation that will expose and destroy Peter’s pretentious behavior. The denouement unfolds such that the pretentious side of Peter’s behavior dies at his own hand. Peter and Judas both hang themselves.

The blocking element in the comic plot could be passive and simply be reality itself. This is the case with Don Quixote, whose chivalric adventures constantly war with physical reality and society’s failure to be anything at all like that portrayed in his
many books. In a kind of reversal of Don Quixote, Falstaff (King Henry IV, pt. 1) desires honor, but only to a point. Honor usually entails some sort of real encounter with difficulty or danger and this Falstaff cannot bring himself to do. For Falstaff, discretion as the better part of valor means above all things to avoid bodily harm. Don Quixote is comic because he acts on his beliefs and they are blocked by reality; Falstaff is comic because he sees the potential clash of belief and reality and only pretends to act. Peter’s character displays both of these aspects in his confrontations with reality. He is a garden variety Don Quixote in Gethsemane, but more like Falstaff in the high priest’s courtyard where erstwhile bravery gives way to denial. The crowing rooster signals the nadir of Peter’s mixture of action and pretension and suggests that Peter, in addition to being mistaken about Jesus, is ignorant of himself.  

Ironically, in the process of promoting the cause of Jesus on earth, Peter himself becomes a blocking character. Peter’s attempt to stop Jesus’ washing of the disciples feet means much more than stopping the act itself; Peter knows full that Jesus’ actions define his role as leader and the disciples’ roles as followers and tries on this basis to stop it. In the garden, Jesus is willing to die for one reason and Peter for another. Jesus’ command to Peter, “Put that sword away. Shall I not drink the cup the Father has given me?” (18:11), shows that Peter’s action stands between the will of the Father and the mission of the Son and highlights the profound implications of Peter’s mistake. Peter’s role as blocking character must end if he is to participate in the ministry of Jesus.

66 Frye observes, "The blocking characters of comedy are nearly always impostors, though I is more frequently a lack of self-knowledge than simple hypocrisy that characterizes them." ibid., 172.
C) CONCEPTUAL ELEMENTS OF COMEDY

C.1 APPROACH AND METHODOLOGY

The fundamental issue of methodology is whether or not a definition can be given that is sufficiently comprehensive to cover an adequate amount of data while at the same time being narrow enough to offer clarification of issues. The same methodological issues and issues related to the validity of any theory arise in a discussion of comedy. Although the details would vary, the arguments employed in defending the formation of a theory of comedy are substantially the same covered in the introduction and in relation to tragedy and will not be repeated here.

Raskin also offers an insightful classification of the theories of humor. The most important type, and the type offered by Raskin himself and the present work, are theories of incongruity wherein two or more incongruous elements are juxtaposed against each other. Bergson's famous work on laughter is of this type. The second type of theories are those based on "hostility, superiority, malice, aggression, derision, or disparagement." The third type are the release theories of which Freud is the most famous proponent. Freud argued that creating a joke involved a psychic

---

67 For example, L. C. Knights is critical of any theory of comedy and believes that they are useless in terms of actual literary criticism. He mentions the theories of Bergson, Freud, and Meredith and is particularly critical of the latter. But Freud and Bergson make no attempt at literary criticism (Knights would probably admit this) and Knights does point out a certain generality in Meredith. Knights' radical dichotomy between literary criticism and theories of comedy and categorical rejection of them is extreme. See L. C. Knights, "Notes on Comedy," in Corrigan, Comedy, 181-191.
69 Bergson holds that laughter results from the imposition of the mechanical upon the living, the rigid upon the living. But Bergson is only focusing on a narrow aspect of a more general one offered here. See Bergson, Laughter.
70 Raskin, Humor, 36, bold markings his.
compression that was released by the recipient and resulted in laughter. Rather than being incompatible, these three approaches are really talking about different, although related elements of the same thing. Raskin observes,

In our terms, the incongruity-based theories make a statement about the stimulus; the superiority theories characterize the relations or attitudes between speaker and the hearer; and the release/relief theories comment on the feelings and psychology of the hearer only.\(^{71}\)

Raskin’s analysis clarifies a number of issues. For example, superiority theories of the second type are primarily concerned with the ethical aspects of the employment of humor, not with the nature of humor itself. Setting these concerns aside avoids the confusion generated by the ethical or moral questions in a comic production, concerns of Plato, Puritans, and countless others, and whether or not a comic character is base or good. Release/relief theories focus on issues related to human biology and psychology of the hearer, whereas incongruity theories contain a strong conceptual element, as must be the case if humor is not a physical substance but must be transmitted in some manner that passes through cognitive processes. It may be observed that, depending on one’s point of view, most literary criticism either fails to make adequate allowance for these distinctions or is more holistic in its approach and all the better for it.

The conceptual elements of comedy themselves differ from tragedy such that a theory of comedy will look very different from a theory of tragedy. The movement in tragedy is from qualities or values in the abstract with latent potential opposition to their opposition in reality resulting in destruction. Tragedy concentrates its forces by

\(^{71}\) ibid., 40.
means of plot, the vehicle of necessity. Conversely, comedy moves forward toward integration by means of character, the vehicle of freedom. The comic pattern is toward openness and expansion, from concrete reality with its difficulties toward an integration with the imaginative and abstract where a sense of resolution is possible. Sypher's comment illustrates the point,

Often the comic hero is rescued because Improvisation and Uncertainty are the premises of comic action, and the goddess Fortuna presides over great tracts of the comic scene. But the law of Inevitability or Necessity bears heavily on the tragic hero, who is not eligible for rescue because in tragedy man must somehow take responsibility for the flaws in the nature of things or at least pay a penalty for them.\(^\text{72}\)

While tragedy moves from past to present and irony essentially stagnates in the present, comedy moves from present to future, the field of integration, possibility and hope. Comedy unmasks a character while tragedy unmasks a situation. The differences between the two archetypes are such that their respective theories take on a substantially different shape. A theory of tragedy tends toward causality, narrowness and exclusion, while the open nature of the comic fosters a tendency toward freedom, openness and generality.

**C.2 BELIEFS AND FRAMES OF REFERENCE\(^\text{73}\)**

The theory of comedy in the present work largely follows the basic outlines offered by Koestler and paralleled to a great extent by Raskin.\(^\text{74}\) Koestler sees comedy


\(^{73}\) Equivalent to Raskin's term “script”, the term “frame of reference” is used by Koestler and will be used here.

\(^{74}\) Arthur Koestler, *Creation*; Raskin, *Humor.*
as the perceiving of a situation or idea in terms of two self-consistent but habitually incompatible frames of reference. On his main hypothesis, Raskin writes,

(107) A text can be characterized as a single-joke-carrying text if both of the conditions in (108) are satisfied.

(108) (i) The text is compatible, fully or in part, with two different scripts
(ii) The two scripts with which the text is compatible are opposite

What Koestler and Raskin mean by this will become clear as this basic framework is expanded below. As the title indicates, Raskin is primarily concerned with two things; (1) semantic mechanisms, and (2) as applied to humor. But stripped of the jargon and methodology of the field of study in which and for which the book was written, Raskin’s theory parallels Koestler’s and is at once simple and illuminating, capable of wide application far beyond the confines of its immediate audience and beyond its specific subject matter of humor. The validity of this will become apparent as these basic ideas are expanded and applied to literature and comedy.

In comedy, beliefs about the present are all important because out of these beliefs will flow the future. Beliefs animate actions and these actions shape the future as it is realized in the present. For better or worse, beliefs shape the present and future. The future is open because the actions that will shape it into the present are influenced by beliefs and combinations of beliefs that are subject to change. The open future inherent to comedy relies on multiple possibilities. Thus, comedy resides to a significant degree in beliefs. Shakespeare, for example, exploits this fully in Much Ado

---

75 ibid., 35.
76 Raskin, Humor, 99. All bold markings are his.
About Nothing where everything rests on false beliefs. There is nothing of substance in Benedick and Beatrice’s false information about each other or Hero’s supposed infidelity and death. The past is subject to various interpretations, interpretations often disputed in tragedy, while the essential facts remain unalterable, or the present is destined to be altered for the worse by mistaken interpretation of the past, as is the case with Othello, who is not at all concerned with the future. In comedy, beliefs will shape and arrange the present and thereby create facts rather than be merely subject to them.

Significant for comedy, few if any of the beliefs comprising any frame of reference can be exhaustively investigated and determined with absolute certainty. Uncertainty is part of life, especially in regard to the future. It is not necessary to enter into a debate about epistemology, this is only to say that any frame of reference includes tacit assumptions about reality that may not be adequately justified yet done in innocence. The lack of volition and the innocence in which one sees the world in a particular frame of reference is an important component of comedy. For example, in Twelfth Night, Olivia justifiably and innocently assumes a certain frame of reference about Viola; i.e. that Viola is a man. On this (false) assumption, Olivia falls in love with her. If this frame of reference breaks apart, the comedy is over in so far as it concerns Olivia’s frame of reference. Or, a character may be in large measure responsible for holding a patently false belief. For example, again in Twelfth Night, Malvolio’s own vanity and the manipulations of others leads him to believe (mistakenly) that Olivia is in love with him. However achieved, Malvolio’s frame of reference, once in place, governs his actions in a kind of innocent tranquillity.
Malvolio’s frame of reference with its false beliefs about Olivia, endures beyond the point where actual contact with Olivia might have more wisely been taken as a source of doubt.

C.3 FRAMES OF REFERENCE IN CONFLICT

Individual frames of reference do not in themselves produce comedy. According to Koestler, “It is the clash of the two mutually incompatible codes, or associative contexts, which explodes the tension.” Comedy results from the simultaneous conflict of two or more frames of reference set in motion when a character acts or is acted upon with a view toward a future integration of some kind. In irony, the clash of frames of reference is essentially stagnant, disembodied and concerned with the present and its perception. In comedy, as Richter observes, “An error in and of itself is not ridiculous, any more than ignorance is...But the error must be able to reveal itself through an effort, through an action.” A frame of reference acted upon brings it into contact with reality, a movement teeming with comic possibilities. Malvolio’s infatuation with Olivia when acted upon conflicts with Olivia’s view of things, which is quite innocent. This kind of conflict sets up the incongruity, an essential feature of comedy. One way of understanding a given situation must conflict with another way of understanding the same situation. Bergson calls this clash of perspectives a “reciprocal interference of a series.” He writes,

...each of the characters in every stage-made misunderstanding has his setting in an appropriate series of events which he correctly interprets as far

77 Koestler, Creation, 35.
as he is concerned, and which give the key-note to his words and actions. Each of the series peculiar to the several characters develops independently, but at a certain moment they meet under such conditions that the actions and words that belong to one might just as well belong to another. Hence arise the misunderstandings and the equivocal nature of the situation. But this latter in not laughable in itself, it is so only because it reveals the coincidence of the two independent series. 79

For example, in Moliere’s The Miser, Harpagon (the miser) accuses Valere of stealing his cash box. Valere knows nothing about the cash box, but thinks his own love for Harpagon’s daughter Elise has been discovered. Harpagon knows nothing about the love affair. Valere pleads,

A treasure indeed, no doubt of it, and the most precious you possess; but you will not lose it by letting me keep it. On my knees I beg you for this charming treasure; and if you would do what is right, you must needs let me have it. [act V, scene iii]

Each interprets the present with a frame of reference about the present that each is justified in holding. Valere assumes a frame of reference completely at odds with Harpagon’s, and “treasure” here forms a verbal neutral ground over which these two parties duel in blindness. Perhaps the best example of this in the accounts of Peter occurs in John 13:31-32, which bears repeating here,

When he [Judas] was gone, Jesus said, “Now is the Son of Man glorified and God is glorified in him. If God is glorified in him, then God will glorify the Son in himself, and will glorify him at once.

79 Bergson, Laughter, 96. This is not Bergson’s main theory, which has to do with the difference between the “mechanical” and the vital life force of human existence, laughter occurring when the former is superimposed upon the latter. See Koestler’s discussion of Bergson, Creation, 43-49. Koestler notes that Bergson was closer to the heart of the comic here than anywhere else.
Although this example differs from the one above in that here only one party is mistaken, the dynamic Bergson calls “mutual interference of a series” is the same. “Now”, “Son of Man”, and the nature of God’s glorification of the Son provide equivocal issues of interpretation which Peter and Jesus understand within different frames of reference.

The clash of perspectives must be perceived to produce a comic effect. In Peter’s case, the reader perceives that something is amiss that colors Peter’s understanding of the situation. While the conflict must be evident to an observer to achieve its comic effect, observers may be internal and external to the action. In Twelfth Night, the realistic frame of reference shared by Sir Toby Belch and the audience allows them to know that Malvolio is deceived and to observe with laughter. Something may strike someone as comic in a way unique to an individual, as is the case when only one person finds a given situation comic or incongruous and laughs alone. It may happen that a participant may view things in a different light later on and see the incongruity in a situation, as is often the case when one reinterprets the past on growing older.

The greater the juxtaposition and persistence of two competing perceptions about a given situation, the greater the comic effect. In A Midsummer Night’s Dream, the fairy queen Titania’s spell induced love for Bottom the weaver would be comic in itself, but Bottom’s previous translation into an ass intensifies the comic juxtaposition. Malvolio’s advances on Olivia are all the more comic for his cross-gartered attire, a style she detests. Peter’s misunderstanding of the situation persists to the point of drawing a sword and beyond. The following are some of the innumerable variations on
this basic theme of incongruity: serious/frivolous; big/little; rich/poor; fast/slow; knowledge/ignorance; fat/thin; insider/outsider; ideal/real; best/worst; country/city; young/old; pretentious/realistic; public/private; male/female; divine/human, the last two pairs being perhaps the greatest sources of comic juxtaposition.\(^{80}\)

In order to be comic, the conflict of ways of understanding must remain open-ended. There must be the possibility of change and discovery so that it is perceived that the frames of reference at odds with each other might be resolved and resolved, not merely in perception, but in reality. Comedy operates to a large extent on beliefs and perceptions which are at odds with reality in the present but with reference to the future. These beliefs are not inevitable and necessary as they relate to facts, as is the case with Oedipus who learns the truth of his situation. In comedy beliefs are merely mistaken. Beliefs and desires of any kind are open to change in a way that past events are not. L. J. Potts comments, “The abnormality of comic characters is not absolute; we should feel that they are capable of behaving normally if they would.”\(^{81}\) For this reason, a juxtaposition of frames of reference caused by insanity or some mental deficiency is not comic because for those in such conditions, it must be this way. In tragedy the conflict of frames of reference embodies a sense of necessity and inevitability because certain facts drive the action along. But in comedy the juxtaposition of two frames of reference is more accidental and unexpected. The comic juxtaposition is tenuous because it relies on false beliefs to produce an incongruity that need not be so. Hence the emphasis in comedy on chance, coincidence, and the

\(^{80}\)For a further treatment, see L. J. Potts, “The Subject Matter of Comedy,” in Corrigan, Comedy, 198-213.

\(^{81}\)Ibid., 199.
unexpected. The observer is free to see the conflict of the competing frames of reference and exchange one for the other. This exchange or movement between one frame of reference and another produces laughter. The more established a frame of reference and the more sudden and decisively it is exchanged for another, the greater the laughter. In the FG, the separate frames of reference of Jesus and Peter move gradually apart, preventing a sudden, laughter producing exchange of one for the other.

The dramatic conflict in comedy remains open ended because it relies on a conflict arising in the present as it relates to the future and what will happen; tragedy relies on a conflict that is related to the past and grows out of what has happened. For example, Hamlet's father was murdered and knowledge of this fact drives the action, in contrast, in comedy innumerable obstacles may yet be overcome. At sometime in comedy, perhaps at any moment, someone's frame of reference might be altered such that all is seen in a new light, including mistaken beliefs about the past. Conversely, a comic juxtaposition might begin at any moment as when someone misunderstands something. Beliefs about a state of affairs are always subject to change, and, so long as change remains possible, comedy can continue. This is not to say that obstacles to a comic ending reside only in beliefs or desires. The obstacles may indeed be real and dangerous, but comedy can continue so long as the obstacles do not have the last word.

The juxtaposition of two competing frames of reference in comedy can proceed only as long as no decisive challenge is presented to a particular interpretation of events. The tenuous nature of a comic juxtaposition, the sense that things do not have to be this way but they are, suggests that each frame of reference will challenge the
other, but only to a point. The degree of an individual’s adherence to a particular frame of reference determines the point at which a belief is modified by its holder. In Ben Jonson’s *The Fox*, Volopone (the Fox) and his clever servant Mosca marvel at the self-deception of the three men who each hope to inherit Volopone’s fortune.

Mosca:
“True, thy will not see’t
Too much light blinds them, I think. Each of them
Is soo possest and stuff with his own hopes,
That any thing unto the contrary,
Never so true, or never so apparent,
Never so palpable, they will resist it—”

Volopone:
“Like a temptation of the devil.”

Likewise, Don Quixote’s delusions of knighthood and chivalry withstand numerous conflicts with reality. On the other hand a comic misunderstanding may last only an instant, as is the case with most jokes and word plays. A decisive challenge to one frame of reference usually happens by means of some assertion of reality. All is cleared up in *A Comedy of Errors* when the revelation of the existence of two sets of identical twins explains the wild misunderstandings. Thomas’ week long refusal to accept Jesus as risen from the dead changes decisively on viewing the hands of the risen Lord. The cock crows for Peter and signals the end of the old way of understanding. The comic juxtaposition aspect of comedy ends when a particular frame of reference is no longer at odds with reality. Reality intrudes sufficient to modify beliefs and the multiple possibilities of the future dissolve into the realities of the present.

---

C.4 COMIC REALITY

However much comedy relies on the incongruence of two competing frames of reference, and however much it relies on a resolution of its various frames of reference into reality, the reality that emerges must be of a certain type. A resolution and integration of competing frames of reference into reality does not mean that the reality achieved by that resolution is necessarily pleasant and comic. Unmasking of illusions does not in itself make for a comic resolution. For example, in Molière's *Tartuffe*, Tartuffe's hypocrisy and parasitism are absolutely clear to everyone but Orgon. Orgon's persistence in believing in Tartuffe's virtue otherwise drives the comic mixture of illusion and reality. Only when Tartuffe attempts to seduce Orgon's wife Elmire in his hearing does Orgon belatedly see things as they really are. But Tartuffe's unmasking alone will not do. Orgon has transferred ownership of his property to Tartuffe and faces the very real possibility of being evicted from his own house. The expulsion is only averted through the intervention of the prince who brings about a truly comic ending.

The *Tartuffe* example illustrates the two most significant phases of comedy. The first is the clash of frames of reference, generally what we refer to as comedy with its tendency to be funny, the second is a resolution into a desired reality, generally what we refer to as comic where the happy ending is achieved. In order to finally be comic, the multiple possibilities of the future characteristic of the comedy phase must dissolve into a *desirable* reality in the present. The relationship of the two phases can

---

329 Raskin offers no counterpart to this in his theory of humor.
vary. In the case of Tartuffe, the first ends before the second, but they may coincide. For example, in Ben Jonson’s The Fox, the final unmasking of Volopone (the Fox) occurs at virtually the same time as the comedy resolves into a new reality wherein the innocents are restored and the villains punished. In another variation, the comedy phase may be essentially missing or de-emphasized yet the work contains a comic ending which requires that it must be taken in its entirety as comic, as is the case in The Winter’s Tale. Likewise, the comedy phase is missing from melodrama, which Frye calls “comedy without humor.” In another variation of the relationship of the two phases, the second phase does not occur at all nor is it even hinted what that phase might be. Such is the unpretentious nature of practical jokes, home video shows, slapstick, and related materials that need not be of present concern.

The two phases of the comic emerge separately in Peter’s presentation in the FG. The phase of comedy wherein the two frames of reference compete contains humor only if seen in a certain light, the humor of the comedy phase being overshadowed by the seriousness of the situation and by knowledge of the denials to follow. The conflict of frames of reference reaches its climax as Peter draws a sword and Jesus desires to drink the cup given him by the Father. Whatever remains of the courageous Peter departs with his denials in the high priests’ courtyard. The resolution phase of the comic, to the extent that it occurs at all, awaits further development in chapter 21. A further distinction in the nature of the comic resolution will be made later.

84 Frye, Anatomy, 40
Comedy relies on a course of events that is out of the ordinary and often fantastic. Likewise, the emphasis in a comic resolution on chance, coincidence, and the unexpected. In comedy, the resolution of the circumstances is usually unlikely given how mixed up things may appear in the present and ordinarily comes about through the intervention of some outside force. This force may be impersonal and appear as luck or providence, as when parents are reunited with children and children with siblings. Or it may be the personal intervention of an outside agent, as when Oberon sorts matters out in *A Midsummer Night's Dream* or Portia pleads the case of Antonio in *The Merchant of Venice*, or both, as in *The Tempest* where Prospero takes up where the storm leaves off. Robertson observes,

> This very arbitrariness is one of the most persistent aspects of comedy. Comic heroes are finally integrated into the society to which they properly belong, not because of their inherent goodness or prowess, but because of events that are unexpected, irrational, sometimes downright miraculous, and often precipitated by a *deus ex machina* who simply decides to act on behalf of the protagonist.  

In any case, the normal linear flow of life and events is arrested, the iron links of necessity and causality are broken, and reality and life itself is altered for the better, as if the marvelous world of romance breaks into the confusion of comedy with a touch of restorative grace. In a world governed by causality and necessity, the achievement of the comic ending by some outside intervention will quite naturally seem implausible, extraordinary and fantastic. To the extent that one excludes the fantastic, as Thomas the ironic realist does, the comic ending will seem unbelievable, or at least violating

---

85 For a discussion of these features, see Frye, 170.
aesthetic sensibilities by exchanging what we would like to happen for what is likely to happen.87

Let us pause to reconnoiter the situation of Peter on that crucial week. As Jesus dies by crucifixion, any sort of restoration and comic ending appears impossible. With Jesus firmly in the grave, the story of Peter simultaneously flirts with farce and careens toward tragedy on precisely the same evidence. Peter’s earlier words, “To whom shall we go? We believe and know that you are the Holy one of God” seem ridiculous or painfully mistaken. Jesus’ washing of the feet becomes a supreme example of service laden with pathos or an ironic mockery of his friends. Judas, whose death is not mentioned in John, becomes either an even greater villain or the only one shrewd enough to change sides in time. Peter either did not defend Jesus adequately or he was lucky to escape with his life. The sword in the garden turns to ashes in his hands if he supposes that all he believed in was utterly without foundation. If his beliefs are true, the failure of Jesus is profound in that it implicates God who failed to act on his behalf, in which case the sword might have been put to best use on Peter himself. The denials become a series of unmaskings or sickening affirmations of reality. The bitter weeping of the Synoptics becomes anguished personal sorrow or the remorse of a fool. Time will either heighten regret or cast doubt on the validity of Jesus himself. One does not know whether to laugh or cry.

A comic resolution is possible in Peter’s case only through an intervention from the outside, in this case God himself. Frye states, “The mythical or primitive basis of

87 Given Aristotle’s emphasis on causality, it is perhaps no accident that no Aristotelian theory of comedy exists.
comedy is a movement toward the rebirth and renewal of the powers of nature..."\(^{33}\)

But this is precisely not the case in the FG where the powers of nature are unable to
renew, witness the death of Lazarus. “If he sleeps he will get better” (11:12) will not
do. God raises Jesus from the dead and breaks the persistent linear pattern of life
followed inexorably by death. God acting in freedom breaks the iron chain of causality.
In so doing he vindicates the words of Jesus, transforms the disciples understanding of
Jesus and the scripture, and establishes the foundation for the transformation all of
reality itself. The linear pattern of tragedy irrevocably gives way to the circular pattern
of comedy.

Nothing happens in comedy, if it is to remain comedy, that is final. Reality can
only intrude so far. In this sense comedy contains a sense of life being cyclical by
including things that are not final and excluding things about life that are final. Setting
aside everything but plot, *Romeo and Juliet* is finally a tragedy only when Romeo
mistakes Juliet’s sleep for death and kills himself. The tragi-comedy format of *The
Winter’s Tale* relies on “death” not being final after all. Because Malvolio is materially
no worse off than before, he is free to laugh with everyone else about his humiliating
foray into love but chooses instead to “be revenged on the whole pack of you.” In
contrast to comedy, reality triumphs in tragedy in a way that excludes all but the most
final aspects of life. The forcefulness of the evidence and the finality of the facts forces
Oedipus to change his mind about the truth when he wished it were otherwise.

---

\(^{33}\) *Northrop Frye, A Natural Perspective: The Development of Shakespearean Comedy and Romance*
Even the resolution into happiness achieved at the end of a comedy is not final. Unlike tragedy, the desired reality is in large measure realized. Imaginative and millennial hopes for an ideal future have come true and grant something like a state of grace. Comedy resolves then into a reality in which realized hopes provide justification for the possibility of further realized hopes. But this resolution is precarious and can be only temporary. Marriage forms the traditional end of comedy rather than married life with its unavoidable conflicts. The details of exactly how “they lived happily ever after” are not normally included in the story. In *Much Ado About Nothing*, justice on the villain can wait until tomorrow and must not mar the festivities of the wedding day, yet tomorrow must inevitably come. Reality with all its difficulties and perplexities will intrude again. Recalling the four archetypes illustrated on the chart (see page 25 or 242), comedy moves into romance where the dynamics and struggles are of a different order, a representation of self-evident and realized values and the struggle for their preservation. The comic resolution satisfies only by the curtain being drawn on a particular episode of life.

In a variation of the comic pattern that reflects the need for continuing contact with reality, the comic resolution may be strongly anticipated but not actually occur. If the normal pattern of the completed comic wherein the desired reality is realized may be referred to as *transitive* comic, its counterpart may be referred to as *intransitive*. In the latter, the hoped for resolution fails to take place or is modified to a significant degree. Transitive comic must end because any prolonged contact with the broken real world will destroy its imaginative synthesis; only intransitive comic can continue. The
intransitive pattern is seen in Shakespeare's *Love's Labour's Lost* where the imaginative synthesis of the anticipated marriage of the four gentlemen to the four ladies fails to occur, partly through the death of the king of France and partly due to the gentlemen not being ready for it. The traditional transitive comic pattern is notable in the play for its being broken. Significantly, both Peter and the four gentlemen of *Love's Labour's Lost* must move from their separate abstractions and make greater allowances for present mortal life while their hopes await future realization.

But rather than being an occasional exception the intransitive comic pattern is fundamental to such comic formats as sitcoms, comic strips, and episodic comic works like Don Quixote. It must be this way because if the promise of transitive comic is realized, the story must end as there is no conflict to report. Thus Charlie Brown will never be a winning baseball manager nor will Lucy hold the football in place for him to kick it. Yet there is no necessary reason for it to be this way. The intransitive comic usually offers hope, however small, of becoming transitive.

As intransitive comic, Peter presents a character where the comic resolution is only partial. On Sunday morning Jesus rises from the dead, achieving a final victory over that most final of foes and a reconciliation of the believer with God. But the classic comic ending of wrongs being made right and a new order being established in material fact does not occur. Peter's discord with Jesus is over, but the Romans still control Palestine and evil persists in a world as implacably opposed to Jesus as ever, a world soon to turn its opposition on his disciples. Peter's great error consisted not so much in being wrong, but in being premature. The rule of God inaugurated in Christ
will be established in fact in the eschaton. The intransitive will give way to the transitive at the direction of Christ himself and not before.\textsuperscript{89} Peter, then, becomes paradigmatic of every Christian, one invited to live between the future victory of God inaugurated in Christ and its actual eschatological realization. In the meantime Peter must readjust his expectation to conform with a life of humility and service. In differing formulations, Jesus instructs Peter to “Feed my sheep,” shepherding being associated with loyalty, persistence, and circumscribed sacrificial bravery rather than grandiose achievement.

Peter’s error consisted of supposing that the moment of comic resolution had arrived or was on the verge of doing so, to be inaugurated at the point of a sword. The rift between Jesus’ superior understanding of God’s purposes and his own sense of mission as one sent by the Father to submit to and do his will, and Peter’s perceptions of them provides the clash of frames of reference necessary for comedy.

\section*{IV CONCLUSION}

The character of Peter, as has been shown, follows a recognizable pattern of identification with Jesus, self induced estrangement with Jesus, and restoration to service. This pattern illustrates the fundamental pattern of comedy, that of being at odds with reality, or a clash of frames of reference, with a movement forward towards a future integration of beliefs with reality. Additionally, comedy has a greater emphasis

\footnote{This reinforces the connection of chapter 21 with the rest of the book. Had the FG ended at 20:31, the resulting transitive ending would seem premature and out of place with the disciples’ need to continue after Jesus’ departure.}
on character than plot corresponding to greater emphasis on freedom and openness than tragedy. The study of Peter as an archetypal comic character both illumines the character of Peter in its own right, but also supports and cast new light on his role as illustrating a certain path of discipleship. To the degree that Peter displays the discipleship theme and the comic archetype, this lends support to the inclusion of chapter 21 as fundamental to the unity of the FG.
-CONCLUSION-

"The Bible is an indispensable book for anyone who wishes to understand literature."

I RETROSPECT

Ryken’s remark, “The Bible is an indispensable book for anyone who wishes to understand literature” signals a kind of conclusion, but might just have easily have marked a beginning. Even if Ryken intended his statement to be confined to the Bible in its importance as a historical and cultural document, its implications in the present work have been extended to the Bible as a work of theology which claims to interpret all of reality of which literature is a part. But, taking into account the Bible as a work of literature, Ryken’s statement might well be modified to read, “An understanding of literature is indispensable for anyone who wishes to understand the Bible.” In the same way, Eliot’s statement placed at the start of this study, “Literary Criticism should be completed by criticism from a definite ethical and theological standpoint,” by which he, like Frye, wished to grant literature a status in its own terms from a position of objectivity, a notion questioned by postmodernism, his statement might well be revised to read, “Literary Criticism should be initiated and undertaken by criticism from a
definite ethical and theological standpoint.” In this sense, literature and theology do not merely interact when a given interpreter chooses to do so- they interact, however implicitly or explicitly, because it is impossible to do otherwise.

The principle of reciprocity has been applied to literature and theology in the present study in an effort to explore the broad contours at which this interaction takes place at a given set of reference points. Archetypal criticism provides the broad outlines of the interaction while Jesus, Pilate, Thomas, the Jews, and Peter provide the specific and living reference points. The present work presents a sustained effort to place theology and literature in dialogue with each other in a way that, it is hoped, is both meaningful and illuminating for both disciplines. Just as the opening words of the FG assert that Jesus is “the Word made flesh,” it may be seen that these characters in the FG are words made flesh in their own way according to patterns suggested by archetypal criticism and analogous to patterns they manifest in themselves.

Jesus himself provides the central reference point defining the other characters and indeed all of reality. The conceptual variable defining the differences between each archetype is the relationship between beliefs or values and reality or experience. The differences may be characterized by representation for Jesus and romance, reduction for Pilate and tragedy, negation for Thomas, the Jews and irony, and integration for Peter and comedy.

II REVIEW
Jesus, as a character typical of romance, is the archetypal hero, the one who simultaneously embodies and displays ideals which are held to be true and worthy of emulation. Emphasizing the marvelous and vertical causality, the story of the hero offers an episodic account of the hero’s adventures wherein the hero’s identity with an ideal and the maintenance and display of that identity and ideal occurs in a context of challenges and difficulties. The hero is one who exceeds reality or the pressure of circumstances and maintains an ideal or belief worthy of death. The identification of the hero with the ideal is such that maintaining the ideal is synonymous with preservation of the self. The open and episodic nature of the romance allows encounters with a variety of other characters defined by their responses to the hero and the ideals which the hero embodies. Just as, for Frye, romance is the structural core of all fiction, in the FG Jesus is the structural core of all reality. Pilate, Thomas, the Jews, and Peter are archetypal responses to Jesus in terms of both theology and literary mode of emplotment.

In Tragedy, the unity of beliefs and circumstance assumed in romance comes apart, exemplified in the tragic hero. An analysis of the narrative of Pilate in the FG revealed a series of shifting circumstantial and conceptual contexts, contexts which continually move into the future as the uncomprehending Pilate continually fails to grasp the dynamics of the present. Only when it is too late to extricate himself from the situation according to conventional notions of pragmatic action does Pilate realize his true predicament, effecting a tragic recognition and reversal. Aristotle’s Poetics, itself the foundational work for tragic criticism, formed the basis of an analysis of Pilate
according to Aristotle’s notions of fear and pity, catharsis, plot, character, and *hamartia*. As outlined by Hegel and developed by Scheler, tragedy displays a tragic clash between opposites having at least some claim to legitimacy united in a causal nexus between a character and his or her values latent in circumstance. A violation of the moral order, whether committed by the tragic protagonist or not, exposes contradictions in present circumstances resulting in the hero’s destruction. The power of circumstances, expressed in plot as the vehicle of necessity, effects a fundamental divide between a tragic protagonist and a system of beliefs, yet the moral order contingent on God or transcendent beliefs, remains. Given the profoundly theological nature of Pilate’s encounter with Jesus coupled with its occurrence within the machinery of concrete reality, Pilate exemplifies tragic themes and characteristics. The separation of beliefs and circumstance inaugurated in tragedy anticipates a realized further separation inherent in irony.

Irony is a key feature of the FG, but can never be taken simply as a literary device and must be taken as derivative of its theology. Irony was explored in relation its embodiment in the characters of Thomas and the Jews as representative of variations on an ironic point of view. Thomas, distinguished from the other disciples in chapters 20 and 11, comments on the death Lazarus, “Let us go that we may die with him,” a comment that may be taken as ironic with “him” referring to Lazarus. Perception of this remark as ironic, however, entails identifying with Thomas and participating in his ironic blindness, a blindness resulting in his refusal to believe. The Jews embody a tendency toward material reality and disbelief in which they repeatedly interpret Jesus
and his remarks in a way dominated by earthly and literalistic concerns. Whatever form irony takes, be it verbal, dramatic, etc., its perception and use requires a value judgment of some kind, one inevitably bound up with questions of value and belief. In this light, irony may then be divided, into positive, equivocal, and negative irony.

While irony in the FG is generally positive, i.e. operating from a stable theological base, Thomas and the Jews function as explorations of equivocal and negative irony respectively. Equivocal irony features a sense of ambiguity with respect to the relation of beliefs and circumstance whereas the sense of the triumph of experience over values and beliefs pervades negative irony, one in which the notion of meaning itself tends to become problematic and where detachment and stasis predominate.

Comedy features a movement toward the reintegration of experience with values and beliefs, a movement characteristic of Peter in the FG. By the end of chapter 6, the FG presents Peter as someone on the inside, a committed believer and follower of Jesus commanding a well developed understanding of who Jesus is. But Peter’s understanding of what it means to be obedient to God takes a triumphalist turn at odds with Jesus’ example and teaching. The post-resurrection accounts detail Peter’s reinstatement and point to a more sober assessment of what it means to be a follower of Jesus. After the manner of Comedy, Peter displays the mistakes and misunderstandings as the frame of reference by which he interprets his experience collides with reality and then is replaced with another. Unlike tragedy with its emphasis on plot and necessity, in comedy the emphasis falls on contingency, character, and freedom. A character’s beliefs, freely chosen but mistaken, move the action towards its
conclusion. In tragedy, normality is past but continues as ironic commentary on the present, while in comedy, normality, in which experience is integrated with beliefs, continues as a realistic hope for the future. With its tenuous incongruity between beliefs and reality, comedy continues as long as there is no decisive contact with reality. To be truly comic, the reality achieved must be desirable. Comedy may be divided into transitive and intransitive comedy, the desirable comic reality being achieved in the former where in the latter it is not, however much that desirable reality remains implicit and possible.

**III RESULTS**

The interaction presented here demonstrates the value of this type of extended, systematic comparisons. While it may be wide of the mark to speak of new discoveries, it is nevertheless possible to point to new or fresh angles of interpretation or clarification of those already present. Exploring and defining romance and tragedy should, it is hoped, establish the superiority of interpreting Jesus according to romance rather than according to tragedy. Employing tragedy to interpret Pilate offers a new perspective and brings to light the shifting interpretive contexts of the trial narrative. Pilate is an irreducibly a dynamic character incompatible with either weak or strong ironic readings. Interpreting Thomas according to irony provides the conceptual framework to view certain statements and by which to anticipate other exegetical data, which, taken together, brings out the full depth and coherence of his character. With regard to the Jews as the collective character displaying unbelief, this accepted
interpretation has been more adequately situated within the theology and purpose of the FG. Comedy as an archetype provides an overall coherence to Peter's character and allows for a deeper appreciation of his role in displaying the theme of discipleship in the FG. The coherence of Peter suggested by the discipleship theme and by comedy supports the unity of the FG with respect to the status of chapter 21. Additionally and significantly, archetypal criticism helps to locate all of these particular characters within the literary and theological world of the FG and in doing so offers a way in which each character may be understood in relation to the location of other characters within that same world. Identification with one or more of the characters serves to locate the reader within the world defined by the FG.

To the extent the archetypal criticism illuminates these characters with respect to both the literature and theology of the FG, the validity of archetypal criticism is reinforced and enhanced, both in its own right and also as a means of exchange. Comparisons of Peter with Don Quixote, however justified on their own without reference to archetypes, receive additional validity by similarity to an archetype of ubiquitous scope. Conversely, an archetype may suggest common themes and helpful comparisons perhaps overlooked otherwise, Thomas and the arch-ironist Mr. Bennet, for example. Archetypal criticism places comparisons of the FG with literature outwith the FG on a more systematic basis. The present work offers an examination of the form and content of these four major archetypes from and within a Christian world view and with reference to characters in a specific Biblical text that renders literary
analysis according to vague notions of comedy or tragedy or according to the simplistic designations ∅ and ∩, if they were ever adequate, no longer acceptable.

IV PROSPECTS

Two prospects growing out of the present work may be suggested. First with regard to the audience of the FG, the recent reassessment of gospel audiences by Bauckham and others questions the widely accepted assumption that the gospels were directed to isolated and specific “communities.” Extending the trajectory of this reassessment, to the extent that the presence of universal archetypes within the FG suggested by the present work points to and clarifies a wider and more universal reading of the FG, any sort of narrow and restricted reading of the FG is rendered less and less viable. In terms of both literature and theology, the FG is a work of some sophistication not easily reducible to sectarian concerns.

Secondly, on a related point, while the present concern has been with the interaction of literature and theology by means of archetypal criticism, such an analysis suggests the inclusion of history within a framework beyond that adopted here. This is not so much to suggest the application of narrative forms to history, as has been explored by White, however helpful and valid, but to suggest a model of interpretation based around the three components of history, literature, and theology. As Sternberg notes in relation to OT narrative, “Biblical narrative emerges as a complex, because multifunctional, discourse. Functionally speaking, it is regulated by a set of three

---

principles: ideological, historiographic, and aesthetic. How they cooperate is a tricky
question.2 With respect to the FG or any other Biblical text, these may be readily
termed the theological, historical, and literary, respectively. Significantly, Brodie
classifies the history of Johannine studies according to an emphasis on the theological,
historical, and literary,3 a classification that extends to Biblical studies in general. Given
the current impasse in hermeneutics, whatever the appropriate weight given to each
factor in particular instances, the way ahead may well include a proper appreciation of
each.

2 Meir Sternberg, The Poetics of Biblical Narrative: Ideological Literature and the Drama of Reading
(Bloomington, IN: Indiana University Press, 1985) 41.


Chesterton, G. K. *Orthodoxy.* London: John Lane, 1909.


352


----------The Death of Tragedy. London: Faber and Faber, 1961.


Tovey, Derek. Narrative Art and Act in the Fourth Gospel. JSNTS 151, Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1997.


---------“The Value of Narativity in the Representation of Reality,” Critical Inquiry 7 (Autumn 1980) 5-27


